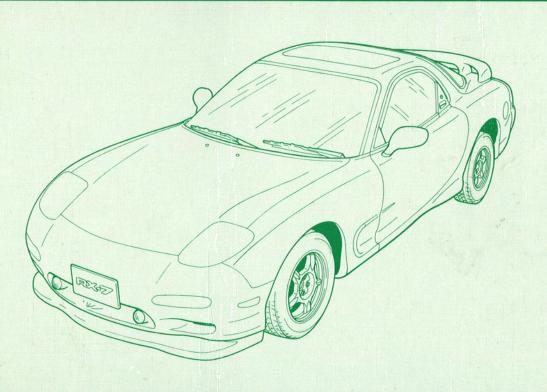
Mazda RX-7

1993 Service Highlights



mazpa

CONTENTS

| GENERAL INFORMATION | GI |
|------------------------------------|----------|
| ENGINE | ران ح |
| LUBRICATION SYSTEM | n |
| COOLING SYSTEM | F |
| FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS. | F |
| ENGINE ELECTRICAL SYSTEM | G |
| CLUTCH | Н |
| MANUAL I RANSMISSION | . 1 |
| AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION | K |
| PROPELLER SHAFT | ī |
| FRUNT AND REAR AXI FS | R/I |
| SIEERING SYSTEM | N |
| BRAKING SYSTEM | P |
| WHEELS AND TIRES | 0 |
| SUSPENSION | R |
| BODY | S |
| BODY ELECTRICAL SYSTEM | T |
| HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER | |
| SYSTEMS | U |
| | |

| | | | | • | |
|--|--|---|---|---|----|
| | | | | | |
| | | , | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | • | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | : |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | ٠. |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | • | | |
| | | | | | |

GENERAL INFORMATION

| ABBREVIATIONS | GI- | _2 |
|---------------|--------|----|
| UNITS | | |
| | ICIV I | |

ABBREVIATIONS

| | | 1111 | I the state of the county |
|----------|-------------------------------------|----------|----------------------------------|
| AAS | Air adjusting screw | HU | Hydraulic unit |
| ABDC | After bottom dead center | ISC | Idle speed control |
| ABS | Anti-lock brake system | IG | Ignition |
| A/C | Air conditioner | IN | Intake |
| ACC | Accessories | INT | Intermittent |
| ATDC | After top dead center | LO | Low |
| ATF | Automatic transmission fluid | М | Medium |
| AUTO A/C | Automatic air conditioner | NOx | Nitrogen oxide |
| BAC | Bypass air control | OD | Overdrive |
| BBDC | Before bottom dead center | P/S | Power steering |
| BTDC | Before top dead center | P/W | Power window |
| CD | Compact disc | RAM | Random access memory |
| co | Carbon monoxide | ROM | Read only memory |
| CPU | Central processing unit | SOL | Solenoid |
| CSI | Cold start injector | SRS | Supplemental restraint system |
| CU | Control unit | ST | Start |
| DRL | Daytime running light | SOL.V. | Solenoid valve |
| EC-AT | Electronically controlled automatic | SST | Special service tool |
| | transmission | STS | Super torque synchronizer |
| ECU | Engine control unit | S.V.C.U. | Solav ventilation control unit |
| EGI | Electronic gasoline injection | SW | Switch |
| ESPS | Engine speed sensing power steering | TECS | Total engine control system |
| EU | Electronic unit | TNS | Tail, number, side turn light |
| EX | Exhaust | UP | Upper |
| GND | Ground | VB | Battery voltage |
| HC | Hydrocarbon | VICS | Variable inertia charging system |
| l Hi | High | 1 | 3. 3. 7 |
| 1 | יישיי ן יישיי | 1 | • |

37UGIX-501

UNITS

| The second secon |
|--|
| N·m {kgf·m or kgf·cm, |
| ft-lbf or in-lbf}Torque |
| rpm Revolutions per minute |
| A Ampere(s) |
| VVolt(s) `´ |
| ΩOhm(s) (resistance) |
| kPa {kgf/cm², psi} Pressure (usually positive) |
| kPa {mmHg, inHg} Pressure (usually negative) |
| W Watt(s) |
| μF Electric capacity |
| °C Centigrade |
| °FFahrenheit |
| L {US qt, Imp qt} Volume |
| mm (in) Length |
| mar fast ronda |

37UGIX-502

ENGINE

| OUTLINE | |
|----------------------|------------|
| OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCT | ΓΙΟΝ |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | C-2 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | |
| INTERCHANGEABILITY | |
| | 37H0CX-501 |

OUTLINE

OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION

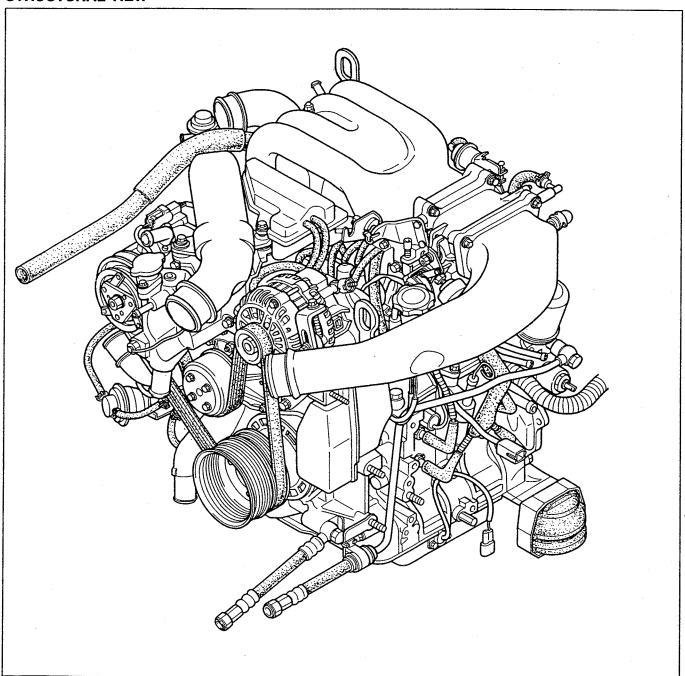
The 13B engine used in the latest RX-7 is designed for higher output and greater reliability.

Major changes

- 1. Front cover: The mounting holes have been removed because of a crank angle sensor change.
- 2. Side housing: The side housing is thinner for decreased weight, and the intake port has been enlarged to match the turbocharger.
- 3. Rotor housing: The trochoid surface is coated with Graphite to improve initial break-in.
- 4. Eccentric shaft: The main journal diameter is increased to withstand higher rotating speeds. The main journal oil clearance is changed from 45—80 μ to 60—80 μ .
- 5. Stationary gear: A set-screw type retainer is introduced to improve main bearing reliability.
- 6. Spacer: One of five spacers of different thicknesses is selectively used (marked A-E).

37U0CX-502

STRUCTURAL VIEW



SPECIFICATIONS

| Item | | | Engine | 13B Turbo |
|---|-----------------|--------------|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| Engine | type | | | |
| Displac | ement | | | Rotary engine |
| | er of cylinders | and arrange | cm³ {cu in} | $654 \times 2 \{40.0 \times 2\}$ |
| Combu | stion chambe | and an angel | nent | 2 rotors, longitudinal |
| | ession ratio | rtype | | Bathtub |
| - Compre | T Tallo | | | 9.0: 1 |
| Port | Intake | Open | Primary | 45°BTDC |
| | | | Secondary | 32°BTDC |
| | | | Primary | 50°ABDC |
| timing | | | Secondary | 50°ABDC |
| | Exhaust Ope | Open | | |
| | Close | | | 75°BBDC |
| Fuel sur | oply system | 1 2.550 | | 48°ATDC |
| · | 1 7 -7 -10 | | T= | EGI |
| Ignition timing* | | | 20°ATDC (-20° BTDC) | |
| Leading | | | Leading | 5°ATDC (-5° BTDC) |
| Idle speed* rpm Test connector grounded | | rpm | 700750 | |

37U0CX-504

INTERCHANGEABILITY

The following chart shows the interchangeability of the main parts of the new 13B engine and the previous 13B engine in the 1991 Mazda RX-7.

Symbols
O.....Interchangeable x.....Not interchangeable

| Part name | Interchangeability | Remark |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Front cover | × | Shape different |
| Front oil seal | × | Material different |
| Front cover gasket | × | Shape different |
| Front housing | × | Port shape different |
| Intermediate housing | × | Port shape different |
| Rear housing | × | Port shape different |
| Rotor housing | × | Port shape different |
| Sealing rubber | 0 | |
| Tension bolt | 0 | |
| Eccentric shaft | × | Journal diameter different |
| Lock bolt | × | Torque different |
| Stationary gear | × | |
| Main bearing | × | Inner diameter different |
| Rotor | × | Thickness different |
| Rotor bearing | × | Inner diameter different |
| Apex seal & spring | 0 | |
| Side seal & spring | 0 | |
| Corner seal & spring | 0 | |
| Rear oil seal | 0 | |
| Spacer | × | Thickness different |
| Balance weight | × | Weight different |
| Flywheel | × | Weight different |
| Counter weight | × | Weight different |
| Locknut | 0 | |
| Drive belt pulley | × | Shape different |
| Oil pump | × | Capacity increased |
| Oil strainer | × | Shape different |
| Oil strainer gasket | 0 | |
| Metering oil pump | × | Capacity increased |
| O-ring | 0 | |
| Metering oil tube | × | Shape different |
| Connect bolt | 0 | |
| Oil filter | 0 | |
| Oil pan | × | Shape different |
| | × | Shape different |
| Oil pan gasket | × | Relief pressure different |
| Pressure regulator | | Improvement of accuracy |
| Oil pressure switch | | improvertient of accoracy |
| Oil level sensor | 0 | |
| Thermo perette | 0 | |
| Oil jet | 0 | Chang different |
| Oil cooler | × | Shape different |
| Water pump | × | Housing material different |
| Thermostat | × | Shape different |
| Radiator | × | Shape different |
| Cooling fan | × | Electric control |

37U0CX-505

LUBRICATION SYSTEM

| OUTLINE | D-2 |
|-------------------------|-----|
| OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION | D-2 |
| LUBRICATION CIRCUIT | D_2 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | D-3 |
| 37/107 | |

OUTLINE

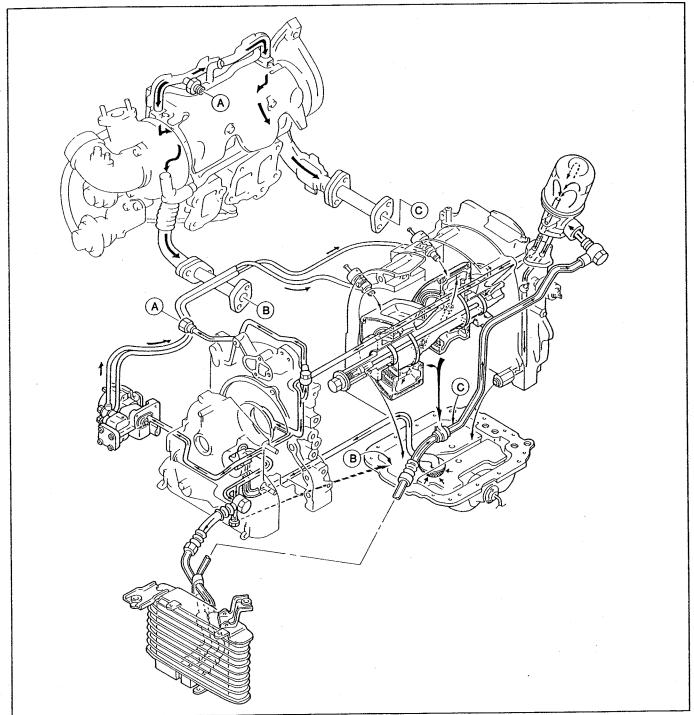
OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION

The lubrication system of the engine in the latest RX-7 is basically the same as that of the previous model.

The redesined components are as follows.

- 1. Increased efficiency of the oil pump improves engine lubrication.
- 2. The oil strainer shape is changed.
- 3. An oil baffle is placed in the oil pan to prevent the oil strainer from sucking air.4. The metering oil pump discharge is increased to improve lubrication of the apex seal at high engine speeds. 37U0DX-502

LUBRICATION CIRCUIT



37U0DX-503

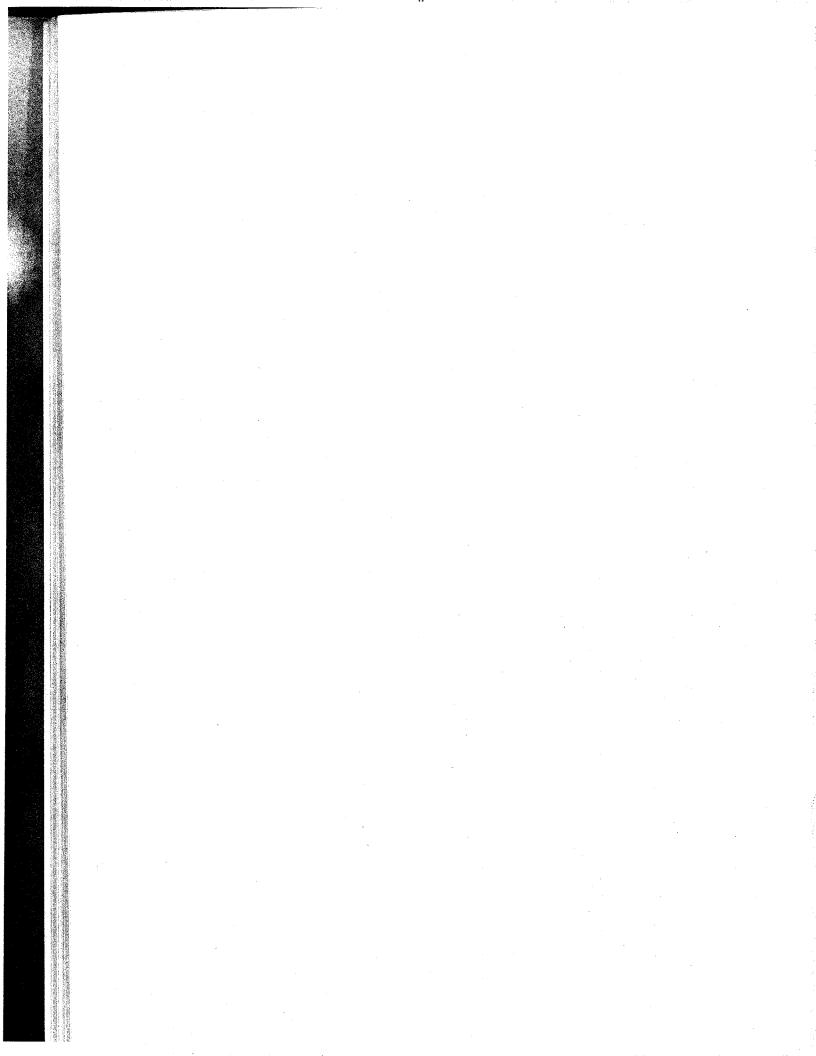
SPECIFACTIONS

| Item | | 13B Turbo | |
|-----------------|------------------------------|--------------------|--|
| Lubrication sys | tem | | Forced-fed |
| Oil auma | Туре | | Trochoid |
| Oil pump | Regulated pressure | kPa {kgf/cm², psi} | 490 {5.0, 71} |
| Oil filter | Туре | | Full-flow, paper element |
| Offitter | Relief pressure differential | kPa {kgf/cm², psi} | 98 {1.0, 14} |
| | | Total | 5.3 {5.6, 5.7} |
| | | Oil pan | 3.9 {4.1, 3.4} |
| Oil consoity | 1 (1) (2) and (1) and (1) | Oil filter | 0.20 {0.21, 0.18} |
| Oil capacity | L {US qt, Imp qt} | Oil cooler | 0.15 {0.16, 0.13} |
| Engine oil | | | API Service SG Energy Conserving II (ECII) |

37U0DX-504

COOLING SYSTEM

| OUTLINE | F_2 |
|-------------------------|--------|
| OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION | E-2 |
| COOLANT FLOW CHART | E-2 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | E-3 |
| | EV 50: |



OUTLINE

OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION

The cooling system of the New Mazda RX-7 is a typical forced circulation type. Some improvements over that of the previous RX-7 have been made to the system for improved operation and engine reliability.

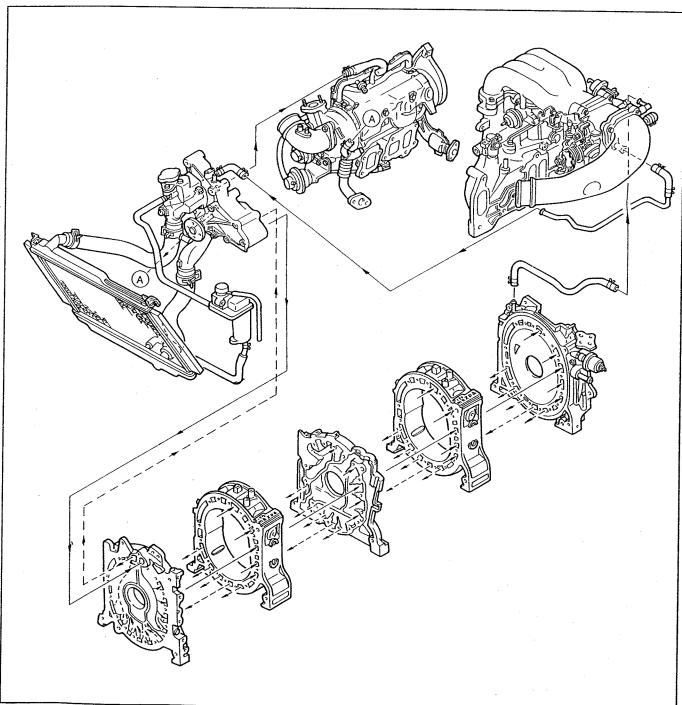
Improvements

- 1. The water pump housing is changed to aluminum.

- The water pump housing is changed to admind in.
 The radiator heat dissipation capacity is increased.
 The radiator cap opening pressure is increased.
 The cooling fan drive is changed to an electrical drive system.

37U0EX-502

COOLANT FLOW CHART



SPECIFICATIONS

| Item | | | | Engine | 13B Turbo |
|----------------|---|---------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Cooling system | | | | | |
| Coolant cap | acity | | L {US qt | Imp at) | Water-cooled, force circulation |
| <u> </u> | Typo | | | , mp qış | 8.7 {9.2, 7.7} |
| Water pump | Water sea | <u></u> | | · | Centrifugal |
| | | <u> </u> | | | Unified mechanical seal |
| | Туре | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | Wax, bottom bypass |
| Thermostat | Opening to | | | °C {°F} | 80.5—83.5 {177—182} |
| | Full-open t | |) | °C {°F} | 95 {203} |
| | Full-open I | ift | | mm (in) | 8—10 {0.31—0.39} |
| | Туре | | | | Corrugated fin |
| | Cap valve opening pressure kPa {kgf/cm², psi} | | | /cm², psi} | 115—145 {1.15—1.45, 16.4—20.6} |
| | Heat dissipation capacity kJ {kcal}/h | | | {kcal}/h | 167,440 {40,000} |
| Radiator | Core size m | | Width | | 625 {24.6} |
| | | mm (in) | Height | | 315 {12.4} |
| | | | Depth | | 25.0 {0.98} |
| | Fin pitch | | | mm {in} | 1.3 {0.05} |
| | Туре | | | | Electrical |
| | Blade | Outer diameter | | mm {in} | 300 {11.8} |
| Cooling fan | | Number | | | 5 |
| J | Motor Fan speed | | ed | rpm | HIGH: 2,350, MID: 1,950, LOW: 1,800 |
| | | | | Α | HIGH: 13.6, MID: 9.5, LOW: 8.8 |

37U0EX-504

•

FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

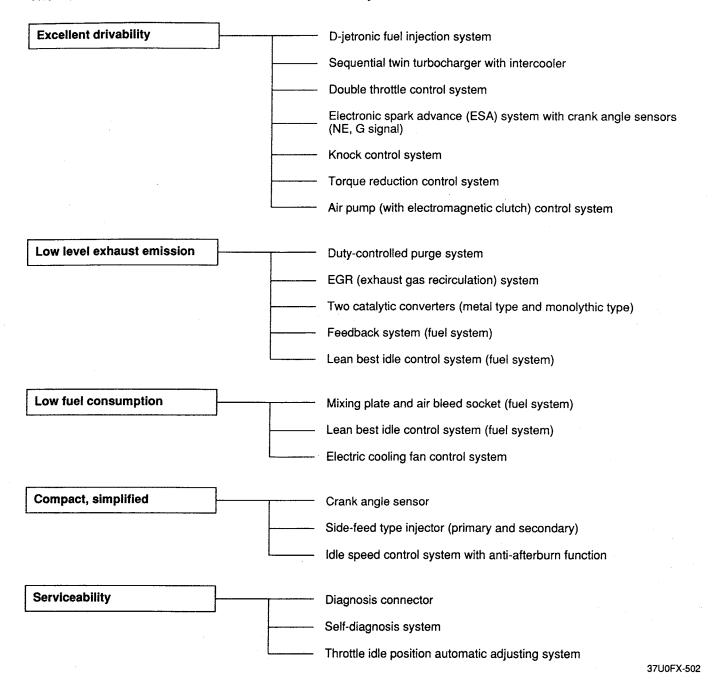
| OUTLINE | . F- | 2 |
|--|-------|----------|
| FEATURES | F_ | 2 |
| SYSTEM DIAGRAM | . F- | 3 |
| EMISSION COMPONENT | | |
| LOCATIONS | . F- | 4 |
| LOCATIONSVACUUM HOSE ROUTING DIAGRAM | F- | 7 |
| WIRING DIAGRAM | F_ | R |
| SPECIFICATIONS | F-1 | n |
| COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS | F_1 | 1 |
| ECU RELATIONSHIP DIAGRAM | F_1 | /I |
| BELATIONSHIP CHART | E 1 | 5 |
| RELATIONSHIP CHARTENGINE CONTROL OPERATION | | J |
| CHART | E 4 | 6 |
| CHARTINTAKE AIR SYSTEM | F 1 | 7 |
| OUTLINE | F-1 | 7 |
| INTERCOOLER | F-1 | 0 |
| THROTTLE BODY | [-] | 0 |
| THROTTLE SENSOR | L-1 | 9 |
| SEQUENTIAL TWIN TURBOCHARGER | | U |
| CONTROL SYSTEM | F 0 | 4 |
| OUTLINE | F-2 | 4 |
| SECONDARY TURBOCHARGER | r-2 | 1 |
| | | |
| OPERATION CONTROL | r-2 | 4 |
| BOOST PRESSURE CONTROL | - | _ |
| SYSTEM | F-2 | 5 |
| SEQUENTIAL TWIN TURBOCHARGER | | _ |
| | F-2 | 6 |
| ACTUATOR | | _ |
| (TURBO CONTROL) | F-2 | 6 |
| CHARGE RELIEF VALVE | F-2 | 6 |
| CHARGE CONTROL VALVE | F-2 | 6 |
| FUEL SYSTEM | F-27 | 7 |
| OUTLINE | F-27 | 7 |
| INJECTOR | F-28 | 3 |
| FUEL THERMOSENSOR | F-29 | 9 |
| FUEL PUMP CONTROL SYSTEM | F-3(|) |
| PRESSURE REGULATOR CONTROL | | |
| SYSTEM | F-31 | ſ |
| FUEL INJECTION CONTROL SYSTEM | | |
| OUTLINE | F-32 | 2 |
| CRANK ANGLE SENSOR | F-33 | } |
| FUEL INJECTION TIMING | F-34 | |
| FUEL INJECTION AMOUNT | F-35 | 5 |
| LEAN BEST IDLE CONTROL | | |
| SYSTEM | F-40 |) |
| ELECTRONIC SPARK ADVANCE (ESA) | | |
| CONTROL SYSTEM | -41 | |
| OUTLINE | -41 | |
| CONTROL SYSTEM | -42 |) |
| KNOCK CONTROL SYSTEM | -44 | |

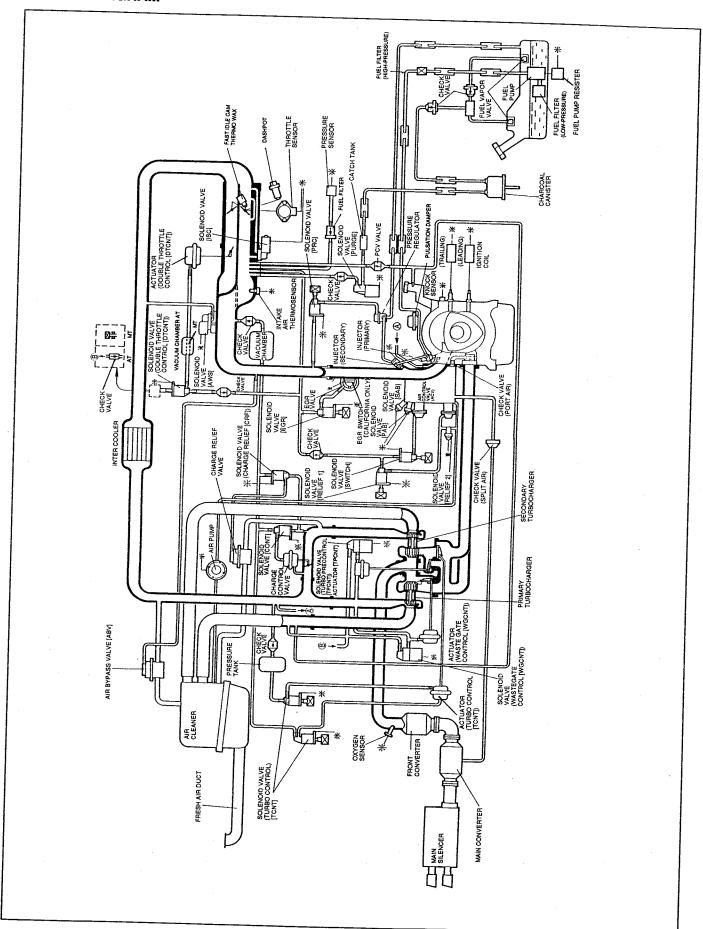
| IDLE-SPEED CONTROL (ISC) SYSTEM | F-45 |
|--|--|
| OUTLINE | F_45 |
| CONTROL SYSTEM | F_46 |
| ACCELERATED WARM-UP SYSTEM | . 1 –40 |
| | F 47 |
| (AWS) | . F-4/ |
| OUTLINE | F-47 |
| DOUBLE THROTTLE CONTROL | |
| (DTCNT) SYSTEM | F-48 |
| CHILINE | F-48 |
| OUTLINE OF EMISSION CONTROL | |
| SYSTEM | F_49 |
| DESCRIPTION | F 40 |
| SECONDARY AIR INJECTION | 1 -49 |
| SYSTEM | E 60 |
| OLITI INE | F-50 |
| OUTLINE POSITIVE CRANKCASE VENTILATION | F-50 |
| (DOW) OVOTER | |
| (PCV) SYSTEM | F-54 |
| OUTLINE | F-54 |
| EGR (EXHAUST GAS RECIRCULATION | 4) |
| CONTROL SYSTEM | F-55 |
| OUTLINE | F_55 |
| CATALYTIC CONVERTER SYSTEM | F-56 |
| DESCRIPTION | F_56 |
| EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CONTROL | 1 –30 |
| SASTEM | C |
| SYSTEM DECELERATION CONTROL SYSTEM | r-5/ |
| DESCRIPTION | r-58 |
| DESCRIPTION | |
| A/O OUT OFF OVER | F-58 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM | F-59 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL | F-59 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL | F-59 F-60 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM | F-59 F-60 F-61 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM | F-59 F-60 F-61 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF- | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF-DIAGNOSIS AND FAIL-SAFE | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF- DIAGNOSIS AND FAIL-SAFE TABLE | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF- DIAGNOSIS AND FAIL-SAFE TABLE SWITCH MONITOR FUNCTION | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF-DIAGNOSIS AND FAIL-SAFE TABLE SWITCH MONITOR FUNCTION | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 F-64 F-68 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF-DIAGNOSIS AND FAIL-SAFE TABLE SWITCH MONITOR FUNCTION | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 F-64 F-68 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF-DIAGNOSIS AND FAIL-SAFE TABLE SWITCH MONITOR FUNCTION | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 F-64 F-68 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 F-64 F-68 F-69 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 F-64 F-68 F-69 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF- DIAGNOSIS AND FAIL-SAFE TABLE SWITCH MONITOR FUNCTION OXYGEN SENSOR MONITOR FUNCTION KNOCK SENSOR MONITOR FUNCTION REAL TIME MONITOR FUNCTION | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 F-68 F-69 F-69 F-72 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF-DIAGNOSIS AND FAIL-SAFE TABLE SWITCH MONITOR FUNCTION OXYGEN SENSOR MONITOR FUNCTION KNOCK SENSOR MONITOR FUNCTION REAL TIME MONITOR FUNCTION SIMULATION FUNCTION | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 F-68 F-69 F-69 F-72 F-74 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM OUTLINE SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF-DIAGNOSIS AND FAIL-SAFE TABLE SWITCH MONITOR FUNCTION OXYGEN SENSOR MONITOR FUNCTION KNOCK SENSOR MONITOR FUNCTION REAL TIME MONITOR FUNCTION I SIMULATION FUNCTION I DIAGNOSIS CONNECTOR | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 F-64 F-68 F-69 F-72 F-74 F-76 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 F-64 F-68 F-69 F-72 F-74 F-76 F-77 |
| A/C CUT-OFF SYSTEM ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM OUTLINE SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM OUTLINE SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF-DIAGNOSIS AND FAIL-SAFE TABLE SWITCH MONITOR FUNCTION OXYGEN SENSOR MONITOR FUNCTION KNOCK SENSOR MONITOR FUNCTION REAL TIME MONITOR FUNCTION I SIMULATION FUNCTION I DIAGNOSIS CONNECTOR | F-59 F-60 F-61 F-62 F-62 F-68 F-69 F-69 F-72 F-74 F-76 F-77 F-77 |

OUTLINE

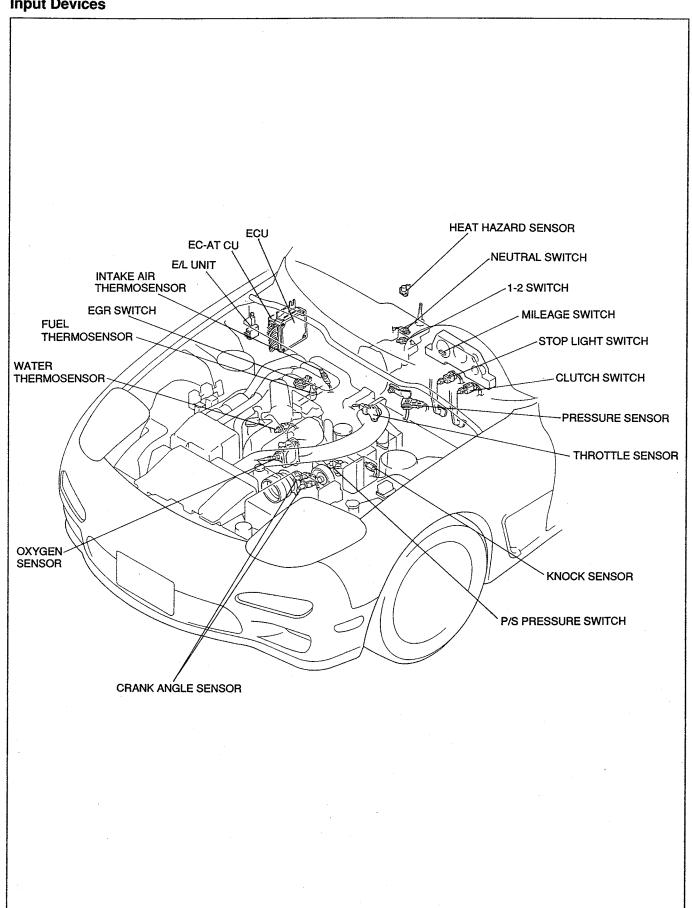
FEATURES

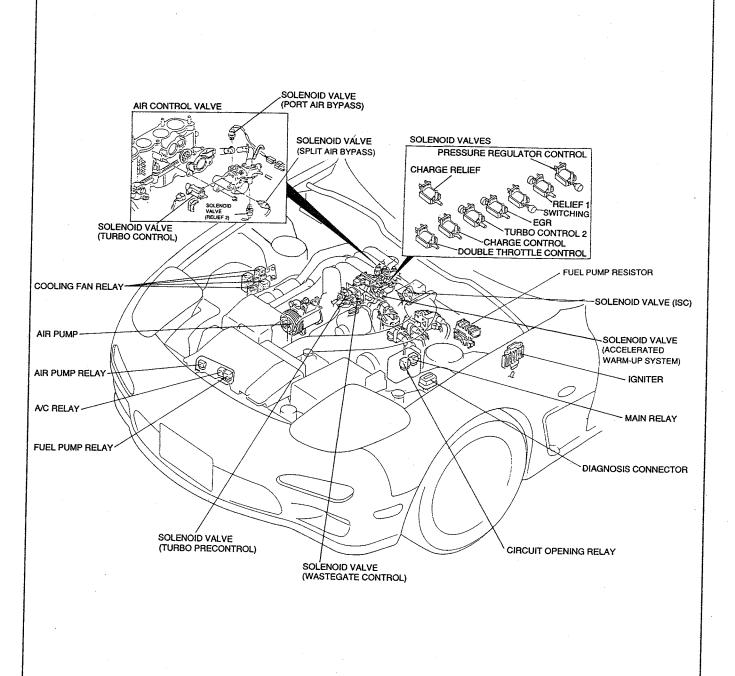
The main features of the fuel and emission control system of the Mazda RX-7 are as follows:

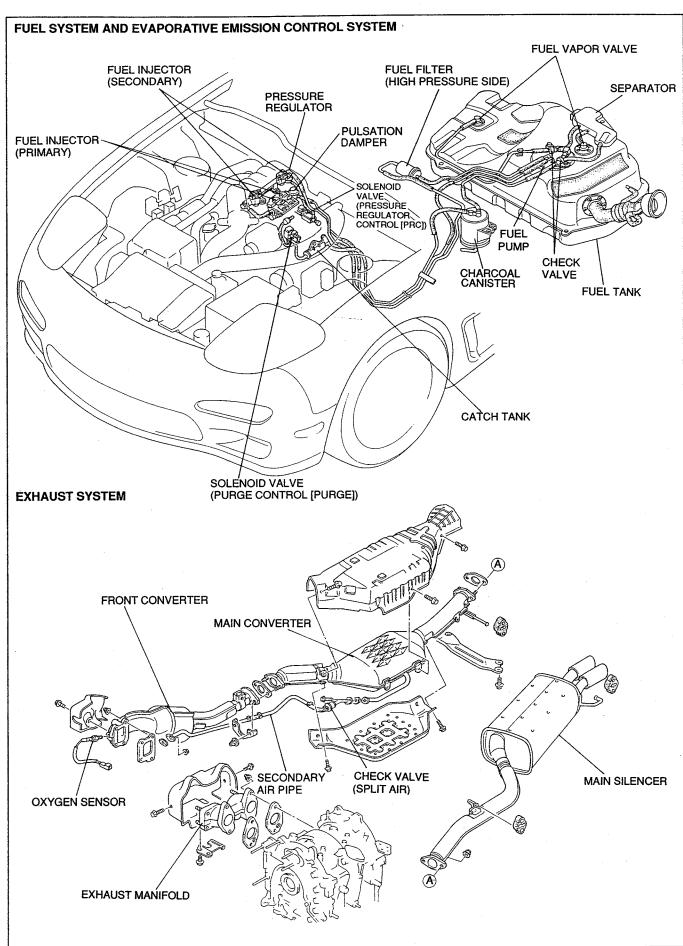




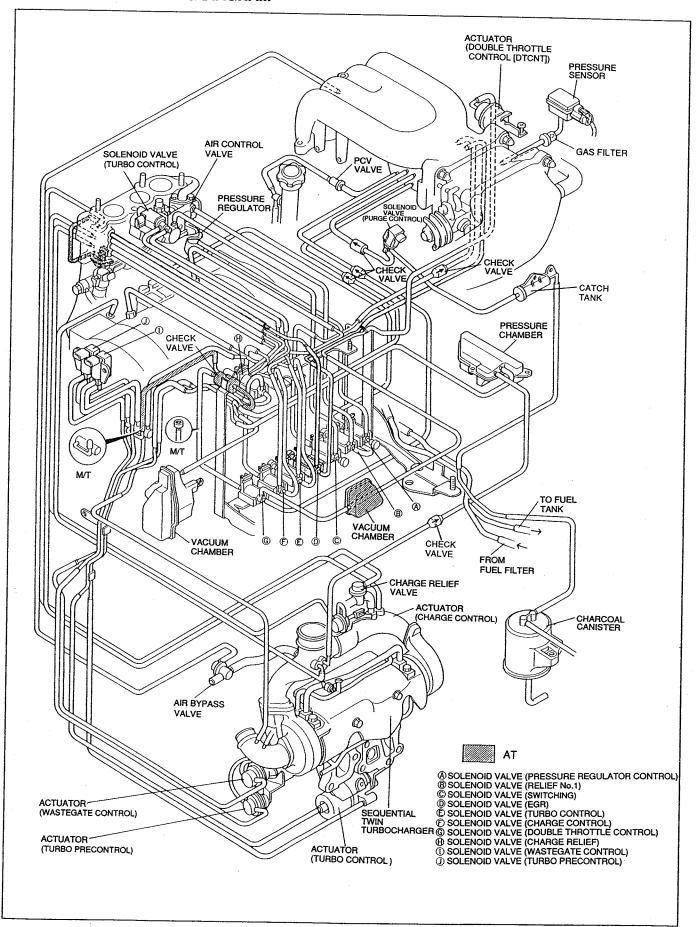
EMISSION COMPONENT LOCATIONS Input Devices

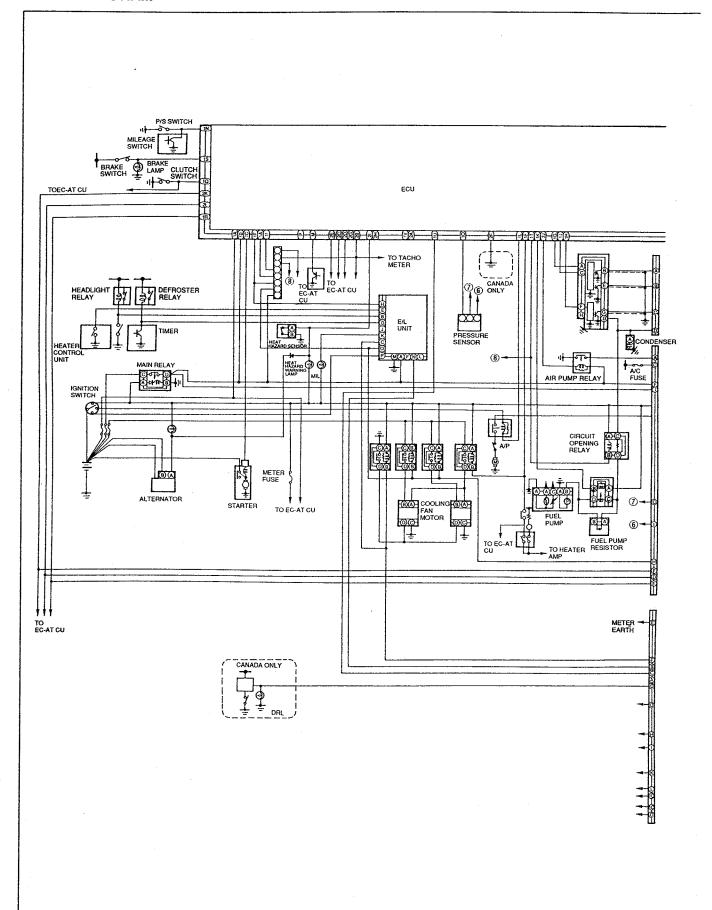


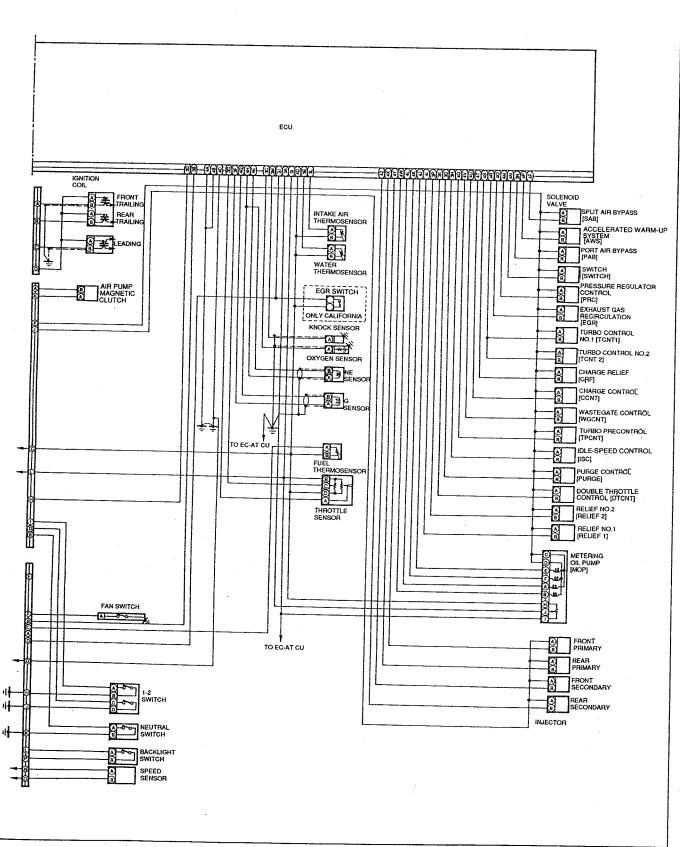




VACUUM HOSE ROUTING DIAGRAM







SPECIFICATIONS

| | Item | | Specification | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Idle speed* | | rpm | . 700—750 | | | | | | |
| 1 | Leading | ATDC° | 5 | | | | | | |
| Ignition timing* | Trailing | ATDC° | 20 | | | | | | |
| Air cleaner | • | | | | | | | | |
| Element type | | | Oil permeated | | | | | | |
| Throttle body | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | - | | | | | | |
| Туре | | | Horizontal draft {2-stage, 3-barrel} | | | | | | |
| | Primary | mm (in) | 45 {1.772} | | | | | | |
| Throttle diameter | Secondary | mm {in} | 50 {1.969} × 2 | | | | | | |
| Dashpot touch angle | | 0 | 8 | | | | | | |
| Water thermovalve op temperature | eration (full open) | °C {°F} | 55—65 {131—149} or more | | | | | | |
| Intercooler | ····· | | | | | | | | |
| Туре | | | Air cooled | | | | | | |
| Core size $\{w \times h \times t\}$ | | mm {in} | 294 × 114 × 65 {11.575 × 4.4882 × 2.5591} | | | | | | |
| Turbocharger | | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | | | | | | |
| System type | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | Sequential twin turbocharged | | | | | | |
| Cooling method | | | Water + engine oil | | | | | | |
| Boost control actuator | 727-94-3 | | Turbo precontrol + wastegate control | | | | | | |
| Boost control method | 7112. | | Solenoid valve (duty-controlled) × 2 | | | | | | |
| Fuel tank | | | Colonia valva (daly controlled) X2 | | | | | | |
| Capacity | liters | {US gal, Imp gal} | 76 {20.1, 16.7} | | | | | | |
| Fuel filler | | (oo gai, iiip gai) | 7.5 (20.1, 10.1) | | | | | | |
| | Low-pressure | | Nylon element | | | | | | |
| Type | High-pressure | | Paper element | | | | | | |
| Pressure regulator | 1 | | , apor dismon | | | | | | |
| Туре | | | Diaphragm | | | | | | |
| Regulated pressure | | kPa {kgf/cm², psi} | 250—260 {2.5—2.6, 35.6—37.0) | | | | | | |
| Fuel pump | | a (19.5.11) | 200 200 (2.0 2.0, 00.0 07.0) | | | | | | |
| Туре | | | Impeller (in tank) | | | | | | |
| Output pressure | | kPa {kgf/cm², psi} | 490—740 {5.0—7.5, 71.1—106.7} | | | | | | |
| njector | | n a (ngi/citi, psi) | 450—740 {5.0—7.5, 71.1—106.7} | | | | | | |
| Туре | | | Cido fooding | | | | | | |
| i ype | Primary | om³ fool/min | Side-feeding 550 {550} | | | | | | |
| Injection volume | | cm³ {cc}/min | | | | | | | |
| Cotolidia convertar | Secondary | cm³ {cc}/min | 850 {850} | | | | | | |
| Catalytic converter | | - | | | | | | | |
| Гуре | Front converter | | Metal | | | | | | |
| | Main converter | | Monolithic | | | | | | |
| Air pump | | <u> </u> | | | | | | | |
| Capacity | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | cm³ {cc}/rev | 375 {375} | | | | | | |
| Output | | liter/min | MT 140—200, AT 160—200 | | | | | | |
| uel | | 7/2 // 4/4 9 | | | | | | | |
| Specification | | | Unleaded premium (RON95 or higher) | | | | | | |

^{*}TEN terminal of diagnosis connector is grounded.

37U0FX-509

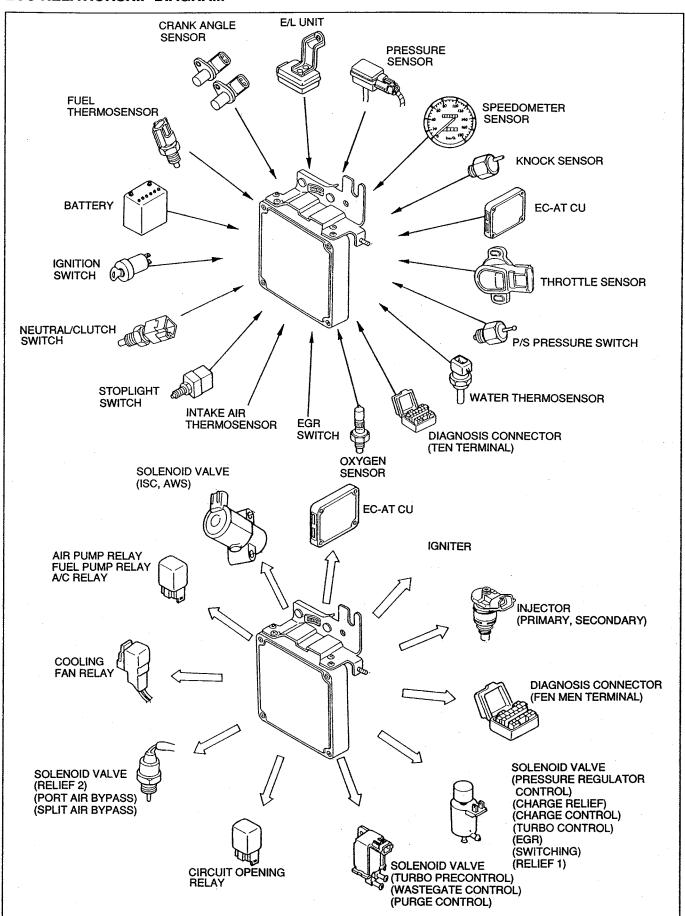
COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS

| Component | Function | Remark |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| 1-2 switch | Detects gear position (1st, 2nd) | MT only |
| Actuator (Charge control) | Controls charge control valve | _ |
| Actuator (Double throttle control) | Controls double throttle valve | Installed on extension manifold |
| Actuator (Turbo control) | Controls turbo control valve | Controlled by two solenoid valves |
| Actuator (Turbo precontrol) | Controls turbo precontrol valve | Part of turbocharger assembly |
| Actuator (Wastegate control) | Controls wastegate control valve | Part of turbocharger assembly |
| Air bypass valve | Reduces sound of intake air entering air cleaner from turbocharger during deceleration | |
| Air cleaner | Filters air entering throttle chamber | Oil permeated type |
| Air control valve | Directs air to one of three locations: exhaust port, main converter, or relief air silencer | Consists of two valves: Relief valve Switching valve |
| Air pump | Supplies secondary air to air control valve | With electromagnetic clutch |
| Atmospheric pressure sensor | Detects atmospheric pressure; sends signal to control unit | Built in ECU |
| Catalytic converter | Reduces HC, CO and NOx | _ |
| Charcoal canister | Stores fuel tank fumes when engine is stopped | Contains activated charcoal and air filter |
| Circuit opening relay | Voltage for fuel pump while engine running | |
| Clutch switch | Detects clutch condition (engaged/disengaged) | MT only |
| Crank angle sensor | Detects eccentric shaft angle at 30° intervals and front rotor position; sends signal to control unit | |
| Dashpot | Prevents sudden throttle valve closing during deceleration | |
| Diagnosis connector | Service connector terminals: 1. EGI self-diagnosis 2. EC-AT self-diagnosis [AT] 3. Initial set 4. Fuel pump check 5. Engine speed output 6. Switch and oxygen sensor monitor 7. Supply battery voltage 8. Ground 9. A/C self-diagnosis 10. Cruise control self-diagnosis 11. Electrical cooling fan self-diagnosis | 25-pin (located near fuse box) 1. FEN terminal 2. TAT and FAT terminal 3. TEN terminal 4. F/P terminal 5. IG- terminal 6. MEN terminal 7. + B terminal 8. GND terminal 9. TAC and FAC terminal 10. TSC and FSC terminal 11. TFA terminal |

| Engine control unit (ECU) | Detects the following: | |
|---------------------------|--|--|
| | Engine speed | Crank angle sensor |
| | Knocking signal | Knock sensor |
| | 3. Vehicle speed | 3. Speedometer sensor |
| | Engine coolant temperature | Water thermosensor |
| | 5. Intake air temperature | 5. Intake air thermosensor |
| | 6. Throttle valve opening angle | 6. Throttle sensor (full range) |
| | (full range) | |
| • | 7. Intake manifold pressure | 7. Pressure sensor |
| | 8. Atmospheric pressure | Atmospheric pressure sensor |
| | Oxygen concentration | Oxygen sensor |
| | 10. Air/Fuel ratio | 10. Oxygen sensor |
| | 11. Throttle valve opening angle | 11. Throttle sensor (narrow range) |
| | (narrow range) | 40 1405 |
| • | 12. Metering oil pump (MOP) position | 12. MOP position sensor |
| | signal | |
| | 13. Fuel temperature | 13. Fuel thermosensor |
| | 14. Gear position | 14. 1-2 switch (MT) |
| | 15. Clutch condition | 15. Clutch switch (MT) |
| | 16. In-gear condition | 16. Neutral switch (MT) |
| | 17. Power steering operation | 17. P/S pressure switch |
| | 18. Braking signal | 18. Stoplight switch |
| | 19. Starter signal | 19. Ignition switch |
| | 20. Electrical Load (E/L) condition | 20. E/L unit |
| | 21. EGR condition | 21. EGR switch |
| | Control operation of the following: 1. Fuel injection system 2. Ignition control system 3. Idle speed control (ISC) system 4. Pressure regulator control system 5. Secondary air injection system 6. Accelerated warm-up system 7. Sequential twin turbocharger control system | Injector Igniter Solenoid valve (idle speed control [ISC]) Solenoid valve (pressure regulator control) Solenoid valve (split air bypass [SAB]) Solenoid valve (port air bypass [PAB]) Solenoid valve (switch [SWITCH]) Solenoid valve (relief No.2 [RELIEF 2]) Solenoid valve (relief No.1 [RELIEF 1]) Solenoid valve (AWS) Solenoid valve (turbo control No.1 [TCNT1]) Solenoid valve (turbo control No.2 [TCNT2]) Solenoid valve (wastegate control [WGCNT]) Solenoid valve (turbo precontrol [TPCNT]) Solenoid valve (charge control [CCNT]) Solenoid valve (charge relief [CRF]) |
| | 8. Exhaust gas recirculation control system 9. Double throttle control system 10. A/C control system 11. Electric cooling fan control system 12. Fuel pump control system 13. Lock-up control system 14. Slip control system 15. Self-diagnosis function 16. Monitor function 17. Simulation function 18. Real-time monitor function | Solenoid valve (EGR) Solenoid valve (DTCNT) A/C relay Fan relay Fuel pump relay EC-AT CU EC-AT CU Self-Diagnosis Checker or DT-S1000 (SST) DT-S1000 (SST) DT-S1000 (SST) |

| Fuel pump | Component | Function | Remark |
|--|--|--|---|
| In tuel tank In t | Fuel filter | Filters particles from fuel | |
| generates fight voltage in ignition coil Inhibitor switch (START position) Sends engine cranking signal to ECU Injector | Fuel pump | Provides fuel to injectors | Operates while engine running In fuel tank |
| Inhibitor switch (AT) | Igniter | Receives spark signal from ECU and generates high voltage in ignition coil | _ |
| Injector Injects fuel into intake port Intake air thermosensor Detects injects engine knocking; sends signal to ECU Detects engine knocking; sends signal to ECU Main relay Supplies current to output devices and ECU Oxygen sensor Detects on gear condition; sends signal to ECU Oxygen sensor Detects on gear condition; sends signal to ECU Oxygen sensor Detects on gear condition; sends signal to ECU Oxygen sensor Detects on gear condition; sends signal to ECU Oxygen sensor Detects on gear condition; sends signal to ECU Oxygen sensor Detects on gear condition; sends signal to ECU Oxygen sensor Detects intake manifold pressure; sends signal to ECU P/S pressure sensor Detects intake manifold pressure; sends signal to ECU P/S pressure switch Detects P/S operation Pulsation damper Absorbs fuel pulsations Detects P/S operation Pulsation damper Absorbs fuel pulsations Solenoid valve (SC) Supplies bypass air into intake manifold Valve (PRC) Controls spili air volume Ocntrols switching valve of air control Valve Valve Solenoid valve (SAB) Controls switching valve of air control Valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (CRTT) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls charge relief valve Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls charge relief valve Solenoid valve (TCNT7) Controls charge relief valve Solenoid valve (TCN | Ignition switch (START position) | Sends engine cranking signal to ECU | _ |
| Intake air thermosensor | Inhibitor switch (AT) | Detects load condition; sends signal to ECU | _ |
| Intake air thermosensor | Injector | Injects fuel into intake port | Controlled by signal from ECU (side-feed type) |
| Main relay | Intake air thermosensor | Detects intake air temperature; sends signal to ECU | |
| Courting | Knock sensor | | |
| Detects oxygen concentration; sends signal to ECU Controls blowby gas introduced into engine Pressure regulator Adjusts fuel pressure supply to injectors Pressure sensor Detects intake manifold pressure; sends signal to ECU P/S pressure switch Detects P/S operation Py/S pressure switch Detects P/S operation Absorbs fuel pulsations Solenoid valve (ISC) Supplies bypass air into intake manifold Controls vacuum to pressure regulator Solenoid valve (PRC) Controls vacuum to pressure regulator Solenoid valve (SAB) Controls spilt air volume Solenoid valve (SWITCH) Controls switching valve of air control valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls port air volume Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume Installed in ACV Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls port air volume Installed in ACV Solenoid valve (CONT) Controls cacelerated warm-up system Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls wastegate valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls wastegate valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Installed below extension manifold (vacuum applied) Solenoid valve (TCNT) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls export valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Controls ex | Main relay | | _ |
| Signal to EČU | Neutral/Clutch switches (MT) | | Switch is ON in neutral |
| Pressure regulator Adjusts fuel pressure supply to injectors Pressure sensor Detects intake manifold pressure; sends signal to ECU P/S pressure switch Detects P/S operation Pressure switch Detects P/S operation Pressure switch Detects P/S operation Pressure switch Pulsation damper Absorbs fuel pulsations Solenoid valve (ISC) Supplies bypass air into intake manifold Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (PRC) Controls vacuum to pressure regulator Solenoid valve (SAB) Controls spilt air volume Pulsation dawle (SWITCH) Solenoid valve (SWITCH) Controls relief valve Polenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve Polenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve Polenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Polenoid valve (PARB) Controls accelerated warm-up system Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Polenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Polenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve Polenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls turbo control valve Polenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Polenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls charge control valve Polenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls charge control valve Polenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge relief valve Polenoid valve (CCNT) Controls double throttle valve Polenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Polenoid valve (DTCNT) Poletots verborative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Poletots verborative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Poletots verborative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Poletots verborative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Poletots verborative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Poletots verborative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Poletots verborative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Poletots verborative furmes from | | signal to ECU | Zirconia and platinum coat |
| Pressure sensor Detects intake manifold pressure; sends signal to ECU P/S pressure switch Detects P/S operation | PCV valve | | <u> </u> |
| signal to ECU P/S pressure switch Detects P/S operation Pulsation damper Absorbs fuel pulsations Solenoid valve (ISC) Supplies bypass air into intake manifold Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (PRC) Controls vacuum to pressure regulator Solenoid valve (SAB) Controls split air volume Controls switching valve of air control valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls port air volume Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (AWS) Controls accelerated warm-up system Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (TCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CCRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative turnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls evaporative turnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls evaporative turnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative turnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold FU Stoplight switch Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detect coolant temperature; send signals Installed in notrotle body | Pressure regulator | Adjusts fuel pressure supply to injectors | |
| Pulsation.damper Absorbs fuel pulsations Solenoid valve (ISC) Supplies bypass air into intake manifold Solenoid valve (PRC) Controls vacuum to pressure regulator Solenoid valve (SAB) Controls split air volume Solenoid valve (SWITCH) Controls switching valve of air control valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls port air volume Solenoid valve (PABB) Controls port air volume Solenoid valve (PABB) Controls port air volume Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo precontrol valve Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls charge control valve Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge relief valve Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge relief valve Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls exaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls intake manifo | Pressure sensor | | |
| Solenoid valve (ISC) Supplies bypass air into intake manifold Solenoid valve (PRC) Controls vacuum to pressure regulator Solenoid valve (SAB) Controls split air volume Polenoid valve (SWITCH) Solenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls switching valve of air control valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve Polenoid valve (RELIEF1) Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Polenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume Polenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume Polenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Polenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve Polenoid valve (WGCNT) Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls wastegate valve Polenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo precontrol valve Polenoid valve (TCNT) Controls charge control valve Polenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge relief valve Polenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge relief valve Polenoid valve (TCNT) Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Colenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Colenoid valve (PURGE) Controls trols evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Colenoid valve (PURGE) Controls trake air amount Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Polect coolant temperature; send signals Poletot coolant temperature; send signals | P/S pressure switch | Detects P/S operation | |
| Solenoid valve (PRC) Solenoid valve (SAB) Controls split air volume Controls switching valve of air control valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume Installed in ACV Installed in ACV Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls accelerated warm-up system Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls wastegate valve Solenoid valve (TPCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Solenoid valve (TPCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold (vacuum applied) Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls exaporative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls exaporative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls exaporative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls exaporative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls exaporative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls exaporative furmes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Installed in instrument cluster Installed in instrument cluster Installed in instrument cluster Installed i | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | Absorbs fuel pulsations | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |
| Solenoid valve (SAB) Controls split air volume Solenoid valve (SWITCH) Controls switching valve of air control valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume Installed in ACV Solenoid valve (AWS) Controls accelerated warm-up system Installed in ACV Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Installed in ACV (pressure applied) Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve Installed below extension manifold (vacuum applied) Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls wastegate valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (TPCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (EGR) Controls EGR valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Throttle body Detects throttle valve opening angle Installed on throttle body Water thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals Installed in engine | | Supplies bypass air into intake manifold | Controlled by duty signal from ECU |
| Solenoid valve (SWITCH) Controls switching valve of air control valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls accelerated warm-up system Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls wastegate valve Solenoid valve (TPCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Solenoid valve (TPCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Solenoid valve (EGR) Controls double throttle valve Solenoid valve (PTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Solenoid valve (PTCNT) Controls exaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls exaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls intake air amount Throttle body Controls enarge Detects brking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Detect coolant temperature; send signals Installed below extension manifold Installed on throttle body Installed in instrument cluster Stoplight switch Detects throttle valve opening angle Installed on throttle body Installed in instrument cluster Installed on throttle body Installed in engine | | | |
| Solenoid valve (RELIEF2) Controls relief valve • Installed in ACV Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume • Installed in ACV Solenoid valve (AWS) Controls accelerated warm-up system • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve • Installed in ACV (pressure applied) Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve • Installed below extension manifold (vacuum applied) Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls wastegate valve • Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (TCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve • Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls EGR valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls double throttle valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold • Installed in instrument cluster Stoplight switch Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Throttle body Detects throttle valve opening angle • Installed on throttle body Water thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals | | | Installed in ACV |
| Solenoid valve (RELIEF1) Controls relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume Polenoid valve (AWS) Controls accelerated warm-up system Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Controls turbo control valve Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve Controls davive (TCNT2) Controls turbo precontrol valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (TPCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls EGR valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal Controlled by duty signal from ECU Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal Controlled by duty signal from ECU Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal Controlled by duty signal from ECU Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal Controlled by duty signal from ECU Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal Controlled by duty signal from ECU Controls intake air amount Controls intake air amount Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Installed on throttle body Installed in engine | | valve | Installed below extension manifold |
| Solenoid valve (PARB) Controls port air volume • Installed in ACV Solenoid valve (AWS) Controls accelerated warm-up system • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve • Installed in ACV (pressure applied) Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve • Installed below extension manifold (vacuum applied) Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls wastegate valve • Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (TPCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve • Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (EGR) Controls EGR valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve • Installed below extension manifold Installed below extension manifold Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects throttle valve opening angle Installed on throttle body Vater thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals Installed in engine | ·-··· | Controls relief valve | Installed in ACV |
| Solenoid valve (AWS) Controls accelerated warm-up system Installed below extension manifold Controls turbo control valve Controls turbo control valve Installed in ACV (pressure applied) Installed below extension manifold (vacuum applied) Controls wastegate valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (EGR) Controls EGR valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative furnes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Throttle sensor Detects throttle valve opening angle Installed on throttle body Installed in instrument cluster Installed in instrument cluster Installed on throttle body Installed in instrument cluster | | Controls relief valve | Installed below extension manifold |
| Solenoid valve (TCNT1) Controls turbo control valve Controls turbo control valve Installed in ACV (pressure applied) Controls turbo control valve Installed below extension manifold (vacuum applied) Controls wastegate valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo precontrol valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (EGR) Controls EGR valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls espeed; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle sensor Detects throttle valve opening angle Installed on throttle body Vater thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals Installed in engine | | | Installed in ACV |
| Solenoid valve (TCNT2) Controls turbo control valve Installed below extension manifold (vacuum applied) Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls wastegate valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (TPCNT) Controls charge control valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Controls EGR valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle sensor Detects throttle valve opening angle Installed on throttle body Installed in engine | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | Controls accelerated warm-up system | Installed below extension manifold |
| Solenoid valve (WGCNT) Controls wastegate valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (TPCNT) Controls charge control valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (EGR) Controls EGR valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects throttle valve opening angle Installed in instrument cluster | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | Installed in ACV (pressure applied) |
| Solenoid valve (TPCNT) Controls turbo precontrol valve Controlled by duty signal from ECU Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (EGR) Controls EGR valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Stoplight switch Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls evaporative opening angle Installed on throttle body Vater thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals Installed in engine | | | |
| Solenoid valve (CCNT) Controls charge control valve Controls charge relief valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls EGR valve Controls EGR valve Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Stoplight switch Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects throttle valve opening angle Installed in instrument cluster Installed on throttle body Installed on throttle body Installed in engine | | | Controlled by duty signal from ECU |
| Solenoid valve (CRF) Controls charge relief valve Ontrols Controls Charge relief valve Solenoid valve (EGR) Controls EGR valve Installed below extension manifold Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Controls double throttle valve Installed below extension manifold Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Controls intake air amount Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects throttle valve opening angle Valer thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals Installed in engine | | Controls turbo precontrol valve | Controlled by duty signal from ECU |
| Solenoid valve (EGR) Controls EGR valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Stoplight switch Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects throttle valve opening angle Water thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals Installed in engine | | | Installed below extension manifold |
| Solenoid valve (DTCNT) Controls double throttle valve • Installed below extension manifold Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Stoplight switch Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects throttle valve opening angle Petect coolant temperature; send signals Installed below extension manifold Controlled by duty signal from ECU Installed in instrument cluster | The state of the s | | Installed below extension manifold |
| Solenoid valve (PURGE) Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Stoplight switch Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects throttle valve opening angle Detect coolant temperature; send signals Controlled by duty signal from ECU Installed in instrument cluster Installed in instrument cluster Controlled by duty signal from ECU Installed in instrument cluster Controlled by duty signal from ECU Installed in instrument cluster Controlled by duty signal from ECU Installed in instrument cluster Controlled by duty signal from ECU Installed in instrument cluster Controlled by duty signal from ECU | | ~ | Installed below extension manifold |
| canister to intake manifold Speedometer sensor Detects vehicle speed; sends signal to ECU Stoplight switch Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Detects throttle valve opening angle Water thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals Installed in instrument cluster | | | Installed below extension manifold |
| ECU Stoplight switch Detects braking; sends signal to ECU Throttle body Controls intake air amount Throttle sensor Detects throttle valve opening angle Vater thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals Installed in engine | | Controls evaporative fumes from charcoal canister to intake manifold | Controlled by duty signal from ECU |
| Throttle body Controls intake air amount Throttle sensor Detects throttle valve opening angle • Installed on throttle body Water thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals • Installed in engine | | | Installed in instrument cluster |
| Throttle sensor Detects throttle valve opening angle • Installed on throttle body Water thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals • Installed in engine | Stoplight switch | Detects braking; sends signal to ECU | |
| Water thermosensor Detect coolant temperature; send signals • Installed in engine | Throttle body | Controls intake air amount | |
| | Throttle sensor | Detects throttle valve opening angle | Installed on throttle body |
| | Water thermosensor | | Installed in engine |

ECU RELATIONSHIP DIAGRAM



RELATIONSHIP CHART

| OUTPUT DEVIC | = | ******* | T | Т | T | Т | | ··· | | - | · | · | | | | | | | | | | // | | · - | -,- - | | | -, |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------|---------|---------------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------|---------|------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|---------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------|-------------------|-----------|----------|--|--------------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| OGIPOT DEVIC | | INJECTOR | | | | | | | | | ; | SOI | _EN | 101 | Dν | AL | VE | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | ECI | | | | F | Τ | Τ, | _ | Т | | Т | Т | T | T | | | | | Γ- | Г | Т | - | | | | | |
| | | 3 | | | | | | | OTO LEM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 1 |
| | | | 1 | | | | | Z 3 | | 킬 | | | | | | | | ı | : | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | CVCTEM | O L LIVI | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | _ | , | | | 0 | | | | 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 1 | |
| | | | DEI AV | 5 | | • | .1 - | | 5 8 | 5 | <u>ا</u> ا | ᆡ | | - [| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | 2 | | | ן ל | 5 6 | | 뢰 | | | | | | 빙 | | | | | | | | | | 1 |
| | | | | 2 ≥ | | 2 | 3 | F | 1 = | | | ON INCI | ᅵ | CONTROL | Ш | | | A | SS | | 7 | | | | | > | | |
| | Ė | | | | : | 2 | | | 2 u | 2 2 | | | CONTROL | Ž | RELIEF | | | 길 | YP. | | E | | | | | \ | | ₹ |
| | ا ا | | | ો 🛎 | | H | ď | | Щ | | | Z 3 | ָל וֹאָ | 8 | 2 | | 9 | 鬥 | B | | ŏ | | _ | | > | | 8 | ≦ |
| | 2 | <u> </u> | | ā | | SP |) <u></u> | ╢╫ | Į į | | | | 2 | <u>S</u> | SE SE | | 됤 | 8 | ₹ | F 2 | ñ | | 0 | | II. | \ | 빙 | þ |
| NIDUT DEVICE | EI IN IECTION AND INT | FIEL IN ECTION TIMING | CIRCLIIT OPENING | FIJE PIMP | GNITER | IDI E-SPEED CONTROL | ACCEL FRATED WARM IN | DOLIBLE THROTTLE | PRESSURE REGIL ATOR CONTROL | Ti IDDO DDF | בו ל סול | TIPPO | IUMBO | CHARGE | CHARGE | RELIEF | SWITCHING | AIR CONTROL VALVE | PORT AIR BYPASS | RELIEF | PURGE CONTROL | EGR | EC-AT CU | 9 | A/C RFI AY | AIR PUMP RELAY | SERVICE CODE | MONITOR LAMP |
| INPUT DEVICE | | + | + | ┿ | ₩- | - | ┿ | ╀ | +- | +- | - | - | + | - | -+ | - | —⊢ | - | 픠 | æ | ₫ | Щ | Ш | MOP | Ž | ₹ | S | Į≚ |
| CRANK ANGLE NE SIGNAL SENSOR G SIGNAL | 10 | + | 10 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | C | | | | | 2 | 0 |) (C | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| - Grantine | | 0 | - | \vdash | 0 | | ├ | <u> </u> | <u> </u> | - | ╂- | ╀ | + | + | 4 | \perp | _ | _ | 4 | _ | | _ | _ | | | _ | 0 | Ш |
| THROTTLE NARROW RANG | | 0 | - | - | 0 | 0 | \vdash | 0 | 0 | - | + | + | + | + | | - | | | 2 | 이 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | _ | 0 | 0 | Ш |
| WATER THERMOSENSOF | | 1 | \vdash | \vdash | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | ├- | 0 | + | C | | 4 | ┥- | | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | \dashv | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\overline{\Box}$ | 0 | - | | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| INTAKE AIR THERMOSENSOR | 0 | \vdash | | \vdash | 0 | 0 | <u> </u> | ۲ | \vdash | ۲ | + | + | + | + | + | | 0 (| | 2 | 익 | 9 | 0 | | | 0 | | 0 | Н |
| FUEL THERMOSENSOR | 0 | T | \dagger | 0 | 0 | 0 | | \vdash | 0 | ┢ | ╁ | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | - | | | | | | | 0 | Н |
| PRESSURE SENSOR | 0 | | | Ō | 0 | 0 | | - | Ť | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | | 1 | | | , , | _ | 0 | 0 | | | | | 0 | $\vdash\vdash$ |
| OXYGEN SENSOR | 0 | \vdash | | | - | | | | | Ĕ | Ť | f | + | + | | - | | | - | - | 0 | \leq | | 0 | | 0 | 0 | |
| KNOCK SENSOR | | | | | 0 | | - | | _ | | \vdash | 1 | + | 十 | + | 1 | + | + | + | + | \dashv | | - | | | | 0 0 | 0 |
| SPEEDOMETER SENSOR | | | | | | 0 | | | | \vdash | \vdash | 1 | \dagger | \dagger | + | \top | + | + | + | + | \dashv | \dashv | \dashv | | _ | \vdash | 0 | \dashv |
| MOP POSITION SENSOR | | | | | | | | | | | T | T | \dagger | + | \dagger | \dagger | \dashv | + | \dagger | + | + | \dashv | | 0 | - | \dashv | 0 | \dashv |
| E/L UNIT | 0 | | | | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | | 1 | T | T | 1 | 十 | 1 | + | 1 | | \dashv | Ĭ | | \dashv | - | |
| A/C SWITCH | 0 | | | | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | | T | \top | 7 | 7 | 1 | + | \top | \dashv | \dashv | \dashv | \neg | \dashv | \dashv | - | 7 |
| P/S PRESSURE SWITCH | 0 | | | | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | T | T | T | \top | \top | \top | \top | 十 | 7 | \exists | \dashv | \dashv | | \dashv | | 히 |
| IGNITION SWITCH (ST SIGNAL) | 0 | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | 0 | | | 0 | Π | T | | | 5 | | T | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 7 | 0 | 0 | _ | 0 |
| STOPLIGHT SWITCH | | | | | | 0 | | | | | | | Γ | T | T | T | | T | T | 1 | 7 | 7 | 7 | \dashv | | Ť | | ŏ |
| NEUTRAL SWITCH | 0 | | | | 0 | <u> </u> | 0 | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | C |) C | 0 | | | 5 (| 0 | | | 0 | ot | | ō |
| CLUTCH SWITCH | 0 | | _ | | 0 | 2 | 0 | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | C | | | | | 5 (| 0 | | \rightarrow | - | 0 | | o |
| 1-2 SWITCH | | | \dashv | \dashv | | \perp | \Box | | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | T | T | T | T | | 7 | | 1 | | 0 | 寸 | 7 |
| EGR SWITCH (CALIF.) | \sqcup | _ | _ | \perp | \perp | 4 | | \bot | \perp | | | | | | | | | | | | 7 | 5 | \top | | \Box | | ा | |
| MILEAGE SWITCH | | | _ | _ | _ | | _ | | \bot | _ | | | | L | 0 | | 0 | 0 | | | | | T | | 1 | | \exists | 7 |
| HEAT HAZARD SENSOR | | _ | _ | \dashv | 4 | 4 | \downarrow | \perp | 4 | | | | _ | | | | | | | | | | | | | 0 | \Box | 7 |
| SOLENOID SHIFT A VALVE SIGNAL SHIFT B | | \dashv | 4 | - | | \downarrow | - | 의 | - | | | 0 | 0 | 0 | _ | C | | \perp | \perp | | | |) | $oxed{\mathbb{I}}$ | | 0 | | |
| | H | \dashv | \dashv | | 2 | + | 1 | 익 | 4 | <u> </u> | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | <u> </u> | C | | 1 | | \perp | | |) | $oldsymbol{ol}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}$ | $oldsymbol{\perp}$ | 0 | | |
| REDUCE TORQUE SIGNAL | | \dashv | \dashv | 1 | 2 | 4 | \dashv | \downarrow | \downarrow | _ | _ | | | | _ | _ | | \perp | L | 1 | \perp | |) | | | | | |
| SLIP LOCK-UP SIGNAL INHIBITOR SIGNAL | | \dashv | + | - | 4 | + | _ | \dashv | 4 | \downarrow | _ | | | _ | <u> </u> | | \perp | 1 | 1 | | \perp | | | | | \bot | | |
| DIAGNOSIS CONNECTOR | 0 | \dashv | + | 4 | | | | 4 | | 2 | 의 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | | | 2 | | 2 0 | <u> </u> | _[| 의 |
| (TEN-TERMINAL) | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE SENSOR | 0 | | | |) (| 2 | _ | 1 | | 5 | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | T | 0 | \vdash | T | 0 | , | \dagger | + | + | \top | + | 5 | \dashv |

37U0FX-512

ENGINE CONTROL OPERATION CHART Output devices and engine condition

| | ENG | INE CONDITION | CRANKING (COLD | WARMING UP | MEDIL | JM LOAD | ACCELE- | HEAVY | DECELE- | IDLE | IGN : ON (ENGINE | REMARK | |
|-----------------|------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|---|------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------|------------------|---|---------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| OUTPUT DEVICE | | ENGINE) | (DURING IDLE) | COLD | WARM | RATION | LOAD | RATION | 1000 | NOT RUNNING) | REWARK | | |
| INJECT | -OB | FUEL INJECTION AMOUNT | | Rich | | Normal | Ri | ich | Fuel cut* | Rich | No | | |
| MOEO | On | PRIMARY | | | Оре | erate | , | | Not operate | Operate | injection | | |
| | | SECOND | | Not o | perate | | | | | | | | |
| CIRCUI | T OPENING R | ELAY | | ON OFF | | | | | | | | | |
| FUEL P | UMP RELAY | | | OFF ON OFF (Low speed) (High speed) (Low speed) | | | | | | | | | |
| IGNITE | R | | Fixed at BTDC 5° | | Advan | ced: Depend | s on engine co | ndition | | Fixed at ATDC 5° (L) ATDC 20° (T) | - | | |
| | ACCELER/ SYSTEM (/ | ATED WARM-UP AWS) | c | ON | | | | OFF | | | | | |
| | IDLE SPEE SYSTEM (I | D CONTROL SC) | 11 | ON ack duty) | - | | ON (Fixed duty) | | | O (Feedba | | | |
| | DOUBLE T (DTCNT) | HROTTLE CONTROL | | ON (Closed) | | OFF (Open) | ON (AT only) | | OI (Op | | | | |
| | TURBO PR (TPCNT) | ECONTROL | 13 | FF osed) | | • | on engine dition | . 1 | | | OFF (Closed) | | |
| | WASTEGA (WGCNT) | TE CONTROL | - | 0 | N | | Depends cond | | | OFF (Closed) | | | |
| | TURBO CO (TCNT) | NTROL | | | FF sed) | | O (Op | | | OFF (Closed) | | | |
| .VE | CHARGE C (CCNT) | ONTROL | | O (Clo | | | OF (Op | 1 | | ON (Closed) | | | |
| SOLENOID VALVE | CHARGE R (CRF) | ELIEF | | O (Op | | | OF (Clos | | O (Op | 1 | OFF (Closed) | | |
| ENO | RELIEF 1 (RELIEF 1) | | | OFF (Closed) | | ON (Open) | | | OFF (Close) | | | | |
| SOI | SWITCHING (SWITCH) | 3 | | OFF (Port) | | | ON (Split) | | | OFF (Port) | | · | |
| | SPLIT AIR I (SAB) | BYPASS | | OFF (Closed) | | | ON (Open) | | | OFF (Closed) | | | |
| | PORT AIR E (PAB) | BYPASS | OI (Clo | | O (Op | 1 | | | OFF (Closed) | | - | | |
| | RELIEF 2 (RELIEF 2) | | l. | N en) | | OFF (Closed) | | | | | | | |
| | PRESSURE CONTROL | REGULATOR (PRC) | | | (Vacuum | OFF to pressure re | egulator) | | | *ON | OFF | *During hot start only | |
| | PURGE CO (PURGE) | NTROL | | OFF | | ON (Purge) | | | OFF | | | | |
| | EXHAUST (| GAS ATION (EGR) | | OFF (EGR cut) | | *ON (EGR) | | | OFF (EGR Cut) | | | *Engine speed: 1,700—3,850 rpm | |
| A/C RELAY | | | OFF (A/C Cut) | | ON | | OFF (A/C Cut) | | Of | vi . | | | |
| COOLIN | G FAN RELAY | | | OFF | | | Deper | nds on engine | coolant temp | erature | | | |
| METERI (MOP) | NG OIL PUMP | | OFF | | | | ON | | | | OFF | | |

37U0FX-513

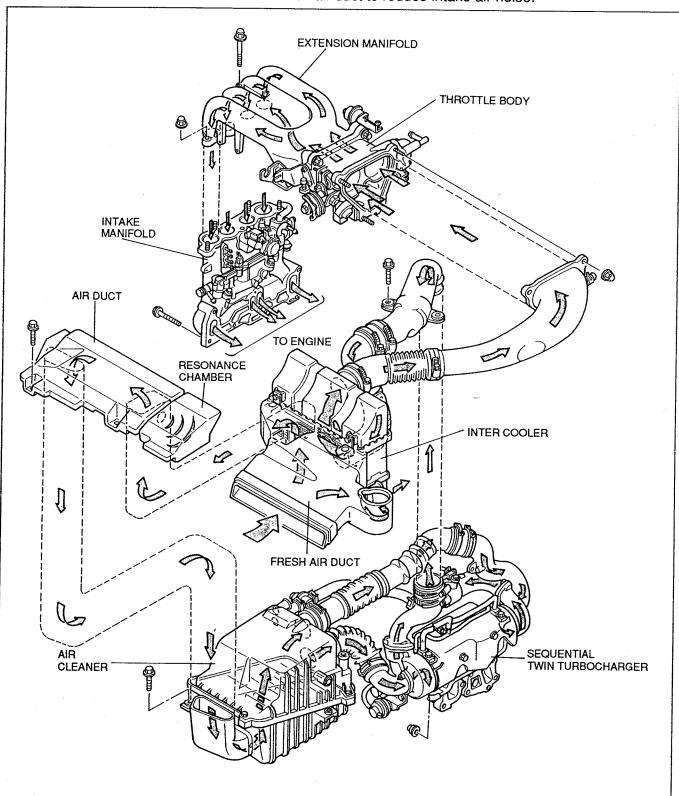
INTAKE AIR SYSTEM

OUTLINE

This system supplies and controls the amount of air required by the engine for operation.

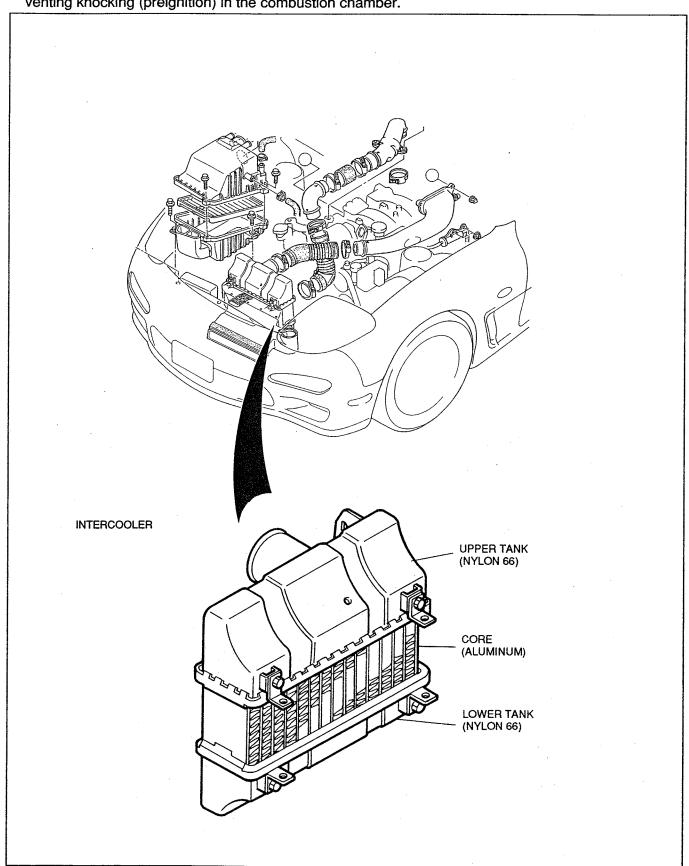
 Air taken in through the fresh air duct is filtered through the air cleaner and then pressurized by the turbocharger. The pressurized air is cooled as it next passes through the intercooler to reduce its temperature and increase its density. The pressurized air is then sent to the combustion chamber through the throttle body, extension manifold, and intake manifold.

A resonance chamber is fitted after the fresh air duct to reduce intake air noise.



INTERCOOLER

- An air-to-air intercooler is mounted at the front of the vehicle to cool the intake air as air flows over the intercooler while the vehicle is moving.
- By cooling the heated air from the turbocharger, the charging efficiency (air amount) increases, preventing knocking (preignition) in the combustion chamber.

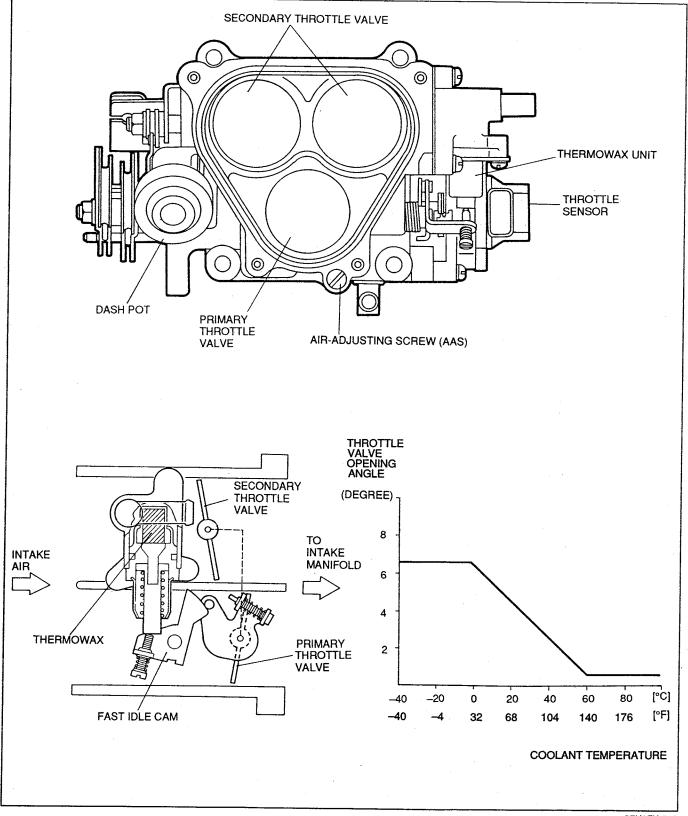


THROTTLE BODY

• The throttle body is a two-stage, three-barrel type. To assure smoothness, a bearing is used to support the shaft of the secondary throttle valve.

The throttle body consists of the throttle valve, which regulates the intake air amount; the throttle sensor, which detects the throttle opening amount; the thermowax unit, which controls engine speed during fast idle; and the dashpot, which controls deceleration to reduce deceleration shock.

The relative angle between the primary and secondary throttle valves differs between MT and AT vehicles.



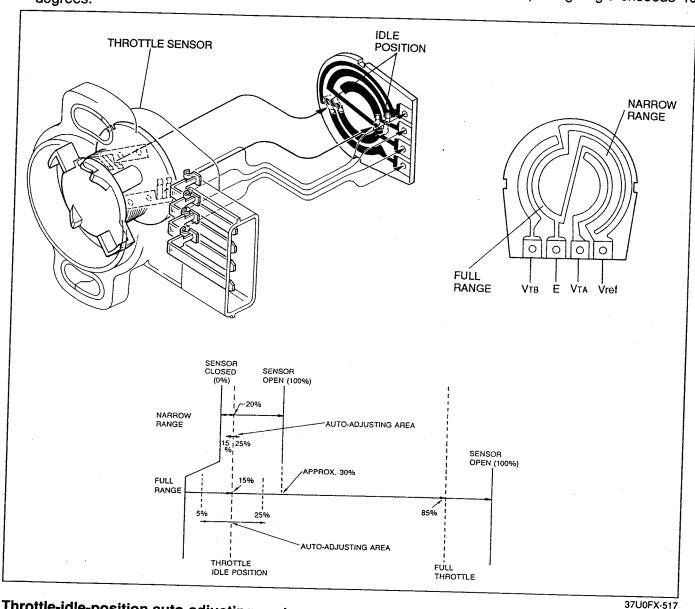
THROTTLE SENSOR

- The throttle sensor detects two kinds of throttle opening angles: narrow range and full range. The learning control performed in the ECU makes adjustment unnecessary except when replacing the
- The narrow-range indication is used to judge when the throttle is fully closed and detects the engine idle range, the full-range indication detects the degree of acceleration and is used to control operation of the turbochargers.

Characteristics

The throttle sensor has linear characteristics in both the narrow and full ranges.

• The narrow range portion indicates full throttle opening when the throttle opening angle exceeds 40



Throttle-idle-position auto-adjusting system

Throttle-idle-position automatic adjusting system is incorporated within the ECU.

This system automatically compensates for certain variations in the output signal of the throttle sensors. At idle, the narrow range is set to output a signal of 20% of full-open. With the throttle idle position automatic adjusting system, the ECU will compensate for actual output values of 15%-25%. If the output is less than 15% or more than 25% at idle, the ECU fixes the value at 15% and 25%

respectively for fail-safe operation.

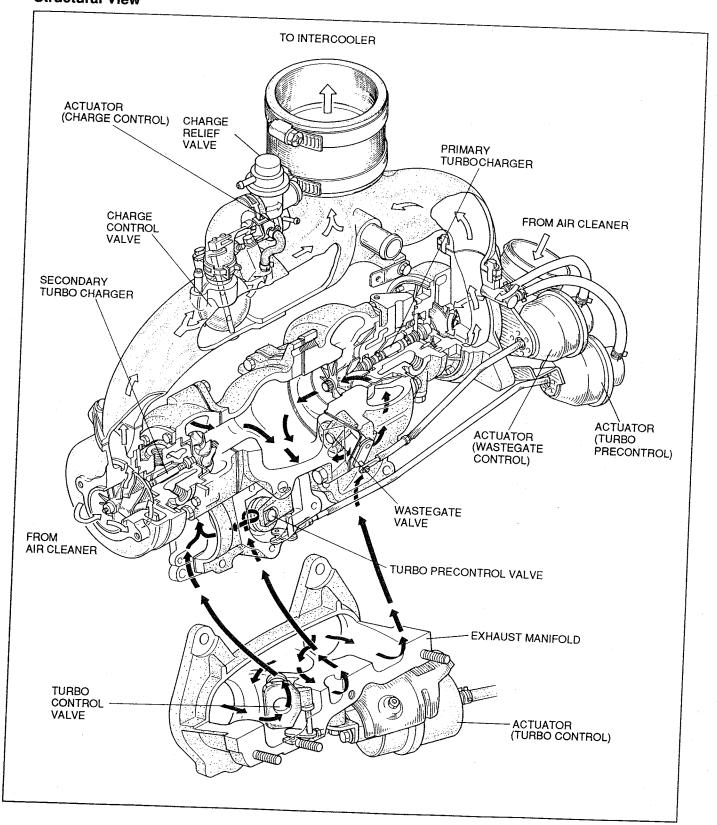
Operation for the full range is the same. The sensor is set to register a 15% signal at idle, and the ECU compensates within the range from 5%-25%. If over or under the signal is fixed at 5% and 25% respectively for fail-safe operation.

SEQUENTIAL TWIN TURBOCHARGER CONTROL SYSTEM

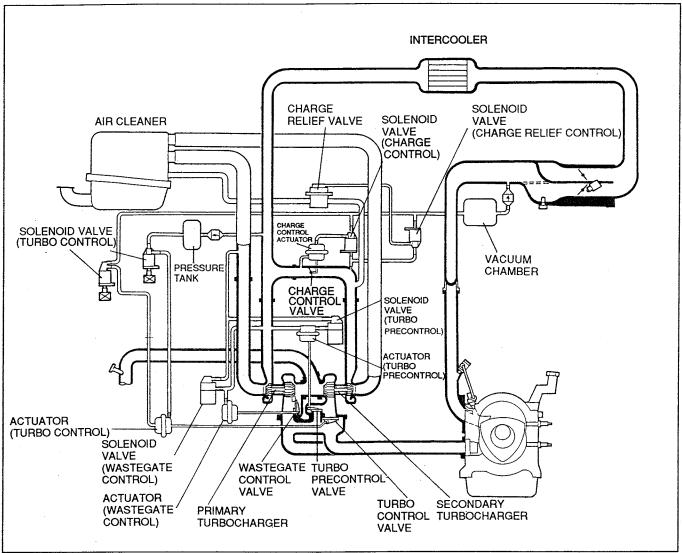
OUTLINE

The sequential twin turbocharger system has been designed to provide improved engine performance. As commonly known, the turbocharger is a very effective means of pressurizing the intake air of an engine in the higher rpm ranges. But, traditionally this method does not give much added power in the low rpm ranges. This new two-stage dual-turbocharger system eliminates this problem.

Structural View



- The sequential twin turbocharger system consists of two turbochargers (primary and secondary) fitted back-to-back. In the low-speed, light-load range, turbocharging is done only by the primary turbocharger. In the high-speed, heavy-load range, turbocharging is handled by the primary and secondary turbochargers working in union.
- To prevent a drop of boost pressure when the secondary turbocharger begins to operate, the secondary turbocharger is made to spin prior to its operation.
- The sequential twin turbocharger system consists of the primary and secondary turbochargers and the related actuators and solenoid valves (turbo precontrol, turbo main control, wastegate control, charge control, charge relief).



37U0X-519

Operation

| | Engine speed | Low-speed | \rightarrow | High-speed | |
|----------------|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--|
| Devices | | Light-load | > | Heavy-load | |
| | Primary | Boost pressure | | | |
| Turbocharger | Secondary | Stop | Preliminary rotation | Boost | |
| Solenoid valve | Turbo precontrol | Duty control | | Duty 5% (fully open) | |
| | Wastegate control | Duty 95% (fully closed) | | Duty control | |
| | Charge relief | OFF | | ON | |
| | Charge control | ON | | OFF | |
| | Turbo control | OFF | | ON | |

37U0FX-520

Low-speed, light-load range

• In the low-speed, light-load range, boost is produced by only the primary turbocharger. At this time, the air passage to the secondary turbocharger is closed by the turbo control valve. The turbo precontrol valve is opened or closed by supercharge boost pressure control (duty control).

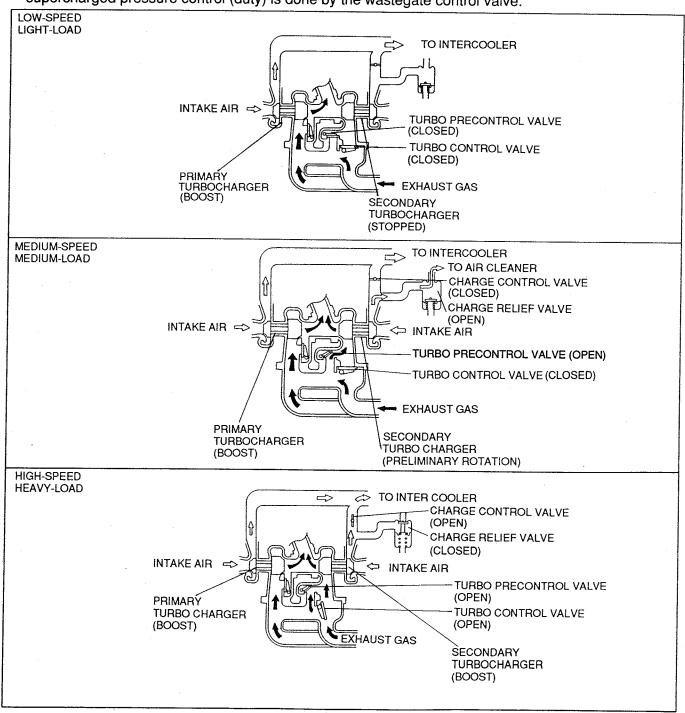
Medium-speed, Medium-load range

 In the medium-speed, medium-load range, the turbo precontrol valve is almost fully opened, and preliminary supercharge boost pressure generated by the secondary turbocharger is released to the air cleaner through the charge relief valve.

Because the secondary turbocharger is made to spin before its actual operation, the feeling of sudden added boost upon transition from primary only to primary plus secondary turbocharger operation is reduced.

High-speed, heavy-load range

In the high-speed heavy-load range, the turbo control valve is opened, and maximum boost pressure
is created by the primary and secondary turbochargers. When both turbochargers are actuated,
supercharged pressure control (duty) is done by the wastegate control valve.



SECONDARY TURBOCHARGER OPERATION CONTROL Solenoid valve (Turbo precontrol)

- The ECU outputs duty signals to control the solenoid valve turbo precontrol based on signals from the crank angle sensor, the throttle sensor (full range), and pressure sensor.
- The ECU controls the boost pressure applied to the turbo precontrol valve actuator by regulating the solenoid valve, and rotates the secondary turbocharger in the appropriate engine speed and load ranges.

Solenoid Valve (Charge Relief)

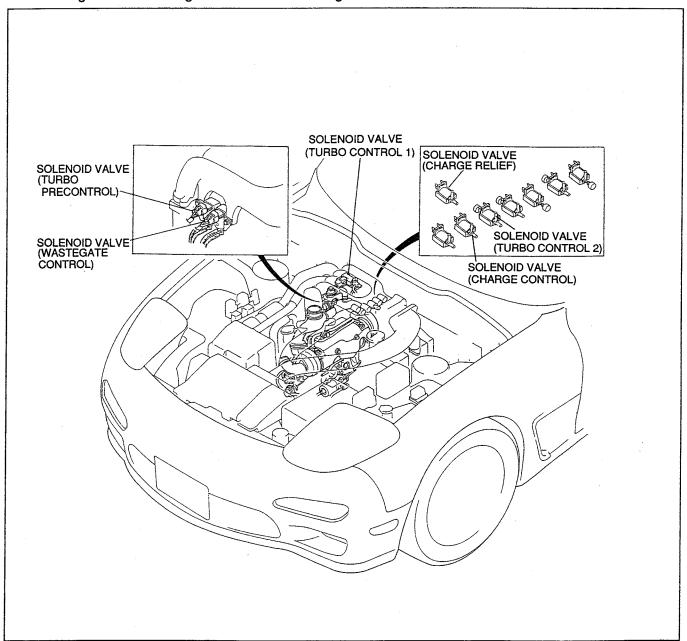
• This valve releases to the air cleaner the boost pressure generated during preliminary rotation of the secondary turbocharger.

Solenoid Valve (Charge Control)

• During operation of the primary turbocharger, this valve closes the air path to the secondary turbocharger when it is not operating (including the preliminary rotation range).

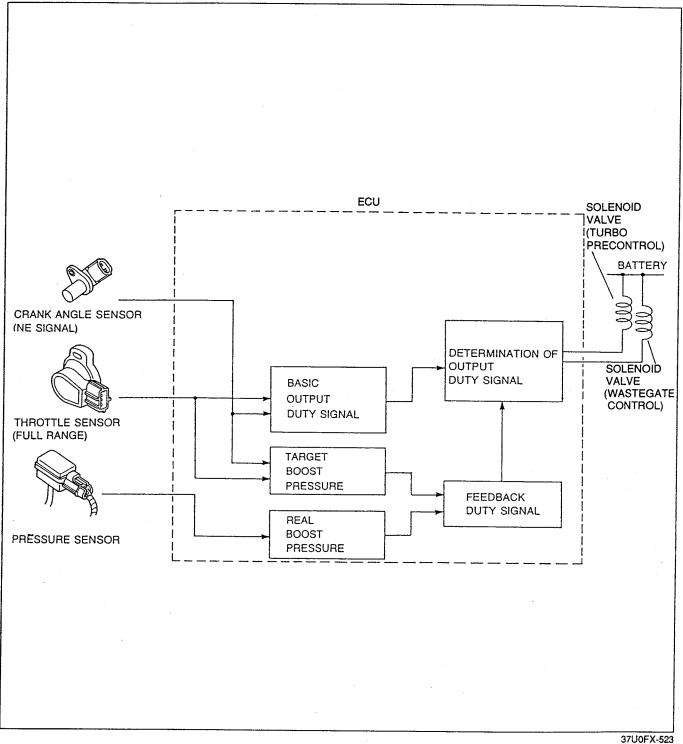
Solenoid Valve (Turbo Control 1, 2)

• During operation of just the primary turbocharger, this valve closes the turbo control valve to prevent exhaust gas from entering the second turbocharger.



BOOST PRESSURE CONTROL SYSTEM

• The boost pressure control includes the turbo precontrol valve and wastegate control valve.



.

Operation

- 1. The duty signal from ECU is varied from 5% to 95% based on information from the full-range throttle sensor and the crank angle sensor (NE signal). This output duty signal is determined within the ECU by the basic output duty signal and the feedback duty signal.
- 2. The duty signal is sent to the duty solenoid valve.
- 3. As the duty increases, the duty solenoid valve opening increases, and the pressurized air acting on the actuator decreases.
- 4. The wastegate valve then closes, and the turbo boost pressure increases.
 - The ECU contains the data to set the maximum turbo boost pressure.

The boost pressure is basically determined by the throttle opening angle and engine speed.

SEQUENTIAL TWIN TURBOCHARGER

- Water cooling is used to improve the durability of the turbochargers
- A turbo precontrol actuator and wastegate control valve are mounted to the assembly.

ACTUATOR (TURBO CONTROL)

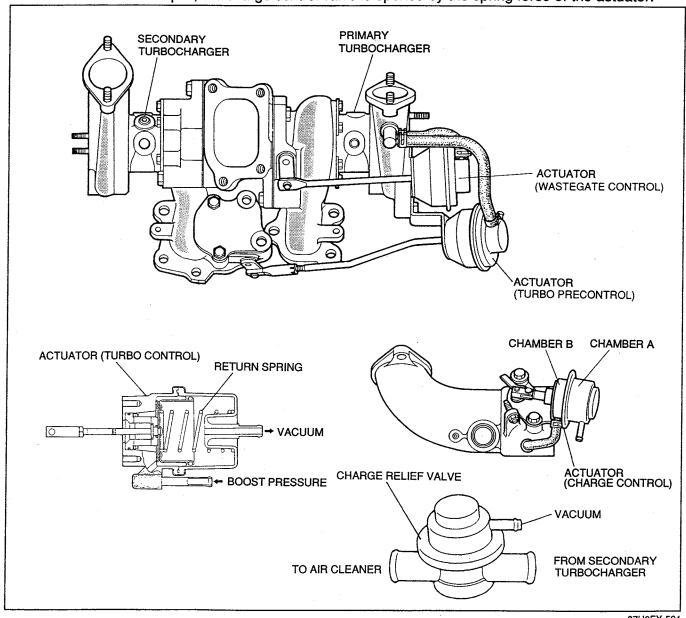
• The actuator controls the turbo control valve It uses the boost pressure of the primary turbocharger and the vacuum within the intake manifold to open and close the turbo control valve.

CHARGE RELIEF VALVE

• The charge relief valve release to the air cleaner pressure generated during boost pressure control of the primary turbocharger and during preliminary rotation of the secondary turbocharger.

CHARGE CONTROL VALVE

- This valve controls the transition from primary to combined (primary and secondary) turbocharger operation.
- When the charge control valve vacuum is applied to actuator chamber A, pressure is generated by the primary turbo and applied to chamber B resulting in valve position closed. In the full-open valve position, secondary turbocharger pressure is applied to chamber A, and primary turbocharger pressure is applied to chamber B. The change control solenoid valve. When the pressure applied to both chambers becomes equal, the charge control valve is opened by the spring force of the actuator.



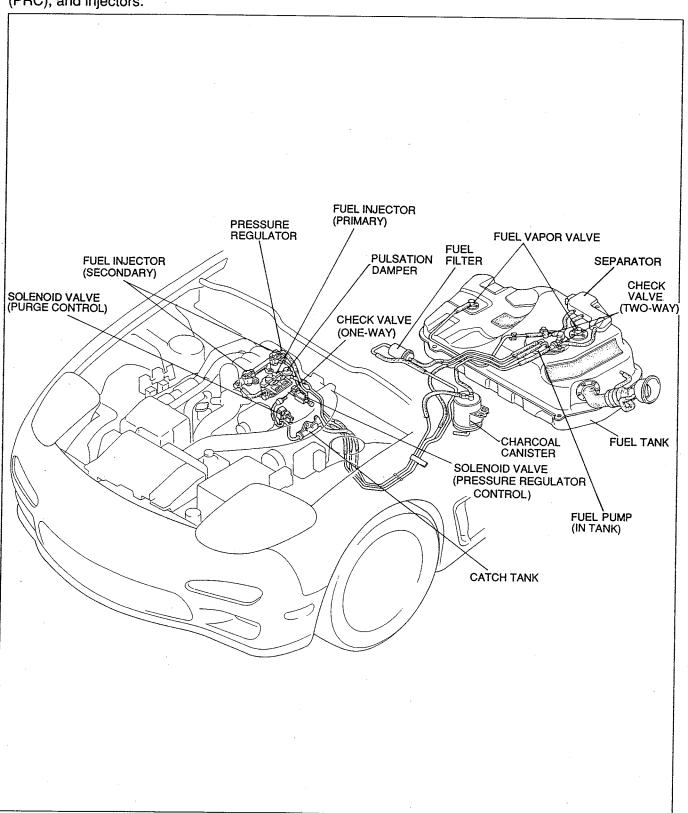
FUEL SYSTEM

OUTLINE

This system supplies the necessary fuel at a constant pressure to the injectors.

Fuel is metered and injected into the intake manifold according to the injection control signals from the ECU.

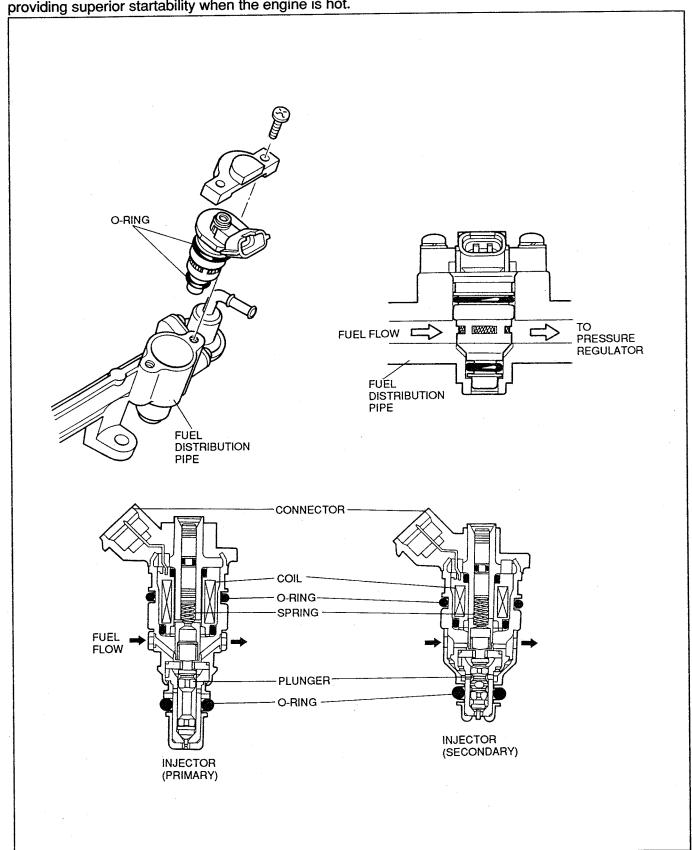
This system consists of the fuel pump, fuel filters, pressure regulator, pulsation dumper, solenoid valve (PRC), and injectors.



INJECTOR

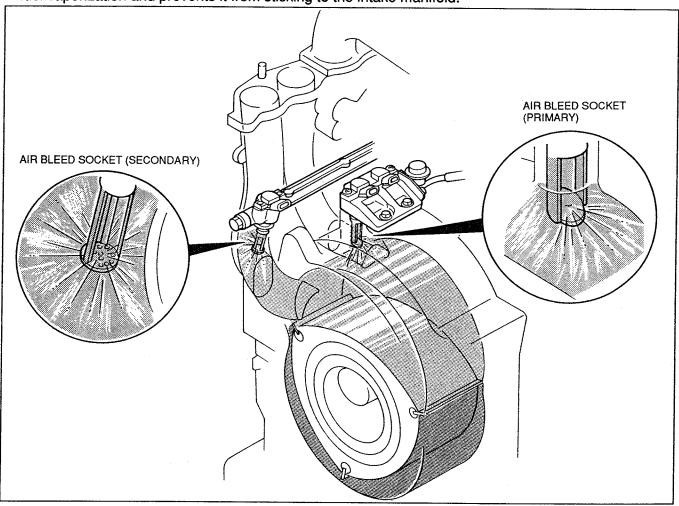
Side feed injectors are employed for the 13B engine. Fuel is fed through the side of the injector near the bottom of the injector body.

Because of this structure, fuel vapor generated by engine heat is easily carried away by the return fuel, providing superior startability when the engine is hot.



Air Bleed Socket

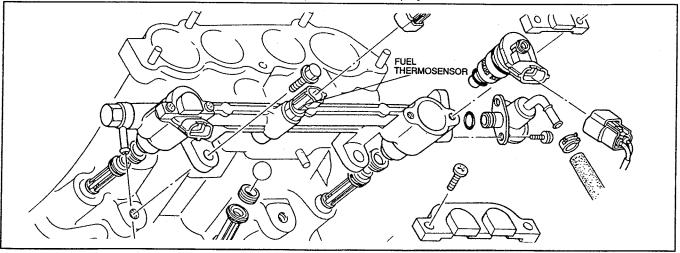
- An air bleed socket is installed below each of the injectors to aid atomization in vaporization of the fuel.
- While the air bleed socket of the secondary injector is used to vaporize fuel, the primary injector air bleed socket with a mixing plate vaporizes the fuel as well as controlling the injection angle.
 Because of the location of the primary injector in relation to the combustion chamber, the time allowed to mix the fuel in the combustion chamber is short. The air bleed socket design facilitates fuel vaporization and prevents it from sticking to the intake manifold.



37U0FX-527

FUEL THERMOSENSOR

The fuel thermosensor is installed in the secondary fuel distribution pipe to monitor the fuel temperature for operation of the pressure regulator control (hot start assist) systems.

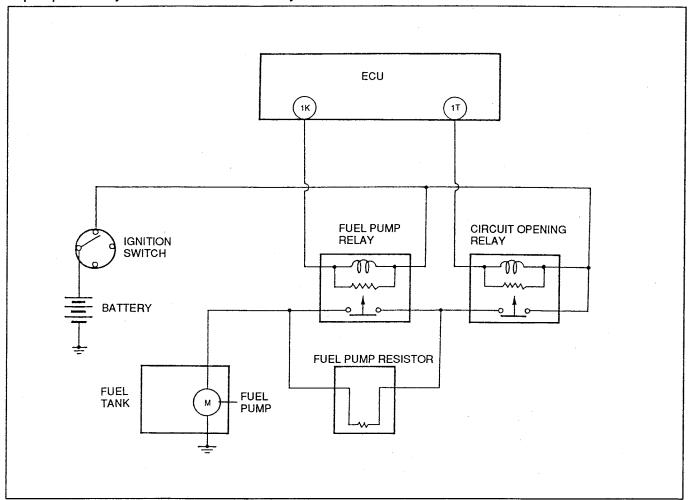


37U0FX-528

FUEL PUMP CONTROL SYSTEM

Outline

• The ECU turns the fuel pump ON/OFF via the circuit opening relay and fuel pump relay. By controlling the fuel pump relay, the ECU also controls fuel pump operation in two phases to improve fuel pump reliability and ensure the necessary fuel amount.



37U0FX-529

Circuit opening relay

The circuit opening relay is controlled by the ECU and turns the fuel pump ON and OFF.

Fuel pump relay

• The fuel pump relay is controlled by the ECU and controls fuel pump operation voltage via the fuel pump relay.

Fuel pump resistor

• The fuel pump resistor controls fuel pump operation voltage. During low-speed engine operation, fuel pump voltage is supplied via the fuel pump resistor.

Operation

- (1) In low-speed range (1K terminal of ECU is battery voltage)
 - The fuel pump is driven by voltage via the fuel pump resister.
- (2) In high-speed range (1K terminal of is 0V)
 - The fuel pump is driven by battery voltage.

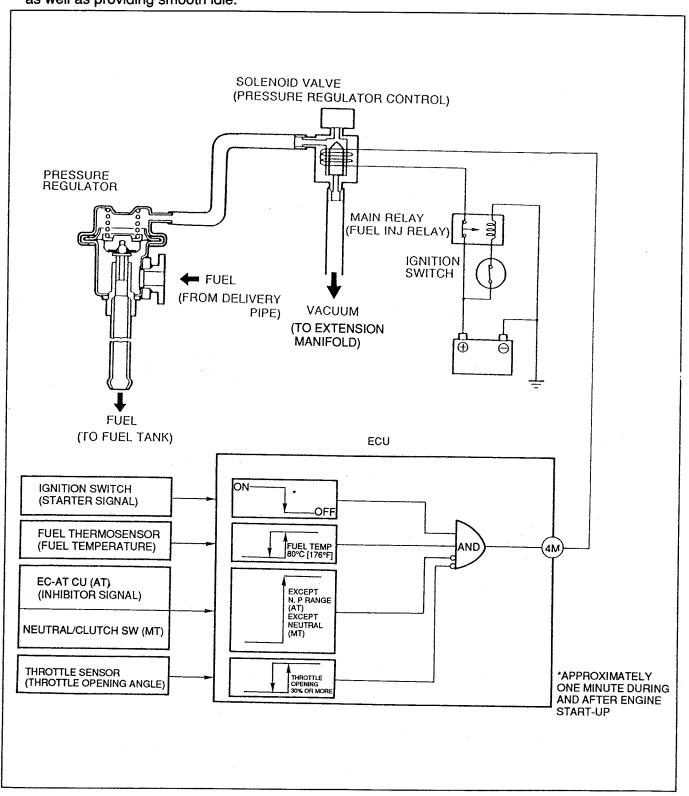
Operating conditions

The system operates when either of the following conditions is met.

- During engine start-up
- Solenoid valve (pressure regulator control) operating
- High speed and heavy load

PRESSURE REGULATOR CONTROL SYSTEM

 This system cancels the vacuum applied to the pressure regulator and increases the fuel pressure during hot engine start-up and for a period immediately following start-up. This improves hot starting as well as providing smooth idle.



37U0FX-530

Operation

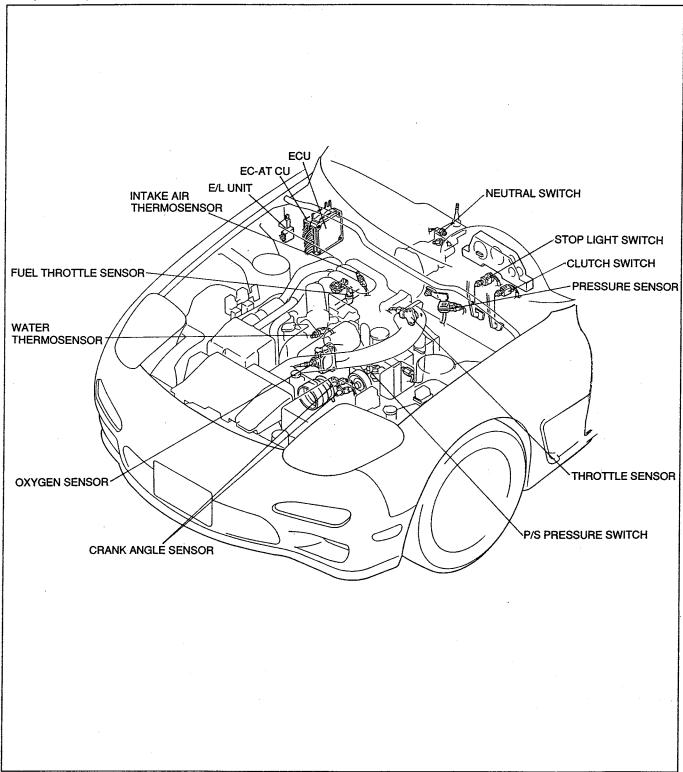
To prevent vapor lock during hot restart idle, vacuum to the pressure regulator is momentarily cut, and fuel injection pressure is increased to slightly more than 284kPa {2.5 kg, cm², 41.2 psi}. Pressure in the fuel line at idle is 190—230 kPa {1.9—2.3 kg/cm², 27—33 psi}.

FUEL INJECTION CONTROL SYSTEM

OUTLINE

This system consists of the input devices (switches and sensors) and the engine control unit (ECU). The ECU detects the engine operating conditions and the vehicle driving conditions, and controls the injection timing and amount to obtain:

- 1. Excellent throttle response
- 2. Excellent fuel economy
- 3. Reduced exhaust emissions
- 4. Optimum performance and drivability

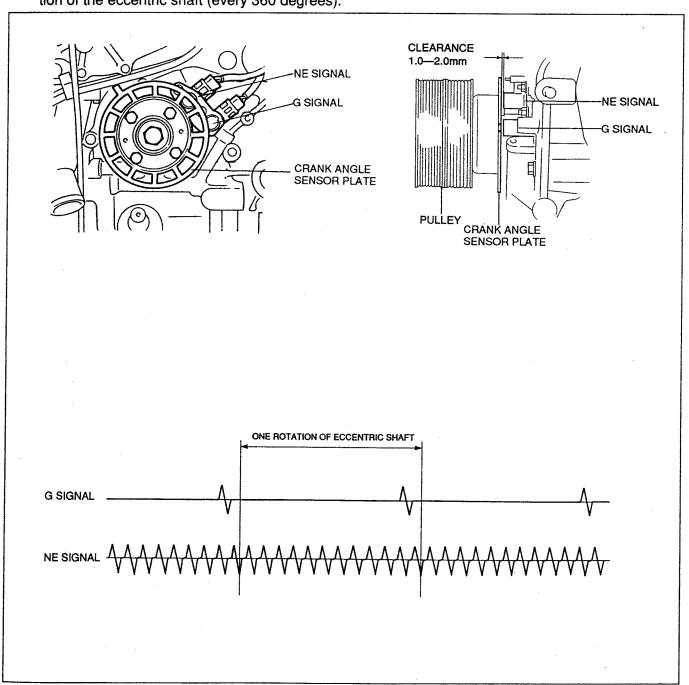


CRANK ANGLE SENSOR

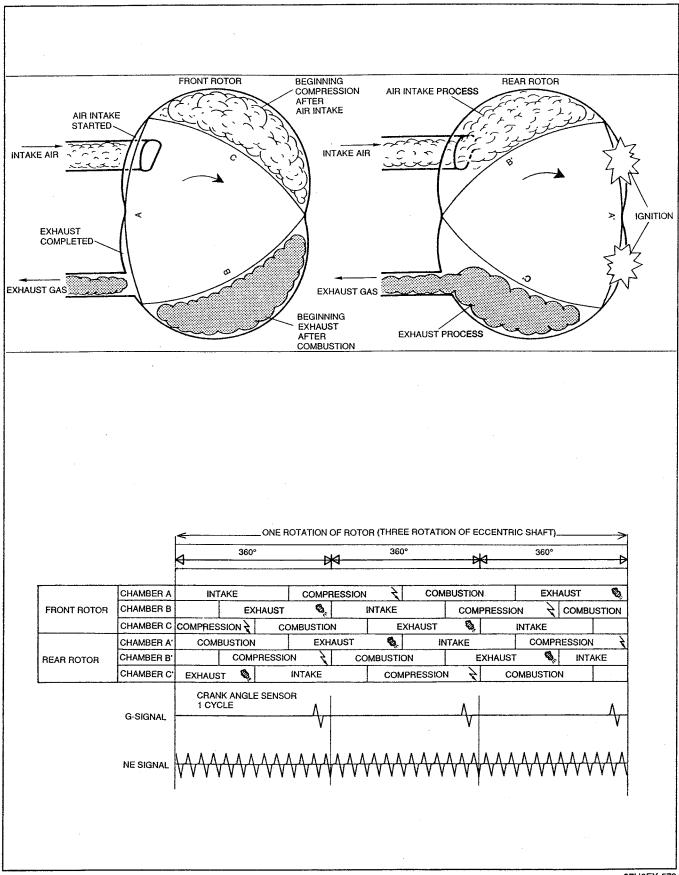
- The crank angle sensor is installed near the eccentric shaft pulley. It creates pulley rotation signals and sends this data to the ECU. The crank angle sensor consists of two independent sensors. One sensor is for NE signals, which indicate engine speed and crank angle; the other sensor is for G signals, which indicate the specified crank angle (BTDC 5°).
- Compared with a conventional crank angle sensor, this unit provides more accurate detection because it detects signals directly from the eccentric shaft. It also improves serviceability, because it requires no adjustment for ignition timing.

Operation

- 1. Creation of NE Signals
 - The eccentric shaft pulley has 12 slots for creation of the NE signals. There are 12 pulses per rotation of the eccentric shaft (every 30 degrees).
- 2. Creation of G Signals
 - The eccentric shaft pulley is fitted with a pin to initiate the G signals. There is one pulse per rotation of the eccentric shaft (every 360 degrees).



FUEL INJECTION TIMING



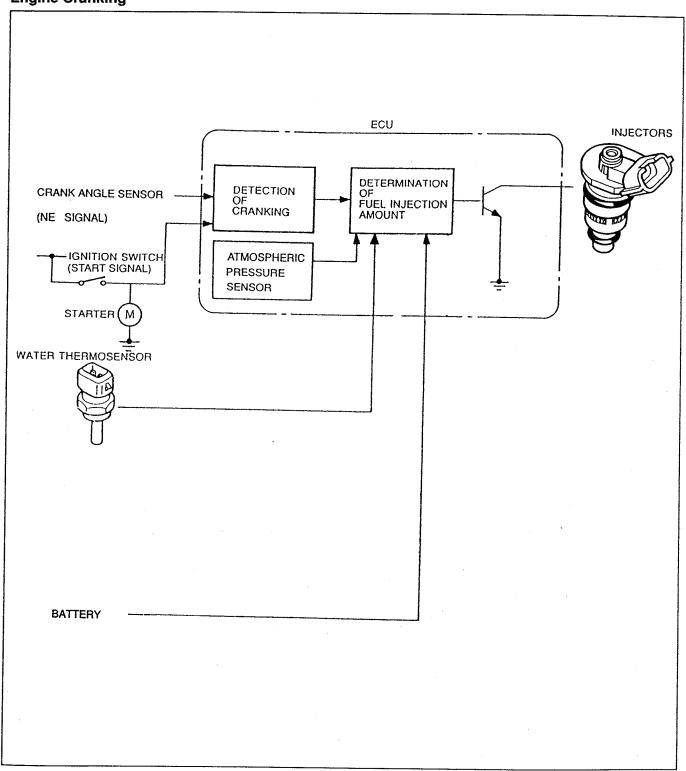
37U0FX-579

Fuel is independently injected to each rotor by giving three injections per one eccentric shaft rotation (three injection per cycle).

FUEL INJECTION AMOUNT

Injection characteristics are basically classified into two groups, "cranking" and "running" (including idle).

Engine Cranking

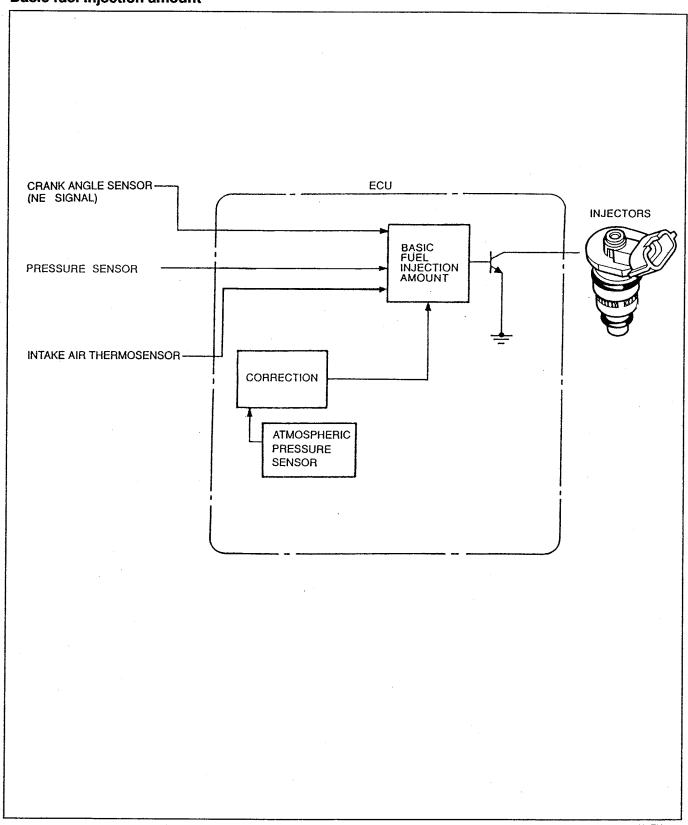


37U0FX-533

The ECU controls the fuel injection amount based on the cranking signal, engine coolant temperature signal, engine speed signal, and atmospheric pressure signal.

When the ignition switch is at the START position and the engine speed is **below 500 rpm**, the ECU judges that the engine is in the cranking condition, and fuel is injected at a preset injection amount according to the engine coolant temperature, atmospheric pressure, and battery voltage.

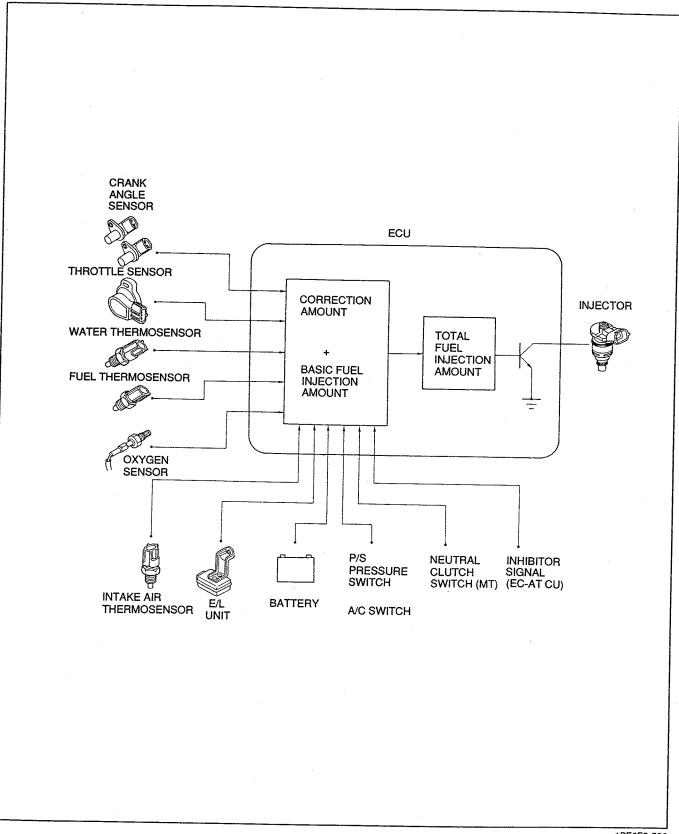
Engine Running Basic fuel injection amount



37H0EX-534

The control unit receives electrical signals from the pressure sensor (Intake air amount), crank angle sensor, intake air thermosensor, atmospheric pressure sensor (included in ECU) and calculates how much fuel is required.

The control unit then sends an electrical signal to the injectors of the proper amount of time to supply the correct amount of fuel.



1PE0F2-52

Injection corrections are required to the basic injection amount to provide the amount of fuel that is most suitable for specific engine and driving conditions.

Whether to increase or decrease the fuel injection amount is determined within the ECU by the signals received from the various sensor and switches. The rate at which the air/fuel ratio is changed is preset in the ECU.

Fuel Cut Control

A) Engine overspeed fuel-cut

To prevent engine overspeeding and possible engine damage, the fuel supply is momentarily cut if the engine speed exceeds 8,100 rpm (MT) and 7,500 rpm (AT).

B) Deceleration fuel-cut

To improve fuel economy during engine high-speed deceleration, the fuel supply is stopped based on signals from the various sensors and switches.

During half-throttle deceleration, fuel injection to only the front rotor is stopped to decrease deceleration shock.

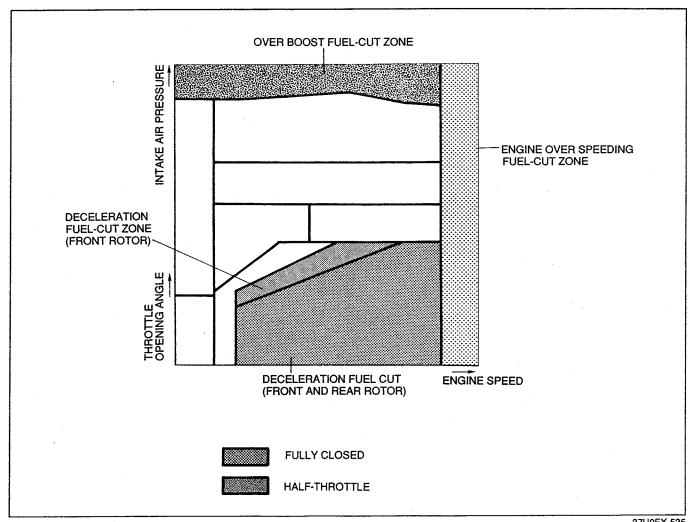
| | Fuel cut | MT | | AT | | |
|---------------------------|-------------|-----------------|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|--|
| Throttle | | Cut speed (rpm) | Recovery speed (rpm) | Cut speed (rpm) | Recovery speed (rpm) | |
| Fully closed | Front rotor | 1,200 | 1,000 | 1,500 | 1,050 | |
| | Rear rotor | 1,750 | 1,500 | 1,600 | 1,400 | |
| Half-throttle Front rotor | | 1,200 | 1,000 | 1,500 | 1,050 | |

C) Overboost fuel-cut

To protect the engine, fuel injection to the rear rotor is stopped when the turbocharger boost pressure exceeds approximately 182.5 kPa {1,370 mmHg, 53.9 inHg}.

D) Dechoke

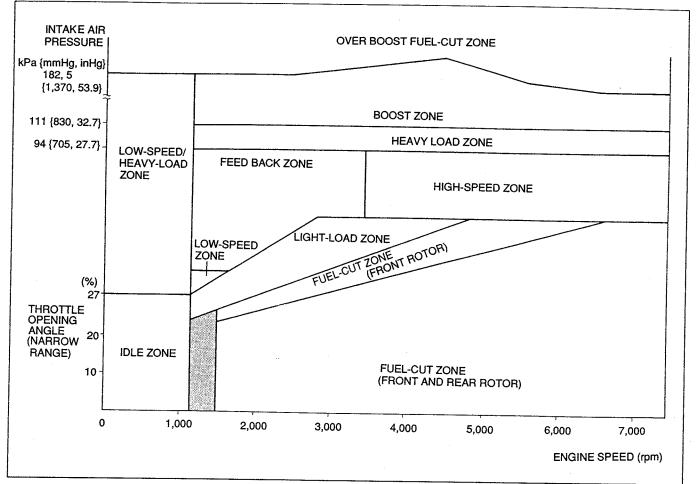
To facilitate starting the engine if the spark plugs become fouled, such as when the engine is flooded, fuel injection is stopped if the throttle valve is held wide open while cranking. This allows the spark plugs to dry and purges excess fuel from the rotor housing.



37U0FX-535

Zone Correction

 To maintain the most desirable air/fuel ratio throughout the entire driving range, the driving range is divided into several zones based on engine speed, intake manifold pressure, and throttle opening angle. Appropriate corrections are made in each zone.

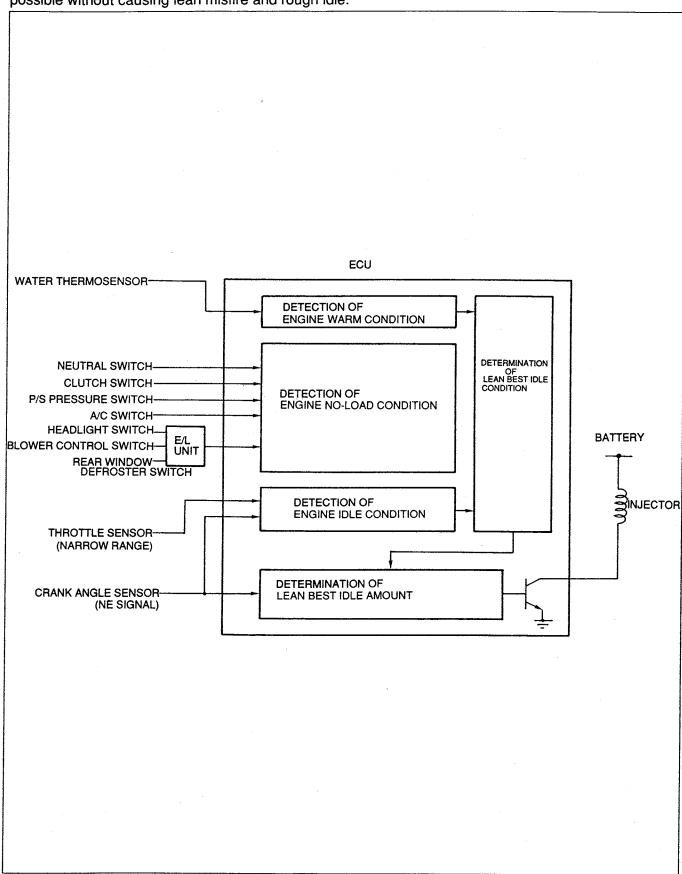


37U0FX-536

| Fuel | Zone | Remark | | |
|----------|---|---|--|--|
| Decrease | Fuel-cut (F&R rotor) | Fuel supply is stopped during full-closed throttle deceleration | Improves drive feeling and fuel efficiency | |
| Decidase | Fuel-cut (Front rotor) | Fuel to front rotor is cut during half-throttle deceleration | Prevents bucking | |
| Increase | Light-load | | | |
| | Low-speed | | | |
| | Low-speed/ Heavy-load | Fuel amount is increased | | |
| | High-speed | | Ensures engine smoothness | |
| | Heavy-load | | | |
| | Boost | | | |
| | idle | Fuel amount is increased corresponding to the applied load | 1 | |
| Feedback | eedback Feedback During constant-speed driving, feed back control is performed based on oxygen sensor signals | | Improves exhaust gas cleansing | |

LEAN BEST IDLE CONTROL SYSTEM

For reduced fuel consumption and reduced exhaust emissions at idle, the lean best idle control system is employed. With this system, the engine control unit sets fuel injection at idle to the leanest amount possible without causing lean misfire and rough idle.



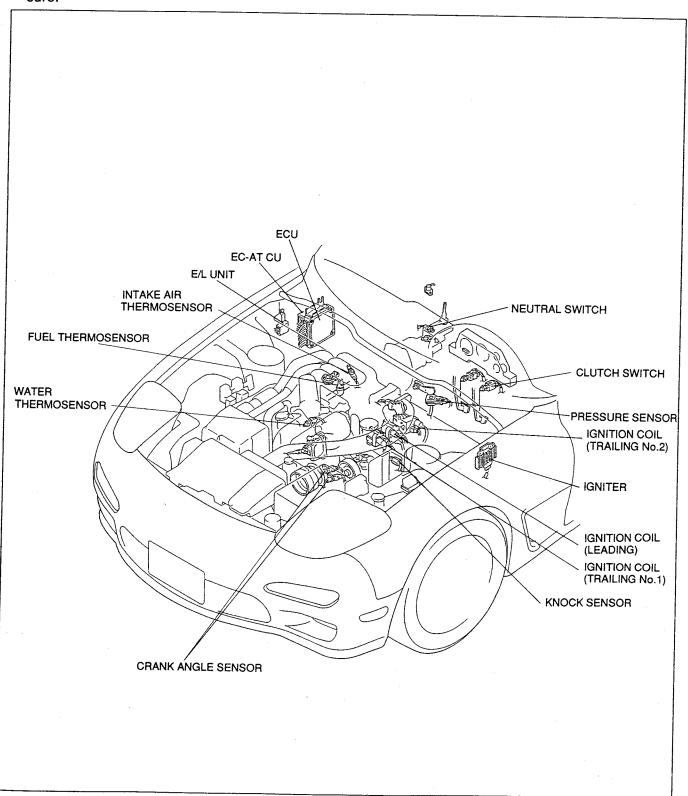
ELECTRONIC SPARK ADVANCE (ESA) CONTROL SYSTEM

OUTLINE

• The ignition system uses an electronic distribution system in which the ECU controls the igniters based on signals from the crank angle sensor and pressure sensor, and distributes current directly to spark plugs from the ignition coils.

The ignition timing control is an electronic spark advance (ESA) system that determines the most desirable ignition timing by adding various corrections to match the engine speed and intake air pres-

sure.

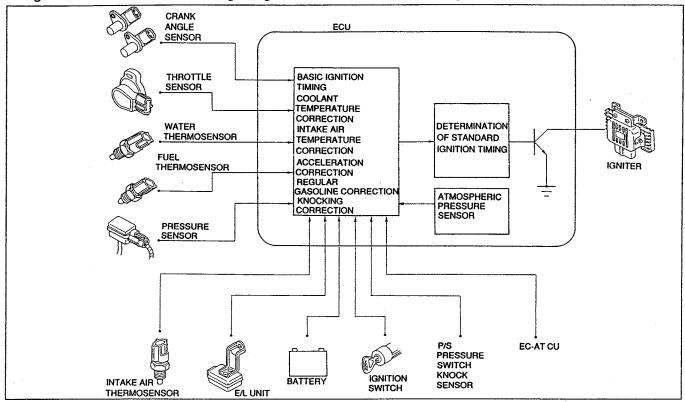


CONTROL SYSTEM

Standard Ignition Timing Control

- In contrast to fixed ignition timing control, standard ignition timing control is determined by adding various corrections to the basic ignition timing.
- Standard ignition timing is obtained by the following calculation:
 Standard ignition timing = Basic ignition timing Coolant temperature correction Intake air temperature correction Acceleration correction -

Light-load zone correction - Regular gasoline correction - Knocking correction



37U0FX-539

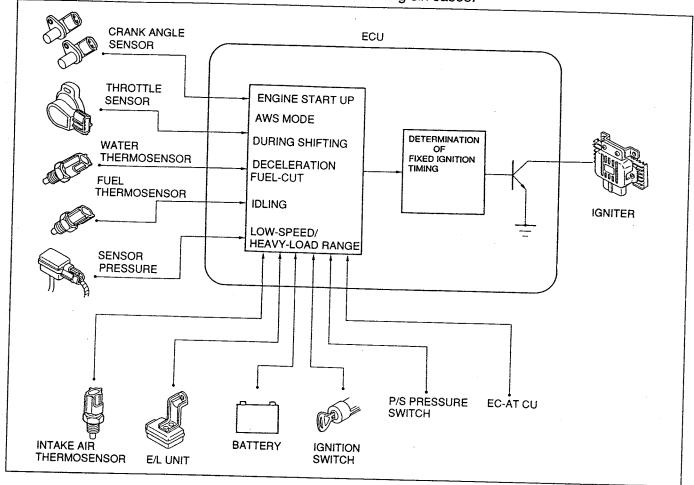
(1) Basic Ignition Timing

- Basic ignition timing forms the basis of ignition timing control and is determined by engine speed and intake air pressure.
- (2) Coolant Temperature Correction, Intake Air Temperature Correction
 - To prevent knocking, retard corrections are made based on preset engine speed, intake air pressure, and coolant temperature parameters.
 (Water temperature: high, Retard amount: large)
- (3) Acceleration Correction
 - During acceleration after fuel cut, retard corrections are made based on the engine speed to prevent knocking.
- (4) Light-Load Zone Correction
 - To stabilize engine combustion, retard corrections are made in the light-load zone based on engine speed to prevent car bucking.
- (5) Regular Gasoline Correction
 - When regular (low octane) fuel is used, retard corrections are made based on engine speed and intake air pressure to prevent knocking.
- (6) Knocking Correction
 - When knocking occurs with the fuel injection amount exceeding a preset level, gradual retard corrections (maximum 7°) are made to protect the engine. After knocking is solved, the ignition timing gradually returns to that as before knocking.

Fixed Ignition Timing Control

Fixed ignition timing control is applied when standard ignition timing control cannot be achieved, such
as during engine start-up or fail-safe operation, or when fixed ignition timing is considered to improve
drivability and reliability.

Fixed ignition timing control is separated into the following six cases:



37U0FX-540

(1) Fixed Ignition during Engine Start-up

Ignition timing is fixed during engine start-up because accurate calculation of ignition timing is difficult due to battery voltage drop and engine speed fluctuation (L, T: 5° BTDC).

(2) Fixed Ignition Mode

 Ignition timing is fixed for a specified time to stabilize engine speed during and after engine startup when the coolant temperature is low.

(3) Fixed Ignition during Shifting (AT)

During upshifting with a coolant temperature of at least 40°C (104°F), ignition timing on the leading side is fixed slightly retarded to decrease shift shock.

(4) Fixed Ignition during Deceleration Fuel-Cut

 Ignition timing is fixed at a retarded angle during deceleration fuel-cut to decrease the shock that occurs at fuel injection recovery.

(5) Fixed Ignition during Idling

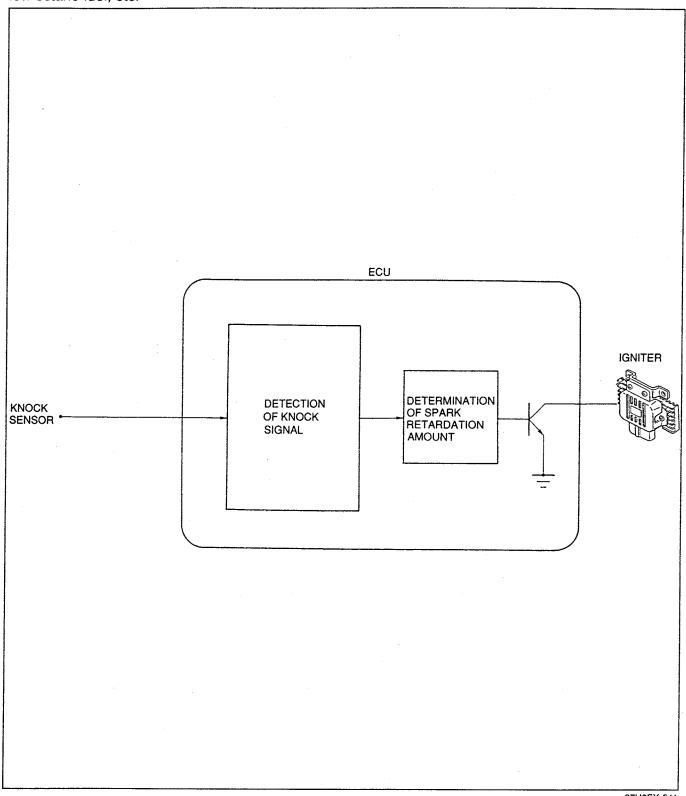
To maintain a constant idle speed, ignition timing is fixed corresponding to various loads (mechanical load, electrical load).

(6) Fixed Ignition in Low-Speed, Heavy-Load Range

 In the low-speed, heavy-load range, ignition timing is fixed to protect the catalytic converter from overheating and to maintain drivability.

KNOCK CONTROL SYSTEM

This system retards the ignition timing when engine knocking occurs due to engine lugging when using low octane fuel, etc.



37U0FX-541

Operation

This knock sensor is installed on the front rotor housing. When the housing vibrates, voltage is generated and a signal is sent to the ECU.

The ECU determines whether the signal from the knock sensor is a knocking signal or some other signal. If it is a knocking signal, the ignition timing is retarded according to the intensity of the knock, to a maximum of 7 degree.

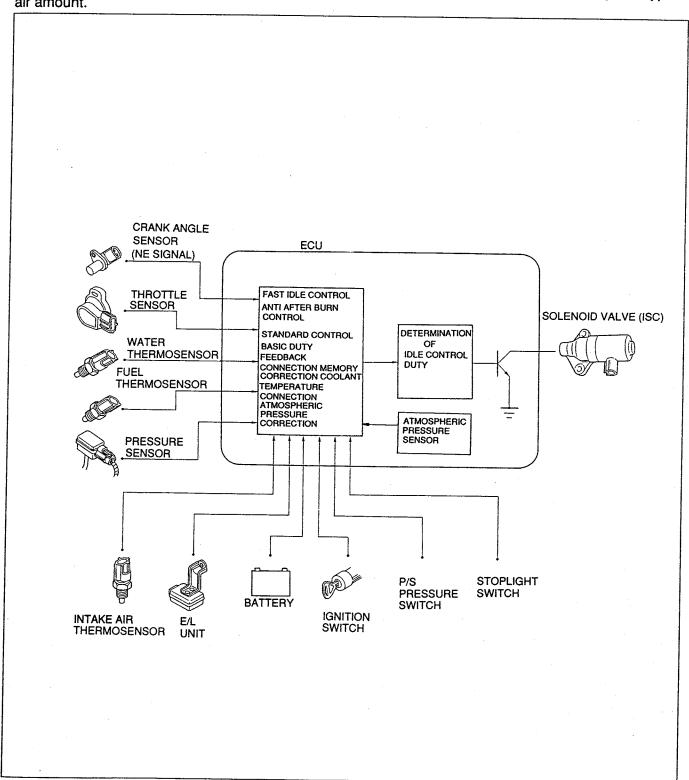
IDLE-SPEED CONTROL (ISC) SYSTEM

OUTLINE

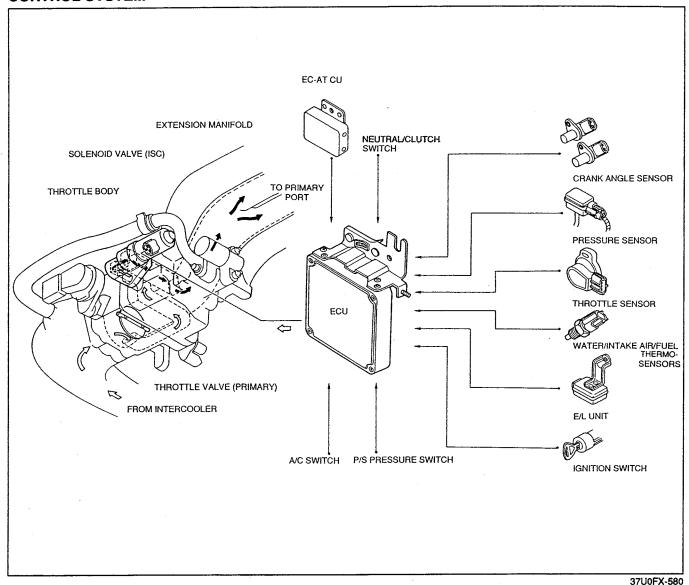
The idle-speed control (ISC) system controls the bypass air amount that passes through the throttle body to improve startability, quicken warm-up times, improve idle and provide better drivability.

The ISC system also takes the place of a conventional dashpot to control deceleration.

The ISC valve employs a linear solenoid valve that is controlled by 244 Hz constant-frequency duty signals. As the ON time of this signal increases, the internal valve opens, increasing the bypass air amount. As the ON time of the signal becomes shorter, the internal valve closes, reducing the bypass air amount.



CONTROL SYSTEM



The control system consists of the input devices (switches and sensors) and the engine control unit (ECU). The ECU contains preset values for the basic air amount that correspond to the engine's operating conditions.

It also contains the corrections to the basic bypass air amount for engine warm up and for when A/C or other loads are applied.

Engine Speed Feedback System

In order to achieve the target idle speed and idle smoothness, an engine-speed feedback control takes place within the ECU. The basic bypass air amount is increased or decreased to adjust the engine speed to the target idle speed.

The target idle speeds are as follows.

| Engine condition | | Target idle speed | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| During warm up | | Set according to coolant temperature | | | | |
| | E/L or P/S : ON | 775—825 rpm | | | | |
| After warm up | A/C ON | MT 875—925 rpm, AT 775—825 rpm | | | | |

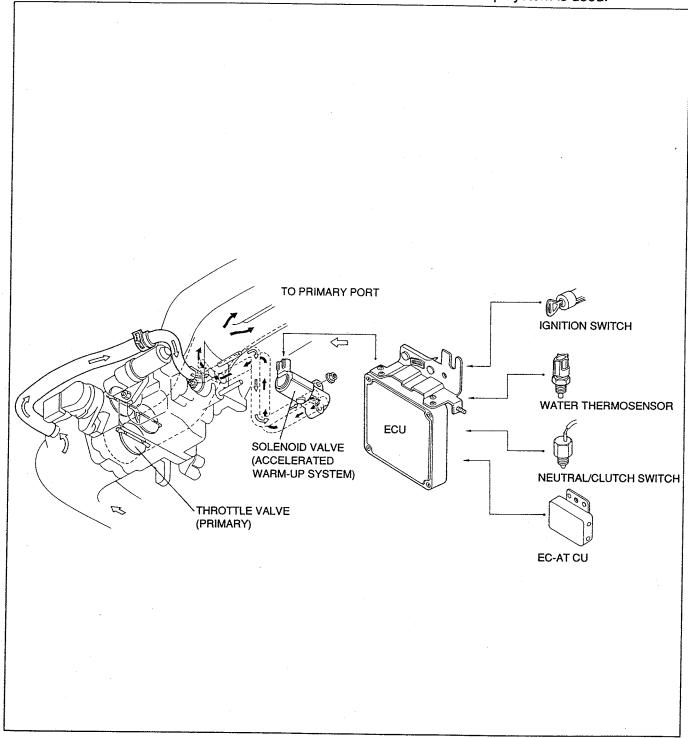
Note

• The TEN terminal of the diagnosis connector must be grounded to cancel the feedback control when adjusting the base idle speed.

ACCELERATED WARM-UP SYSTEM

OUTLINE

To improve warm-up just after starting the engine, the accelerated warm-up system is used.



37U0FX-544

Operation

Engine coolant temperature: approximately below 40°C {104°F}

 No signal is sent to the valve from the ECU, the valve is held closed by spring force. As a result, no bypass air is sent to the extension manifold.

Engine coolant temperature: approximately above 40°C {104°F}

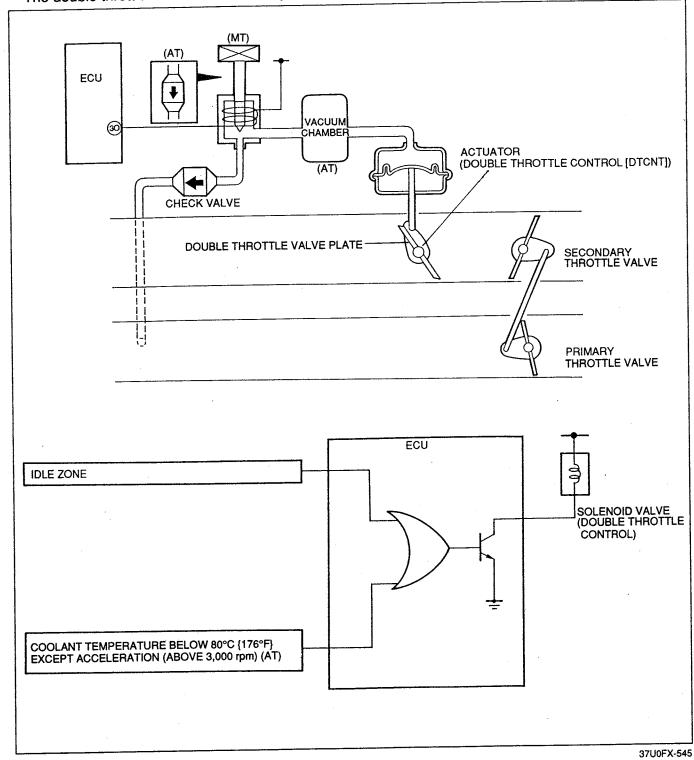
An ON signal is sent to the valve from the ECU, the shaft is pulled by an electromagnetic force generated around the solenoid coil, and the valve is opened. As a result, bypass air is then sent to the extension manifold.

DOUBLE THROTTLE CONTROL SYSTEM

OUTLINE

• The response delay of the pressure sensor to follow rapid acceleration temporarily causes a lean fuel mixture. The double throttle control system prevents hesitation caused by this lean fuel mixture by slightly delaying the opening of the double throttle valve plate mounted downstream of the secondary throttle valve.

• The double throttle valve is controlled by the ECU through the solenoid valve.

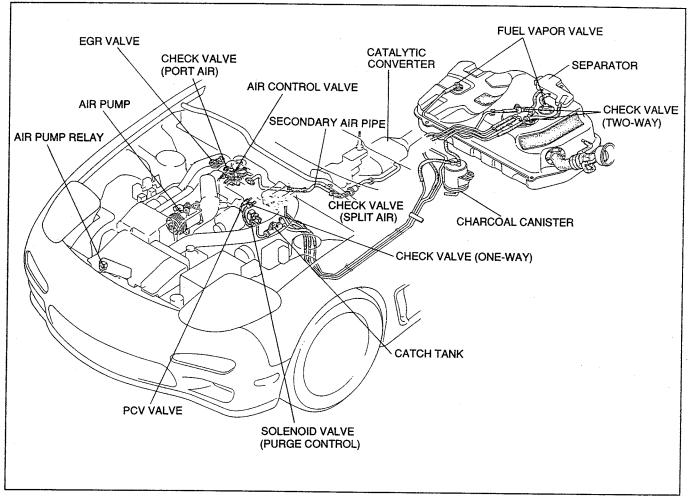


Operation

• When one or more of the above conditions are met, the ECU turns the solenoid valve ON, applies vacuum to the double throttle control actuator, and temporarily closes the double throttle valve.

OUTLINE OF EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

DESCRIPTION



37U0FX-546

For reduced CO, HC, and NOx emissions, there is an elaborate emission control system as shown in the figure.

1. Secondary air injection system (air control valve)

This system is to burn spent exhaust gases by introducing fresh air into the exhaust port or main converter.

2. Evaporative emission control system

This system stores fuel vapors generated in the fuel tank in the charcoal canister while the engine is not running.

This fuel vapor is stored in the canister until it is drawn into the extension manifold and burned when the engine is started.

When the engine is running at idle, the purge control solenoid valve is opened slightly and a small amount of blowby gas is drawn into the dynamic chamber.

At high rpm or heavy-load condition, the purge control valve is further opened and a larger amount of blowby gas is drawn into the intake manifold.

3. Deceleration control system

- Dashpot: To prevent the throttle valves from closing suddenly.
- Air bypass valve: To prevent excessive pressure in the intake air system during deceleration.
- Fuel cut: To improve the fuel economy and to prevent engine bucking during deceleration.

4. Catalytic converter

There are two three-way catalytic converters used to reduce exhaust emissions. The converters reduce CO and HC through oxidization and NOx by chemical reaction.

- 5. Positive crank case ventilation (PCV) system.
- 6. EGR (Exhaust gas recirculation) control system.

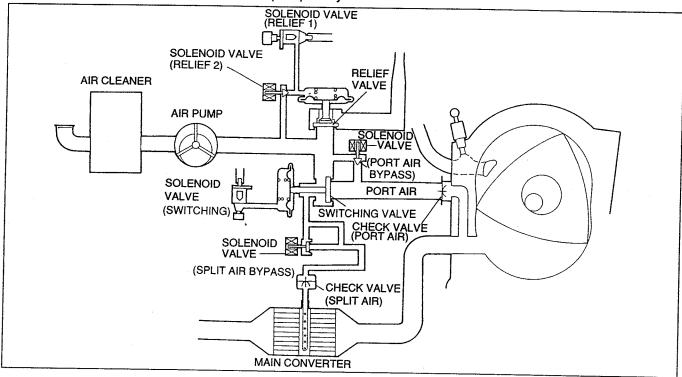
SECONDARY AIR INJECTION SYSTEM

OUTLINE

• The secondary air injection control system helps to clean the exhaust gas by introducing fresh air into the exhaust port or catalytic converter in relation to the driving conditions.

The ECU controls secondary air by actuating the solenoid valves (port air control, secondary air

relief, and port air bypass) and the air pump relay.



37U0FX-547

Air pump

The air pump provides the secondary air to the air control valve.

 A vane type air pump is used. An electromagnetic clutch is filled to the pulley to stop secondary air discharge during high-speed or heavy-load operation.

Air pump relay

 The air pump relay is controlled by the ECU and turns the air pump electromagnetic clutch ON and OFF.

Solenoid valve (switching)

 The solenoid valve is controlled by the ECU and switches air flows between the secondary injection air port and split air port.

Solenoid valve (relief 1)

 In the feedback range (When fuel feedback is executed), this valve controls the air pump release pressure to improve fuel efficiency.

Solenoid valve (relief 2)

 When the engine is cold, this valve controls the relief valve opening pressure to further reduce exhaust emissions.

Solenoid valve (port air bypass)

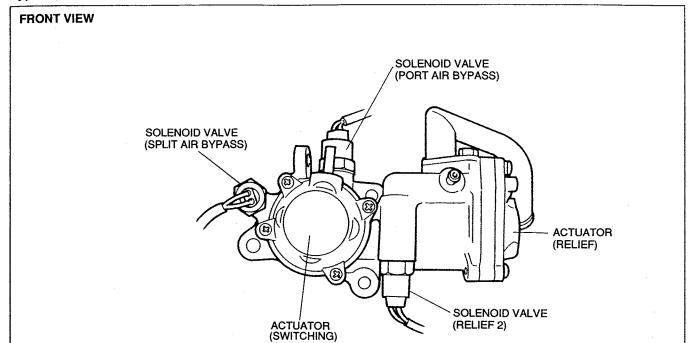
 In the feedback range (When fuel feedback is executed), this valve controls the bypass port air to improve drivability.

Solenoid valve (split air bypass)

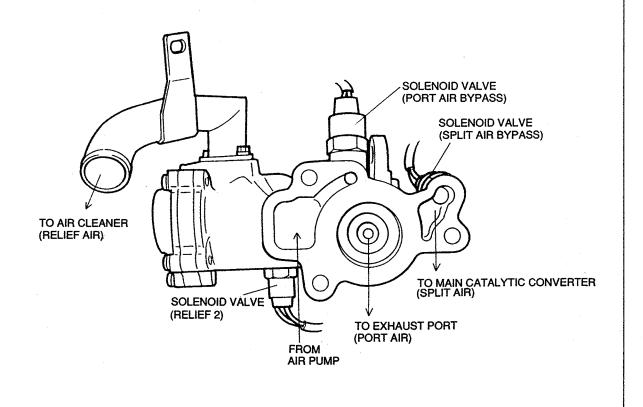
 In the feedback range (When fuel feedback is executed), this valve controls the split air pressure to improve fuel efficiency.

Air Control valve (ACV)

The ACV consist of Actuator (Relief, Switch) and solenoid valve (Relief 2, Port air bypass, Split air bypass).



REAR VIEW



Operation

THROTTLE

OPENING

(%)

40

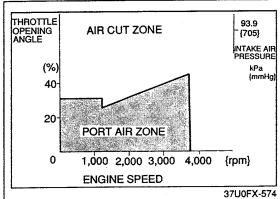
20

0

ANGLE

The engine operating conditions are monitored by the control unit according to signals from the various sensors and switches. A signal for the supply of secondary air which matches these conditions is sent to the air control valve.

37U0FX-573



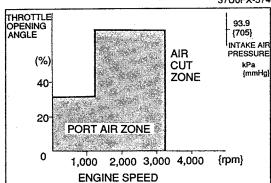
Engine coolant temperature below 15°C {59°F}

Port air zone

Reduces CO and HC emissions.

Air cut zone

· Prevents abnormal increase of temperature within converter.



SPLIT AIR

AIR

CUT ZONE

ZONE

PORT AIR ZONE

ENGINE SPEED

1,000 2,000 3,000 4,000

Engine coolant temperature 15—50°C {59—122°F}

Port air zone

Reduces CO and HC emissions.

Air cut zone

· Prevents abnormal increase of temperature within converter.

Engine coolant temperature above 50°C {122°F}

Port air zone

37U0FX-575

93.9

{705}

{rpm}

37U0FX-576

INTAKE AIR

Reduces CO and HC emissions.

Split air zone

Reduces CO, HC and Nox emissions.

Prevents overheating of catalytic converter.

Air cut zone

Note

 If the heat hazard sensor is ON (floor temperature: more than 100°C {212°F}): air relief operates under all conditions.

37U0FX-577

| | SOLENOID VALVE | | | | | | |
|--|--|--------|--------|--------|-----|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| SECONDARY AIR INJECTION FLOW | ZONE | SWITCH | RELIEF | RELIEF | AIH | SPLIT AIR BYPASS | SECONDARY AIR INJECTION |
| SPLIT AIR BYPASS SPLIT AIR BYPASS SPLIT AIR BYPASS PORT AIR RELIEF 2 RELIEF 1 RELIEF 2 RELIEF 1 RELIEF 3 RELIEF 1 RELIEF 3 RELIEF 1 RELIEF 3 RELIE | IDLE | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | PORT |
| SWITCH RELIEF 2 | IDLE COLD START approx. 300—500 sec. | OFF | OFF | ON | OFF | OFF | PORT |
| SPLIT DIPLOMENT OF THE PORT AIR BYPASS | FEEDBACK (LOW SPEED LIGHT LOAD) | ON | OFF | OFF | ON | OFF | SPLIT + PORT (Small amount) |
| SPLIT DIA AIR BYPASS | FEEDBACK | ON | OFF | OFF | OFF | ON | SPLIT |
| RELIEF 1 | FEEDBACK OR BEFORE AIR PUMP OPERATION STOPS | ON | ON | OFF | OFF | OFF | AIR RELIEF |

F-53

37U0FX-578

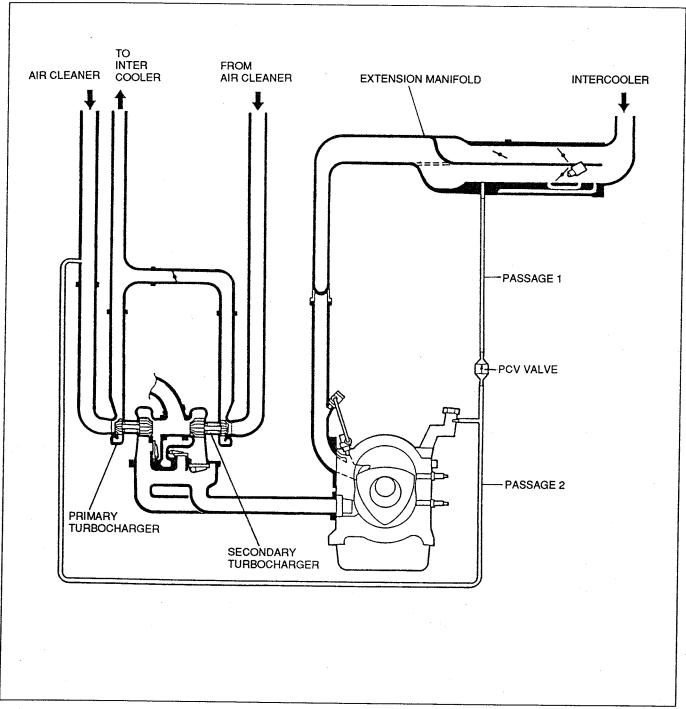
POSITIVE CRANKCASE VENTILATION (PCV) SYSTEM

OUTLINE

The PCV valve is operated by the intake manifold vacuum.

When the engine is running at idle, the PCV valve is opened slightly and a small amount of blowby gas is drawn into the extension manifold to be burned.

As the engine speed rises the PCV valve is opened further, allowing a larger amount of blowby gas to be drawn into the extension manifold.



37U0FX-548

Operation

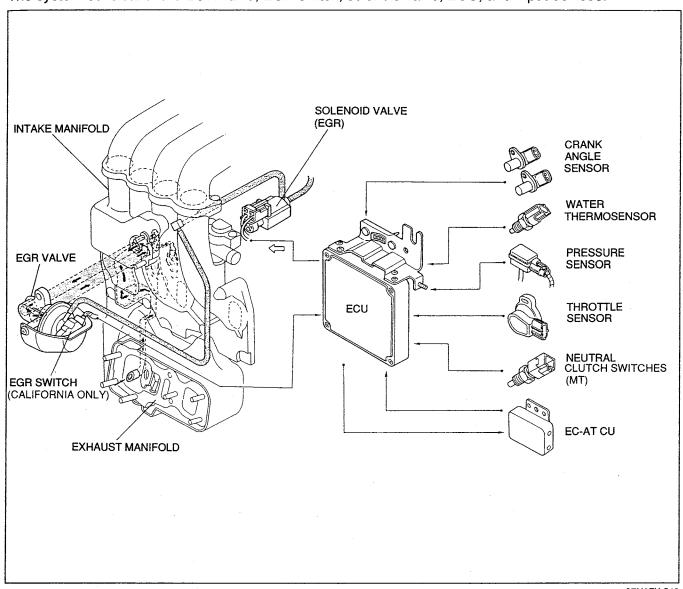
- (1) Intake manifold pressure below atmospheric pressure:
 - The blowby gas flows through passage 1 and is pulled into the intake manifold.
- (2) Intake manifold pressure at or above atmospheric pressure:
 - When the intake manifold pressure becomes positive, passage 1 is closed by the PCV valve. The blowby gas flows through passage 2 and is pulled into the intake portion of the turbocharger.

EGR (EXHAUST GAS RECIRCULATION) CONTROL SYSTEM

OUTLINE

This system recirculates a small amount of exhaust gas into the intake manifold to reduce the combustion temperature and reduce NOx emissions.

The system consists of the EGR valve, EGR switch, solenoid valve, ECU, and input devices.



37U0FX-549

Operation

Cold engine (coolant temperature : below 70°C {158°F})

EGR operation is stopped to improve drivability when the engine is cold.

Warm engine

The ECU controls the solenoid valve to supply EGR gases as described below.

| Operating condition | EGR operation | Remark | | | |
|-----------------------------|--|---|--|--|--|
| Idle | A STATE OF THE STA | | | | |
| Deceleration | 0 | Above 3,850 rpm | | | |
| High engine speed | Stopped | | | | |
| Heavy load | | | | | |
| Others EGR gas recirculated | | MT : 5th gear AT : OD Above 1,700 rpm | | | |

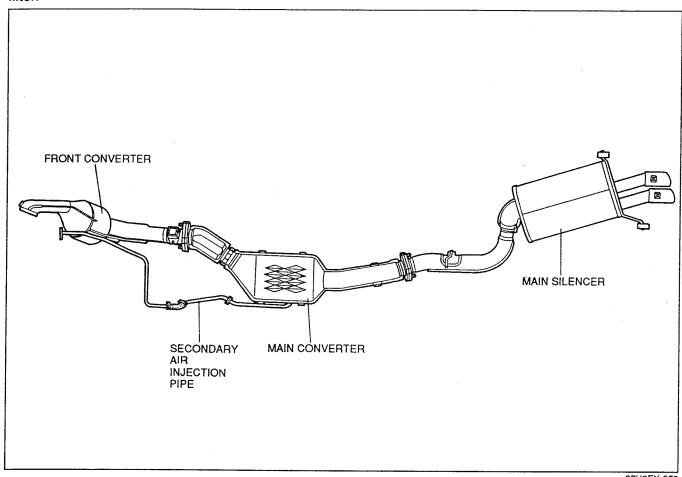
CATALYTIC CONVERTER SYSTEM

DESCRIPTION

Two three-way catalytic converters are used to reduce CO, HC, and NOx emissions.

For efficient operation, the front converter is placed close to the exhaust manifold so that it will heat up quickly and purify exhaust gas efficiently when the engine is cold.

The front converter also protects the main converter from damaged by acting as a phosphorus and lead filter.



37U0FX-550

The catalytic converter reduces CO and HC, emissions through oxidization and reduces NOx emissions by chemical reaction.

| Catalytic converter | Туре |
|---------------------|----------|
| Front converter | Metal |
| Main converter | Monolith |

Operation

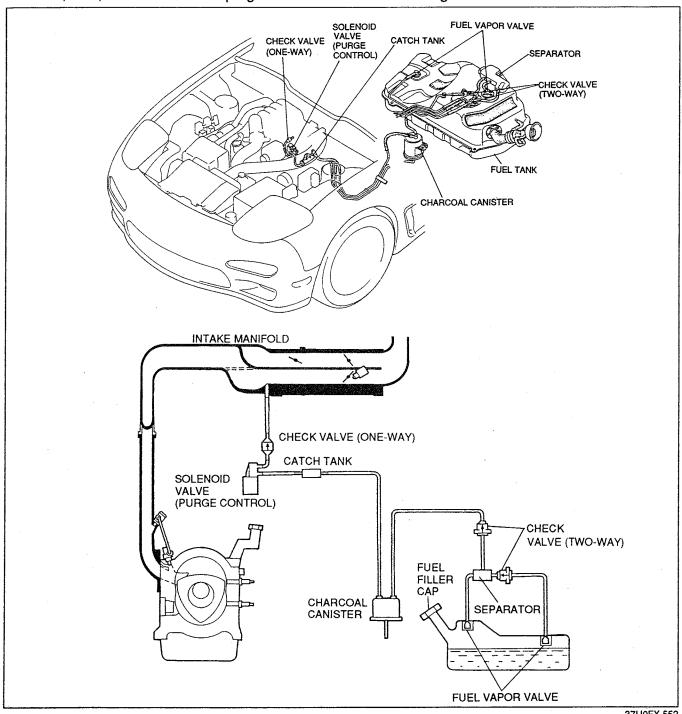
- (1) Before the engine is warmed up, when large amounts of CO and HC are created, the converter is supplied port air and both the first and second stages of the main converter are used as oxidization catalysts.
- (2) In the normal driving range, the converter is supplied split air and used the first stage is used as the ternary catalyst and the second stage as the oxidization catalyst.
- (3) During high-speed driving secondary air to converter is stopped, and the first and second stages are used as the ternary catalyst.

| | First stage | Second stage | Remark |
|-----------|-------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| Port air | Oxidation | Oxidation | Low-speed range, Deceleration range |
| Split air | Ternary | Oxidation | Cruising range |
| Air cut | Ternary | Ternary | High-speed range |

EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

While the engine is stopped, the evaporative emission control system temporarily stores evaporated gasoline fumes from the fuel tank in the canister. The stored gas is then pulled into the air intake system for combustion when the engine is running. This operation prevents gasoline fumes from flowing out to the atmosphere.

Sending a large volume of evaporative fumes at one time into the air intake system would upset the air fuel ratio; thus, the ECU uses the purge control solenoid valve to regulate this volume.



37U0FX-552

Operation

Engine stopped

The evaporative fumes from the fuel tank are absorbed by the charcoal in the canister.

Engine running and load applied

The gasoline fumes absorbed by the charcoal canister are drawn into the engine via the purge control solenoid valve. The volume of gas introduced depends on the engine operating conditions.

DECELERATION CONTROL SYSTEM

DESCRIPTION

Dashpot : To prevent the throttle valves from closing suddenly.

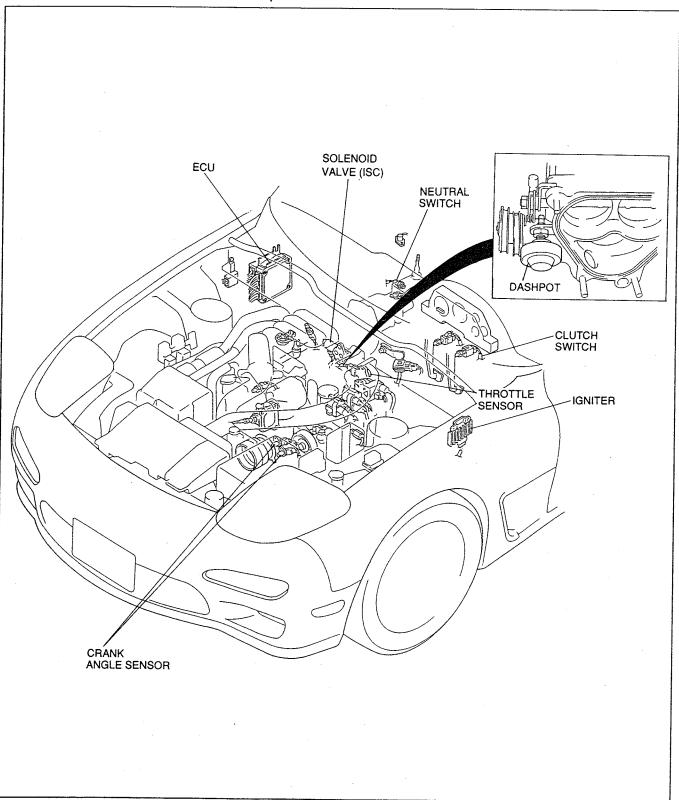
Solenoid valve (ISC): To prevent afterburn, air is supplied to intake manifold during deceleration.

• Fuel cut control : To improve the fuel economy and to prevent engine bucking during

deceleration.

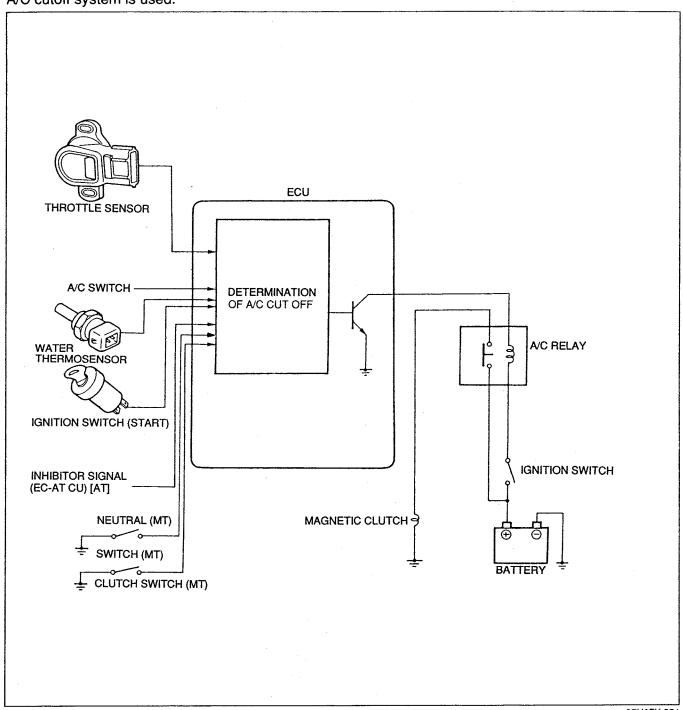
• Air bypass valve : Bypasses compressed air from after the turbocharger to air cleaner during

deceleration to prevent noise.



A/C CUTOFF SYSTEM

To improve idle smoothness just after starting the engine and to improve acceleration performance, an A/C cutoff system is used.



37U0FX-554

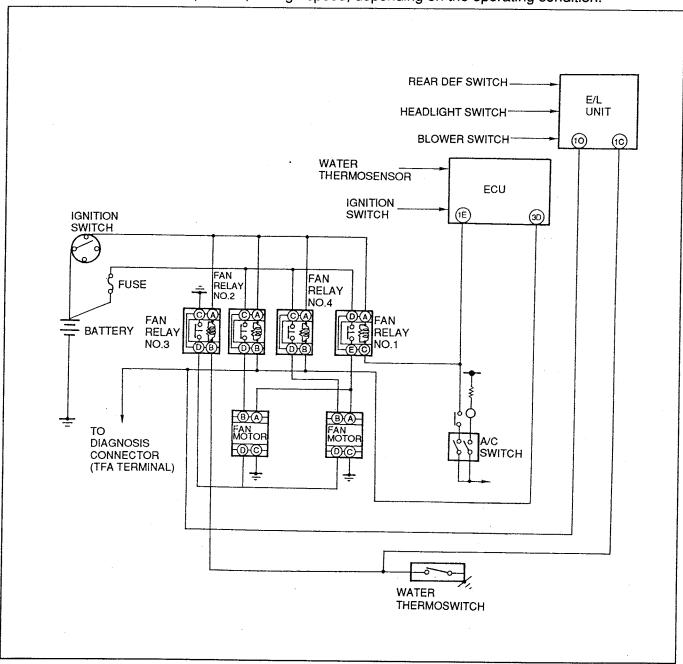
Operation

Current to the air conditioner magnetic clutch and the condenser fan is cutoff to momentarily stop their operation under the conditions below.

| Engine condition | Purpose | Cut-off period |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|
| After engine started | Improved idle | Approx. 8 sec. |
| Throttle valve fully open | Improved drivability | Approx. 7 sec. |
| Start up acceleration (AT) | Improved drivability | Approx. 1.5 sec. |
| Water temperature over 117°C {235°F} | Prevent engine from overheating | |

ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONTROL

To improve engine reliability, the electric cooling fans are controlled by the ECU and E/L (electrical load) unit. The fans are run at low, middle, on high-speed, depending on the operating condition.



Operation

37U0FX-555

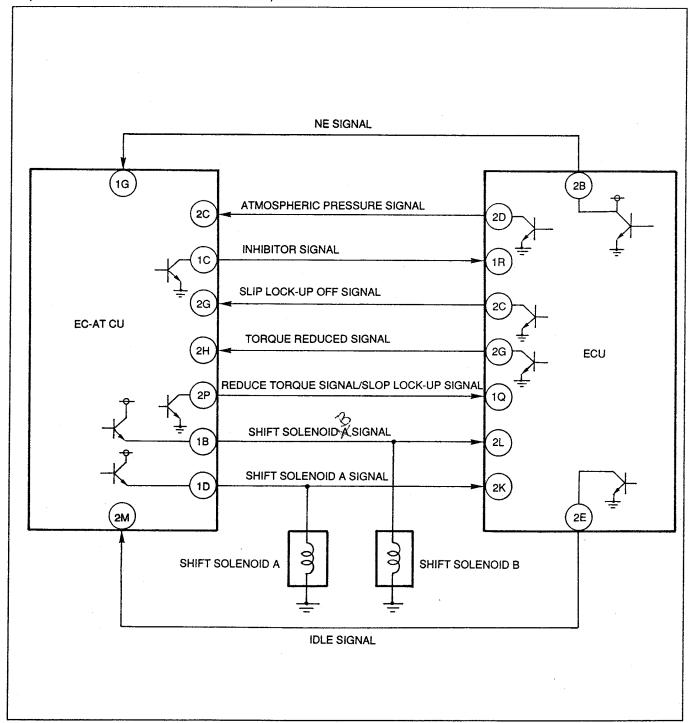
| Engine condition | A/C operation | Fan relay No.1 | Fan relay No.2 | Fan relay No.3 | Fan relay No.4 | Cooling fan operation |
|---|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Coolant temperature below 105°C {221°F} | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |
| | ON | ON | OFF | OFF | OFF | LOW |
| Coolant temperature 105—108°C | OFF | OFF | ON | OFF | ON | LOW |
| {221—226°F} | ON | ON | ON | OFF | ON | MIDDLE |
| Coolant temperature above 108°C {226°F} | OFF | OFF | ON | ON | ON | MIDDLE |
| (water thermoswitch ON) | ON | ON | ON | ON | ON | HIGH |
| Water thermosensor malfunction | _ | OFF | ON | OFF | ON | LOW |
| TFA terminal ground | | OFF | ON | OFF | ON | LOW |

TORQUE REDUCTION CONTROL SYSTEM

When shifting, the reduce torque signal is sent from the EC-AT control unit to the ECU. The ECU retards the ignition timing and cuts fuel injection when the engine condition allows it. The ECU then sends the torque reduced signal to the EC-AT control unit.

The timing is not retarded and the fuel is not cut even if the reduce torque signal is input to the ECU under the following conditions:

- · When the water thermosensor fails.
- · When the throttle sensor fails.
- When the intake thermosensor fails.
- When the pressure sensor fails.
- When the knock sensor fails.
- When the coolant temperature drops below 60°C {140°F}. (Refer to Section K for further details.)

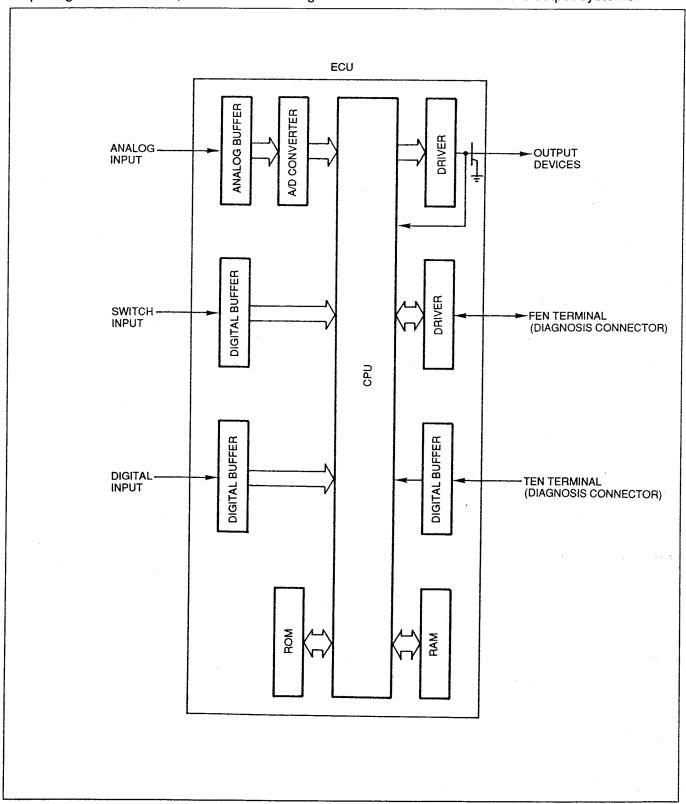


SELF-DIAGNOSIS SYSTEM

OUTLINE

There is an engine protection system contained in the ECU that is activated if an irregularity occurs in any of the input or output devices. It has the following three functions: fail-safe, self-diagnosis, and service code display. The ECU also contains a monitor function to aid the technician in judging the condition of the individual switches and the oxygen sensor.

Using the DT-S1000 Diagnosis Tester SST allows it performing real-time to monitoring of the input and output signals of the ECU, as well as instituting a simulation function to drive the output systems.



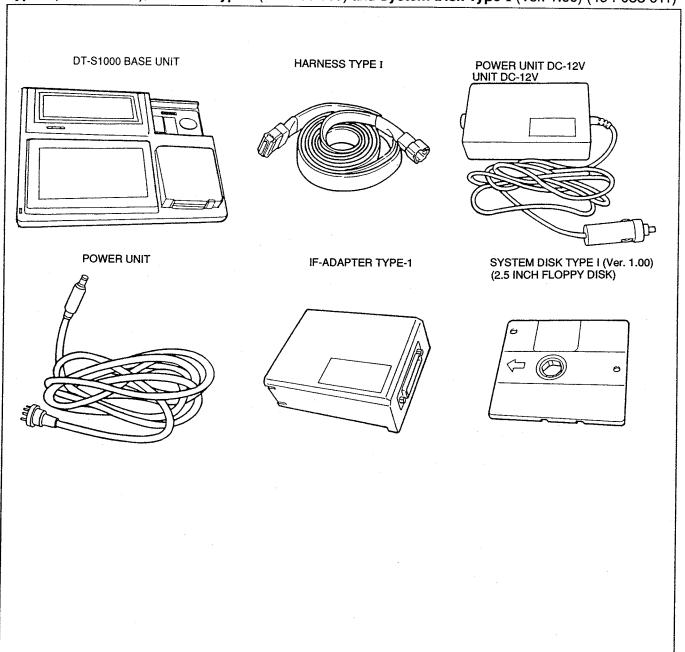
DT-S1000

For easy troubleshooting and input and output devices inspection of the EGI control system, the DT-S1000 Diagnosis Tester SST is suggested.

The DT-S1000 Type-I Diagnosis Tester has the following features.

- 1) Service code check: Reads service codes from the control unit, and displays the codes and detected conditions on the monitor.
- 2) Monitor check
- : ① Reads and displays input switch monitor signals from the ECU.
- 2 Reads the O₂ monitor signal from the ECU and displays it on a graph.
- 3) Service data check : 1) Reads the input/output data from the ECU and displays it as a numerical value or graph.
 - 2 Up to ten minutes of the above data 1 can be recorded within the DT-S1000.
 - 3 The above data 2 can be downloaded on a data disk.
- 4) Simulation check
- : Optional output devices can be operated by the DT-S1000

When inspecting the ECU and the related input and output devices, use the DT-S1000 Base unit (49 F088 001), Power unit DC-12V (49 F088 002), Harness power unit DC (49 F088 003) IF-Adapter Type-I (49 F088 004), Harness Type-I (49 F088 005) and System Disk Type-I (Ver. 1.00) (49 F088 011)



SERVICE CODE DISPLAY, SELF-DIAGNOSIS, AND FAIL-SAFE TABLES

| No. | Indicator flashing pattern | Diagnosed circuit | Condition | Fail-safe | Memo- |
|-----|----------------------------|--|--|---|-------|
| 02 | ON OFF | Crank angle sensor (NE signal) | No NE signal | Fuel injection and ignition stopped | Yes |
| 03 | ON OFF | Crank angle sensor (G signal) | No G signal | | Yes |
| 05 | ON OFF | Knock sensor | Open or short circuit | Ignition timing retarded | Yes |
| 06 | ON OFF | Speedometer sensor | No speedometer sensor signal | _ | Yes |
| 09 | ON OFF | Water thermosensor | | Maintains constant 80°C {176°F} command | Yes |
| 11 | ON OFF | Intake air thermosensor | | Maintains constant 20°C {68°F} command | Yes |
| 12 | ON OFF | Throttle sensor (fully-range) | Open or short circuit | Maintains constant com- mand of throttle valve 20% open | Yes |
| 13 | ON OFF | Pressure sensor | | Basic fuel injection amount fixed and ignition timing fixed | Yes |
| 14 | ON OFF | Atmospheric pressure sensor (in ECU) | | Maintains constant com- mand of seal level pressure | Yes |
| 15 | ON OFF | Oxygen sensor | Sensor output continues less than 0.55V 120 sec. in feedback zone | Cancels engine feedback operation | Yes |
| 16 | ON OFF | EGR switch | Open or short circuit | | Yes |
| 17 | ON OFF | Feedback system | Sensor output not changed for 25 sec. in feedback zone | Cancels engine feedback operation | Yes |

| No | . Indicator flashing pattern | Diagnosed circuit | Condition | Fail-safe | Memo- |
|----|------------------------------|--|---|--|-------|
| 18 | ON OFF | Throttle sensor (narrow-range) | | Maintains constant command of throttle valve fully open | Yes |
| 20 | ON OFF | Metering oil pump position sensor | | Maintains constant command of MOP Basic fuel injection fixed Basic ignition timing fixed | Yes |
| 23 | ON OFF | Fuel thermosensor | Open or short circuit | Maintains constant 50°C {122°F} command | Yes |
| 25 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (pressure regulator control) | | | No |
| 26 | ON OFF | Metering oil pump stepping motor (MOP) | | Maintains constant command of MOP Basic fuel injection fixed Basic ignition timing fixed | No |
| 27 | ON OFF | Metering oil pump sensor (MOP) | Open on short circuit or sticking of MOP sensor | | Yes |
| 28 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (EGR) | | | No |
| 30 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (split air bypass) | | | No |
| 31 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (relief1) | | | No |
| 32 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (switching) | Open or short circuit | Air pump operation stopped | No |
| 33 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (port air bypass) | | _ | No |
| 34 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (idle speed control [ISC]) | | | No |

| No. | Indicator flashing pattern | Diagnosed circuit | Condition | Fail-safe | Memo- |
|-----|----------------------------|--|-----------------------|---|-------|
| 37 | ON OFF | Metering oil pump | Low battery voltage | Maintains constant command of MOP Basic fuel injection fixed Basic ignition timing fixed | Yes |
| 38 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (accelerated warm-up system) [AWS] | | _ | No |
| 39 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (relief 2) | | _ | No |
| 40 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (purge control) | | | No |
| 42 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (turbo precontrol) | | | No |
| 43 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (wastegate control) | On an analysis is | Maintains constant command of MOP Basic fuel injection fixed Basic ignition timing fixed | No |
| 44 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (turbo control) | Open or short circuit | Maintains constant command of MOP Basic fuel injection fixed Basic ignition timing fixed | No |
| 45 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (charge control) | | | No |
| 46 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (charge relief) | | | No |
| 50 | ON OFF | Solenoid valve (double throttle control) | | | No |
| 51 | ON OFF | Fuel pump relay | | Maintains constant command of MOP Basic fuel injection fixed Basic ignition timing fixed | No |
| 54 | ON OFF | Air pump relay | | | No |

| No. | Indicator flashing pattern | Diagnosed circuit | Condition | Fail-safe | Memo- rized |
|-----|----------------------------|---|-----------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| 71 | ON OFF | Injector (front secondary) | | Basic fuel injection fixed | No |
| 73 | ON OFF | Injector (rear secondary) | Open circuit | Basic ignition timing fixed | No |
| 76 | ON OFF | Slip lockup off signal (EC-AT CU) | Onen er shert eine út | | No |
| 77 | ON OFF | Torque reduced signal (EC-AT CU) | Open or short circuit | | No |

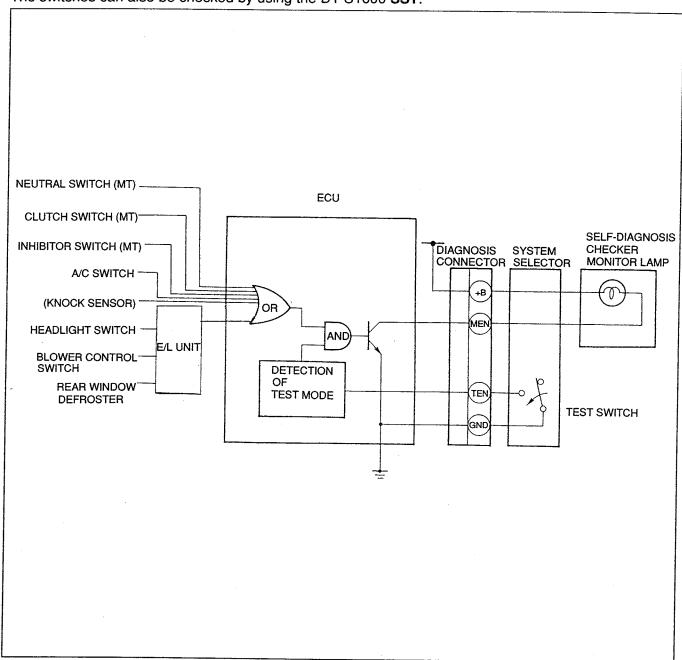
37U0TX-559

Caution

- If more than one failure is present, the code numbers will be indicated in numerical order, lowest number first.
- After repairing a failure(s), turn off the ignition switch and disconnect the negative battery cable for 20 seconds and depress the brake pedal to erase the service code(s) from the ECU memory.

SWITCH MONITOR FUNCTION

With the System Selector test switch set to Self Test, operation of individual switches is monitored as described below by using the (System Selector and the Self-Diagnosis Checker **SSTs**). The switches can also be checked by using the DT-S1000 **SST**.



37U0FX-560

Caution

If either of the switches remains activated, the monitor lamp will be illuminated.

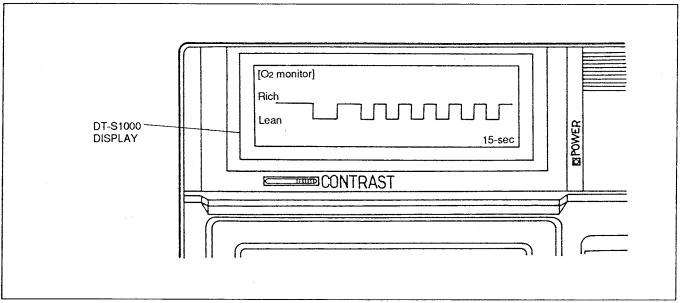
| Switch | Monite | or lamp | | |
|------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|---|--|
| Switch | Light ON | Light OFF | Remark | |
| Clutch switch (MT) | Pedal released | Pedal depressed | In gear | |
| Neutral switch (MT) | In gear | Neutral | Clutch pedal released | |
| Inhibitor switch (AT) | R, D, S, L range | P, N range | | |
| Headlight switch | ON | OFF | Headlights ON | |
| Blower control switch | ON | OFF | Blower switch at 3rd or higher position | |
| Rear window defroster switch | ON | OFF | | |
| A/C switch (if equipped) | ON | OFF | Blower switch at 1st or higher position | |

OXYGEN SENSOR MONITOR FUNCTION

With the System Selector test switch set to O₂ Monitor, the oxygen sensor is monitored by the Self-Diagnosis Checker as described below.

| | Condition | | |
|-----------------------------|--|------------|---|
| item monitored | Item monitored Engine System Selector switch | | Function |
| Oxygen sensor output signal | Running | O₂ monitor | Oxygen sensor output more than 0.45V Monitor lamp : Flashes |

With the DT-S1000 at O₂ monitor check, the oxygen sensor signal is displayed as a graph.



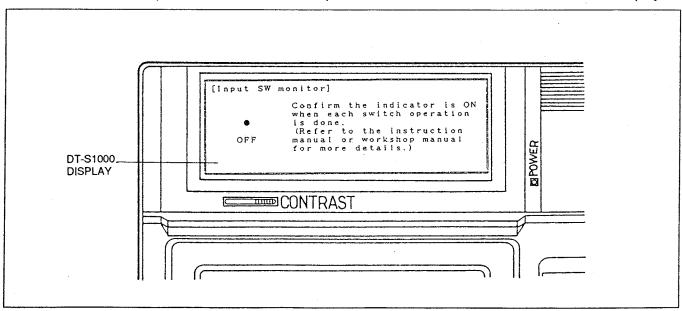
37U0FX-561

KNOCK SENSOR MONITOR FUNCTION

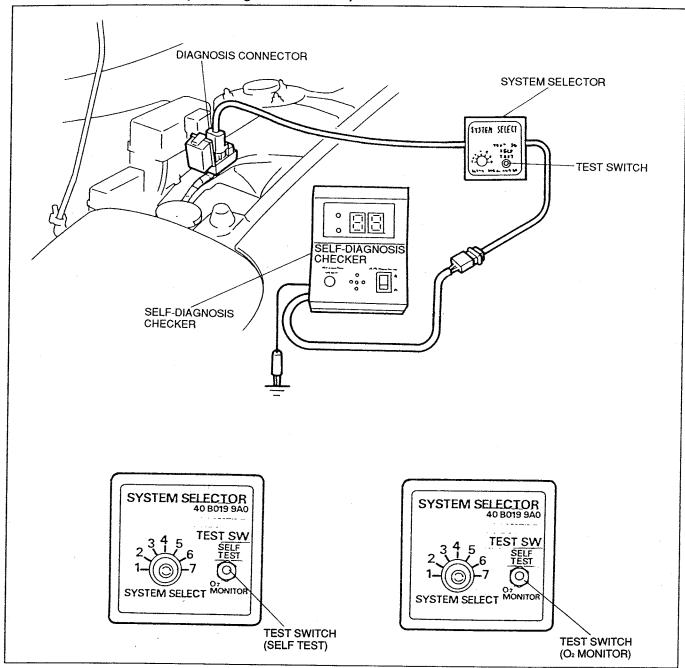
With the System Selector set to SELF-TEST the knock sensor is monitored by the Self-Diagnosis Checker as described below.

| lka ma ma a mika wa al | | Condition | | |
|----------------------------|---|-----------|-----------|-----------------------|
| Item monitored | Test Ignition switch System Selector switch | | Function | |
| Knock sensor output signal | Tap engine hanger lightly with hammer | ON | SELF-TEST | Monitor lamp: Flashes |

With the DT-S1000 at input switch monitor check, operation of the knock sensor is monitored and displayed.



Use of Monitor Function (Self-diagnosis checker)



37U0FX-563

Switch monitor and knock sensor monitor operation

- 1. Connect the System Selector to the diagnosis connector.
- 2. Set the System Selector test switch to SELF TEST.
- 3. Connect the Self-Diagnosis Checker to the System Selector.
- 4. Switch the ignition switch from OFF to ON (engine stopped).
- 5. Operate the switches as instructed. (Refer to page F-68.) The monitor lamp will show the condition of each switch.
- 6. Tap the engine hanger lightly with the hammer. The monitor lamp will show the condition.

Oxygen sensor monitor operation

- 1. Connect the System Selector to the diagnosis connector.
- 2. Set the System Selector test switch to O2 MONITOR.
- 3. Connect the Self-Diagnosis Checker to the System Selector.
- 4. Start the engine and let it warm up to operating temperature.
- 5. The flashing of the O2 monitor lamp will show the feedback operation of the oxygen sensor.

Use of Monitor Function (DT-S1000)

| | DIAGNOSIS CONNECTOR DT-S1000 SYSTEM DISK TYPE-I (Ver. 1.00) | |
|--|---|---|
| IMENITOR CLEAR D2 MONITOR PURE D01Y MONITOR PIS | linput SW monitor] Checking harness | [O2 monitor] Start and warm up the engine. Press [START]fler completion. CLEAR PRE START |
| (input SW menitor) 1) Turn OFF all loads. 2) Do NOT step on the addition of the step of the addition of the step of the addition of the step of the s | Confirm the indicator is ON when each switch operation the fact the instruction offerer in the instruction manual or workshop manual for more details. | (O2 menitor) Rich Lean 155ec |
| (Input SW menitor) Turn the ignition switch OFF. CLEAR PRE DISP | Ilaput SW monitor) [00] System error, Impact the harness connected to the diagnostic connectar, and recrors the connectar, and recross the connectar, refer to the instruction manual. | (O2 monitor) [O0] System error, Inspect the horness connected to the largest the horness connected to the check sain. If the system error resecurs: refer to the instruction manual. |

37U0FX-564

Switch monitor and knock sensor monitor operation

- 1. Connect the DT-S1000 and harness to the diagnosis connector.
- 2. Select the monitor check.
- 3. Turn the ignition switch from OFF to ON (engine stopped).
- 4. Operate the switches as instructed. (Refer to page F-68.) The indicator mark will show the condition of each switch.
- 5. Tap the engine hanger lightly with the hammer. The indication mark will flash.

Oxygen sensor monitor operation

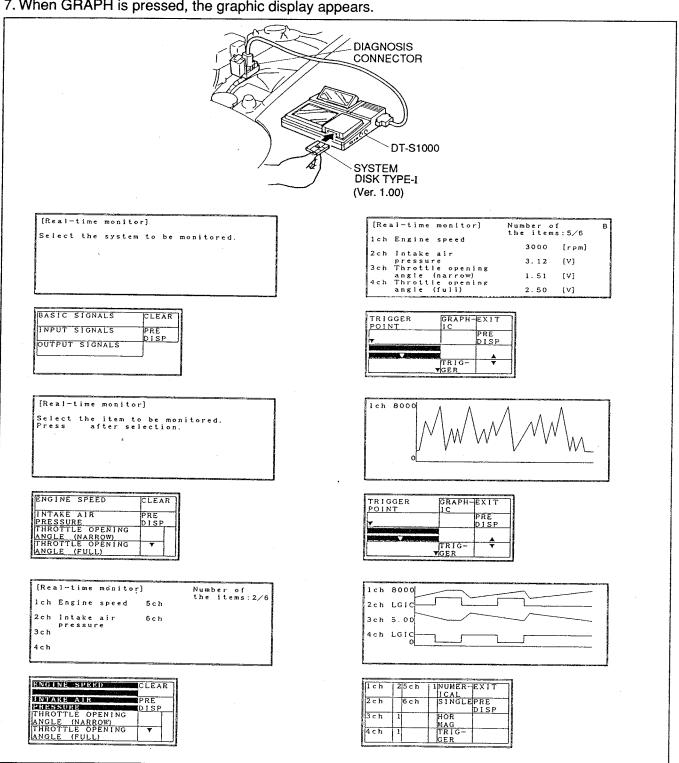
- 1. Connect the DT-S1000 and harness to the diagnosis connector.
- 2. Select the O₂ monitor function.
- 3. Start the engine and let it warm up to operating temperature.
- 4. The oxygen sensor signal is displayed it as a graph.

REAL TIME MONITOR FUNCTION (DT-S1000)
Individual input output signal can be inspected by the SST (DT-S1000).

| Signal | | Monitor item | Unit | Remark |
|--------|-------------|---------------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------|
| | Engine S | | [rpm] | |
| | | ir pressure | [kPa] | |
| | | opening amount (Narrow range) | [V] | |
| | | opening amount (Full range) | [V] | |
| ļ | | coolant temperature | [°C] | |
| BASIC | · | l valve (ISC) | [%] | Duty control |
| | Battery v | | [V] | |
| | | timing (IGT-L) | [BTDC°] | |
| | | iming (IGT-T) | [BTDC°] | |
| | | drive signal (Primary) | [m sec] | |
| | | drive signal (Secondary) | [m sec] | |
| | | sensor voltage | [V] | |
| | | r temperature | [°C] | |
| | | perature | [°C] | |
| | | eric pressure | [kPa] | in ECU |
| | Vehicle s | | [km/h] | |
| | | oil pump (MOP) position | [V] | Target figure |
| | | oil pump (MOP) position sensor | [V] | |
| | | eering pressure signal | [ON/OFF | |
| | Start sign | | [ON/OFF | 4 |
| | Brake sig | | [ON/OFF | |
| | A/C sign: | | [ON/OFF | |
| INPUT | | l load (E/L) signal | [ON/OFF | |
| | Heat haz | ard signal | [ON/OFF] | |
| | Canada | | | Canada only |
| | | running light (DRL) switch signal | | Canada only |
| | California | | | California only |
| | Exhaust | gas recirculation (EGR) switch signal | [ON/OFF] | |
| | Neutral s | | [ON/OFF] | |
| | Clutch sig | | [ON/OFF] | |
| i | 1st gear : | | [ON/OFF] | |
| | 2st gear s | | [ON/OFF] | |
| | Inhibitor s | | [ON/OFF] | AT only |
| | | orque signal | [ON/OFF] | |
| | Slip lock- | | [ON/OFF] | |
| | | noid A signal | [ON/OFF] | |
| | Shift sole | noid B signal | [ON/OFF] | |
| | | Turbo precontrol | [%] | Sequential twin turbo- |
| | | Wastegate control | [%] | charger control system |
| | | Purge control | [%] | Duty control |
| | | Charge relief | [ON/OFF] | |
| | | Charge control | [ON/OFF] | |
| | | Turbo control | [ON/OFF] | system |
| | | Switching | [ON/OFF] | |
| OUTPUT | Solenoid | Relief 1 | [ON/OFF] | 0 |
| | valve | Relief 2 | [ON/OFF] | Secondary air injection system |
| | | Port air bypass | [ON/OFF] | tion system |
| | | Split air bypass | [ON/OFF] | |
| | | Pressure regulator control | [ON/OFF] | |
| | | Double throttle control | [ON/OFF] | *** |
| | | Exhaust gas recirculation | [ON/OFF] | |
| | | Accelerated warm-up system | [ON/OFF] | |
| | | Electric cooling fan relay | [ON/OFF] | |
| | Dalass | A/C relay | [ON/OFF] | |
| . | Relay | Air pump relay | [ON/OFF] | |
| 1 | | Fuel pump relay | [ON/OFF] | |
| | | Torque reduced signal | [ON/OFF] | |
| l | Signal | Slip lock up OFF signal | [ON/OFF] | AT only |
| | - | Idle signal | [ON/OFF] | CT VIIII |
| | | | I CINOLL | |

Service Data Check (DT-S1000) Real-time monitor

- 1. Connect the DT-S1000 and harness to the diagnosis connector.
- Select the real-time monitor function.
- 3. Turn the ignition switch ON or start the engine.
- 4. Select the system to be monitored.
 - ① Basic signals : Signals of frequent use.
 - ② Input signals : Input signals except basic signals.
 - ③ Output signals : Output signals except basic signals.
- 5. Press return to move the numerical display.
- 6. The display will show the condition of each signal.
- 7. When GRAPH is pressed, the graphic display appears.



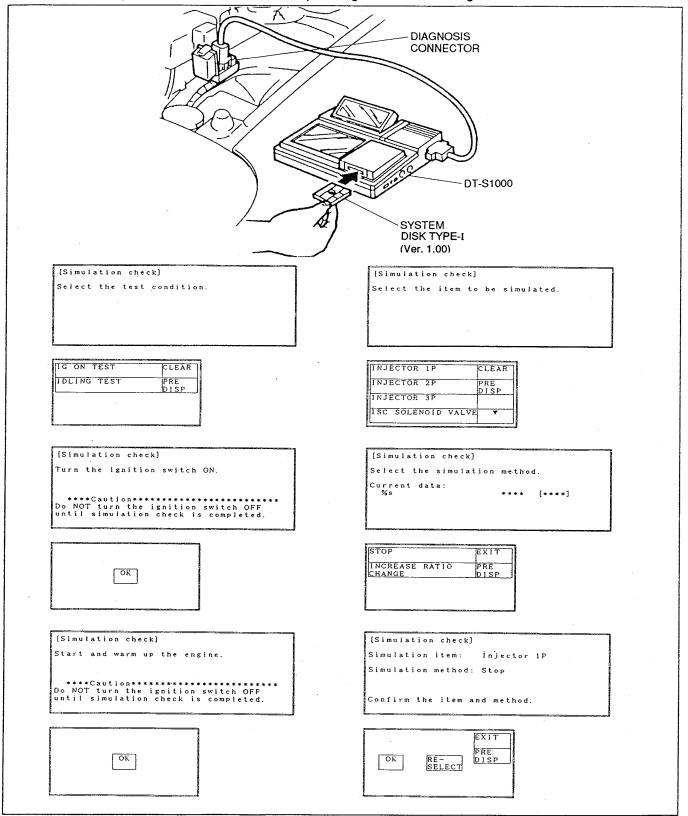
SIMULATION FUNCTION (DT-S1000)
By using the simulation function, the following solenoid valves and relays can by externally driven. This function allows easy system checking.

| Check condition Simulation item | | Operation | |
|---------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|--|
| | Solenoid valve (turbo precontrol) | Driven with 50% duty value | |
| | Solenoid valve (wastegate control) | | |
| | Solenoid valve (purge control) | | |
| | Solenoid valve (charge relief) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (charge control) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (turbo control) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (switching) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (relief 1) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (relief 2) | ON/OFF | |
| Ignition switch ON | Solenoid valve (port air bypass) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (split air bypass) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (pressure regulator control) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (double throttle control) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (exhaust gas recirculation [EGR]) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (accelerated warm-up system [AWS]) | ON/OFF | |
| | Electric cooling fan relay | ON/OFF | |
| | A/C relay | ON/OFF | |
| | Air pump relay | ON/OFF | |
| | Fuel pump relay | ON/OFF | |
| | Injector (front primary) | Stopped | |
| | Injector (rear primary) | | |
| | Injector (front secondary) | Driven with 1 to 30% increa | |
| | Injector (rear secondary) | | |
| | Solenoid valve (idle speed control [ISC]) | | |
| | Solenoid valve (purge control) | Driven with any duty value | |
| | Solenoid valve (charge control) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (turbo control) | ON/OFF | |
| ldling | Solenoid valve (switching) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (relief 1) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (pressure regulator control) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (double throttle control) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (exhaust gas recirculation [EGR]) | ON/OFF | |
| | Solenoid valve (accelerated warm-up system [AWS]) | ON/OFF | |
| | A/C relay | ON/OFF | |
| | Air pump relay | ON/OFF | |

37U0FX-567

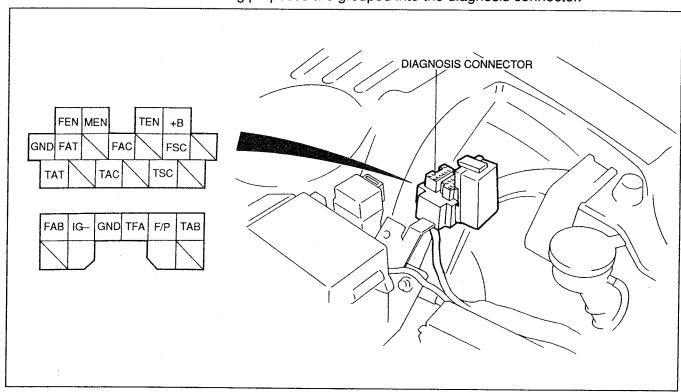
Simulation Check (DT-S1000)

- 1. Connect the DT-S1000 and harness to the diagnosis connector.
- 2. Select the IG ON TEST or IDLING TEST.
- 3. Turn ignition switch ON or start the engine.
- 4. Select the simulation item.
- 5. Select the simulation method.
- 6. Press OK to perform simulation.
- 7. Confirm the engine condition and actuator operating conditions during simulation.



DIAGNOSIS CONNECTOR

The various connectors for servicing purposes are grouped into the diagnosis connector.



37U0FX-569

The diagnosis connector consists of a 17-terminal connector and an 8-terminal connector. (for various uses).

The following 15 terminals are used.

| Terminal | Function | Remark | |
|----------|--|--|--|
| FEN | For service code number signal from ECU to Self-Diagnosis Checker and DT-S1000 | | |
| MEN | For monitor switch signal from ECU to Self-Diagnosis Checker and DT-S1000 | | |
| TEN | For test mode signal to ECU | | |
| +B | For battery voltage to Self-Diagnosis Checker and DT-S1000 | Provides connection for System | |
| GND | Ground | Selector and Self-Diagnosis | |
| FAC | For service code number signal from A/C control unit to Self- Diagnosis checker and DT-S1000 | Checker and DT-S1000 | |
| FAT | For service code number signal from EC-AT control unit to Self-Diagnosis checker and DT-S1000 | | |
| FSC | For service code number signal from cruise control unit to Self-Diagnosis Checker and DT-S1000 (if equipped) | | |
| TAC | For A/C checking | | |
| TAT | For EC-AT checking | | |
| TFA | For electric cooling fan checking | | |
| TSC | For control checking (if equipped) | | |
| IG- | For primary ignition pulse | Provides connection for tachometer | |
| GND | Ground | _ | |
| F/P | For fuel pump checking | Terminal grounded : Fuel pump operates | |

Caution

 Never ground the + B terminal. If grounded, the INJ FUSE (30A) in the main fuse box will be blown.

Service Terminal

The terminals for fuel pump checking and tachometer connection are incorporated in the diagnosis connector.

Fuel pump checking procedure

If operation of the fuel pump is be checked, ground the **F/P terminal** of the diagnosis connector to activate the fuel pump.

Use of tachometer for servicing

Connect the pickup lead of tachometer to the IG- terminal of the diagnosis connector.

1PE0F2-544

BACKUP FUNCTION

The backup function assures vehicle drivability by switching to preset controls in the event of either ECU irregularities or abnormal drop in battery voltage.

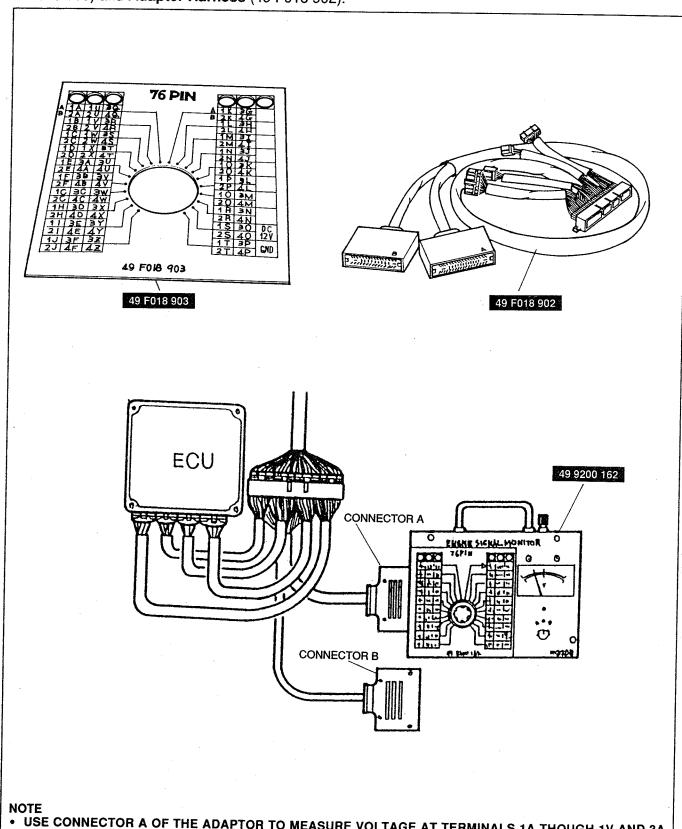
| Terminal | Connected to | In backup condition | Operation | |
|----------|--|--|--|--|
| 1D | MEN terminal (diagnosis connector) | ON | Monitor lamp (Self-Diagnosis Checker lights) | |
| 1E | MIL (malfunction indicator lamp) | ON | MIL lights | |
| 1F | FEN terminal (diagnosis connector) | ON | Display (Self-Diagnosis Checker) flashes 88 | |
| 1G | Igniter (front trailing side) | Igniter ignites at 5° BTD | OC . | |
| 1H | Igniter (leading side) | Igniter ignites at 5° BTD | OC . | |
| 1J | Igniter (rear trailing side) | Igniter ignites at 5° BTD | | |
| 1K | Fuel pump relay | OFF | Operates fuel pump at low speed | |
| 1L | A/C relay | OFF | Stops A/C operation | |
| 2C | Lock up off signal (EC-AT CU) | OFF | Prohibits EC-AT lock up (AT) | |
| 2D | Atmospheric pressure signal | OFF | Prohibits high altitude correction (AT) | |
| 2E | ldle signal | OFF | Prohibits idle line pressure control (AT) | |
| 2G | Torque reduced signal | OFF | Prohibits torque reduction control (AT) | |
| 2J | Air pump relay | OFF | Stops air pump operation | |
| 3D | Electric cooling fan relay | ON | Operates electric cooling fan relay | |
| 3H | Solenoid valve (purge control) | OFF | Solenoid valve completely closed | |
| 3K | Solenoid valve (relief2) | OFF | Closes relief passage | |
| 3N | Solenoid valve (port air bypass) | OFF | Closes port bypass passage | |
| 3O | Solenoid valve (double throttle control) | OFF | Stops double throttle control | |
| 3P | Solenoid valve (relief1) | ON | Closes relief passage | |
| 4F | Solenoid valve (split air bypass) | OFF | Closes main passage | |
| 41 | | | | |
| 4J | Metering oil pump (MOP) | OFF | Fixes blow off amount at preset level | |
| 4K | stepping motor | | Fixes blow off amount at preset level | |
| 4L | | | | |
| 4M | Solenoid valve (PRC) | ON . | Prohibits pressure regulator control | |
| 4N | Solenoid valve (switching) | ON | Closes port air passage | |
| 40 | Solenoid valve (EGR) | OFF | Prohibits EGR operation | |
| 4P | Solenoid valve (AWS) | OFF | Prohibits accelerated warm up system | |
| 4Q | Solenoid valve (ISC) | OFF | Solenoid valve completely closed | |
| 4R | Solenoid valve (turbo control) | OFF | Closes exhaust passage to secondary turbocharger | |
| 4S | Solenoid valve (charge relief) | OFF | Closes relief passage to air cleaner | |
| 4T | Solenoid valve (charge control) | ON | Closes boost air passage of secondary turbocharger | |
| 4U | Solenoid valve (wastegate control) | OFF | Opens wastegate valve | |
| 4V | Solenoid valve (turbo precontrol) | OFF | Opens turbo precontrol valve | |
| 4W | Front primary injector | Fixes fuel injection amount and injects in front and rear chamber simultane- | | |
| 4Y | Rear primary injector | ously | | |
| 4X | Front secondary injector | | | |
| 4Z | Rear secondary injector | Stops fuel injection | | |

37U0FX-570

SERVICE POINTS

Engine Signal Monitor

For easy troubleshooting of the EGI control system, the **Engine Signal Monitor** is required. When inspecting the ECU terminal voltage, use the **Engine Signal Monitor** (49 9200 162) **Sheet** (49 F018 903) and **Adapter Harness** (49 F018 902).



• USE CONNECTOR A OF THE ADAPTOR TO MEASURE VOLTAGE AT TERMINALS 1A THOUGH 1V AND 3A THOUGH 3P, AND USE CONNECTOR B TO MEASURE VOLTAGE AT TERMINALS 2A THOUGH 2L, AND 4A THOUGH 4Z.

ENGINE ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

| OUTLINE | G- | 2 |
|-----------------|-------|---|
| FEATURES | G- | 2 |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | G- | 3 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | G- | 4 |
| CHARGING SYSTEM | G- | 5 |
| BATTERY | | |
| ALTERNATOR | | |
| STARTING SYSTEM | | |
| STARTER | | |
| IGNITION SYSTEM | | |
| IGNITION COIL. | | |
| CIRCUIT DIAGRAM | | |
| SPARK PLUGS | | |
| | 0GX-5 | _ |

OUTLINE

- A reduction starter is used in AT vehicle to improve starting ability.
- The spark plugs use a platinum center electrode to improve ignition performance and spark plug reliability.

FEATURES

Excellent drivability and low fuel consumption

Electronic spark advance (ESA) system

Improved starting

High-torque reduction starter (AT)

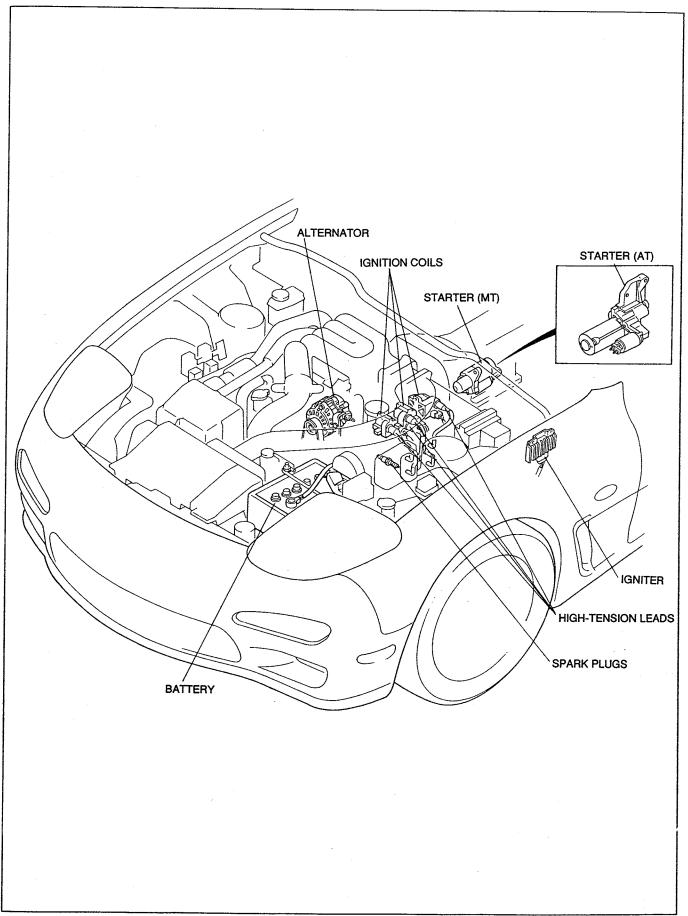
Alternator with warning function

Battery box and cooling duct

Enhanced spark plug performance

Platinum electrode spark plug

STRUCTURAL VIEW



SPECIFICATIONS

| Item | | Tra | ansmission | MT | AT | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|---|----------------------------------|--|
| Voltage | | | V | 12, Negative ground | | |
| Battery | Type and capacity (Maintenance free) | | | 55D23L (60Ah) 65D23L (55Ah)*1 | 55D23L (60Ah) 75D26L (65Ah)*1 | |
| | Distribution | | | Control unit | | |
| | Spark timing (TEN system selector co | terminal ground nnected) | ded or | Leading: ATDC 5° (BTDC -5°) Trailing: ATDC 20° (BTDC-20°) | | |
| Ignition system | Spark advance | | | Contro | | |
| System | | T | L side | NGK BUR7EQP*2*3, BUR6EQP*3, BUR7EQ, BUR6EQ | | |
| | Spark plug | Туре | T side | NGK BUR9EQP*2*3, BUR8EQP*3, BUR9EQ, BUR8EQ | | |
| | | Plug gap | mm (in) | 1.11.7 {0.0430.067} | | |
| · | Output V-A | | | 12-100 | | |
| Alternator | Regulated voltage V | | | 14.1—14.7 (with temperatur | e—gradient characteristics) | |
| , | Brush length | Standard | mm (in) | 21.5 {0.847} | | |
| | Drush length | Wear limit | mm {in} | 8.0 (0.315) | | |
| | Туре | | | Direct | Reduction | |
| | Output kW | | | 1.2 | 2.0 | |
| | | Voltage | ٧ | 11.0 | | |
| Starter | Output (No load) | Current A | | Max. 90 | | |
| | | Speed | rpm | Min. 3,000 | Min. 2,200 | |
| | Brush length | Standard | mm (in) | 17.5 {0.689} | 18.0 {0.709} | |
| | Drust length | Wear limit | mm (in) | 12.0 {0.472} | 11.0 {0.433} | |

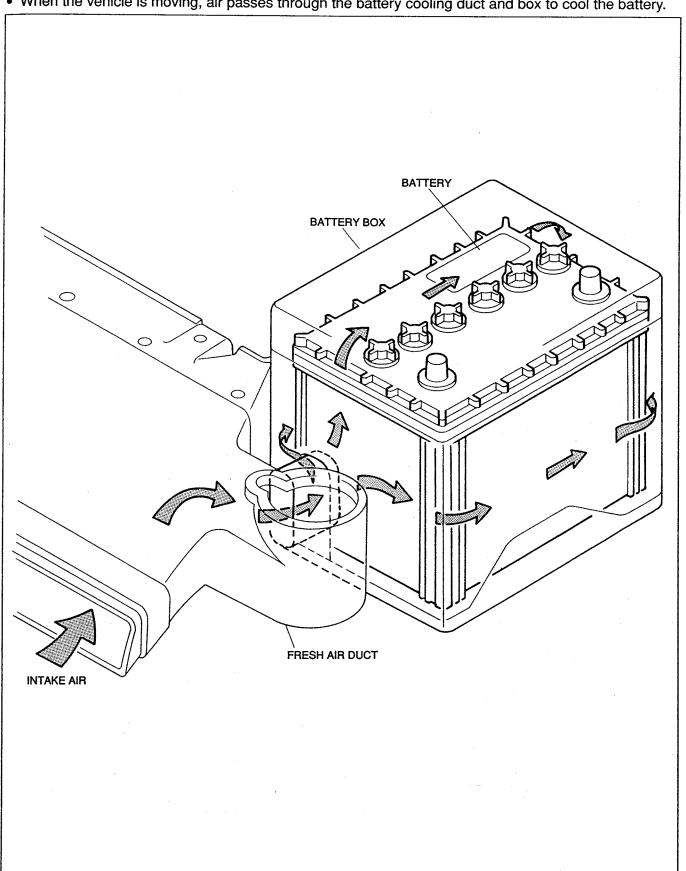
Cold-weather areas Standard plug Platinum plug

37U0GX-505

CHARGING SYSTEM

BATTERY

When the vehicle is moving, air passes through the battery cooling duct and box to cool the battery.



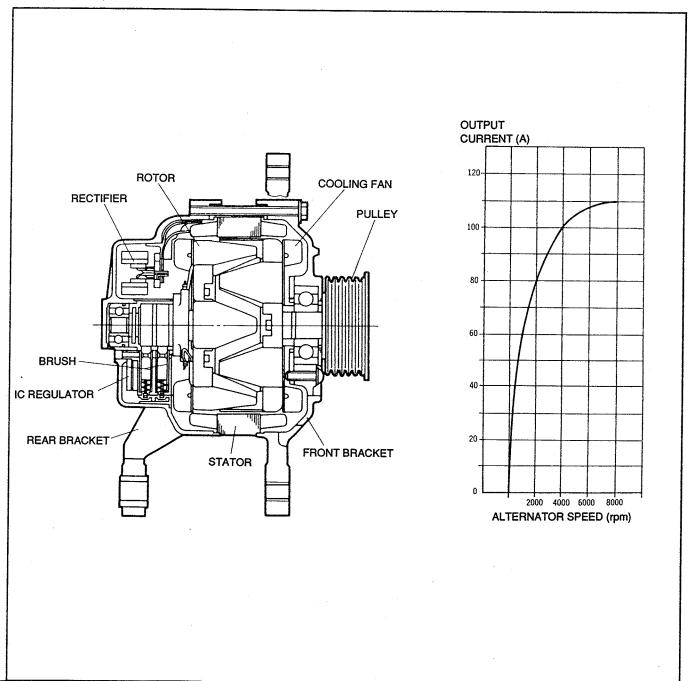
ALTERNATOR

- The IC regulator has a temperature compensation characteristic which reduces the alternator output voltage when the ambient temperature increases so that the battery charge is maintained at the ideal level.
- Belt slippage is restricted by the use of a multiribbed belt and pulleys.

Self-Diagnosis System

- If one of the following failures occurs, the alternator warning lamp the instrument cluster will illuminate, informing the driver of a malfunction.
 - 1. Terminal S circuit open
 - 2. Terminal B circuit open
 - 3. Field coil circuit open
 - 4. No voltage output
 - 5. Voltage output excessive (approx. 16.2V or more)

Structural View



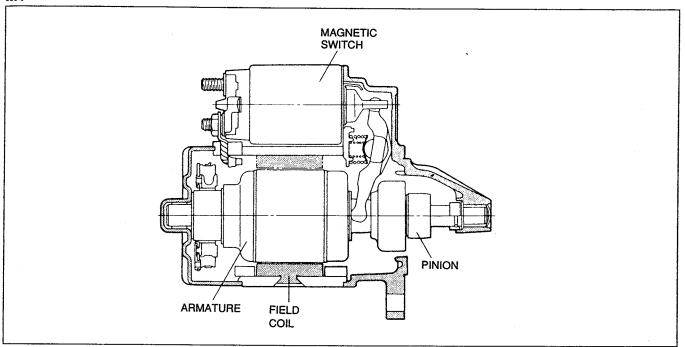
STARTING SYSTEM

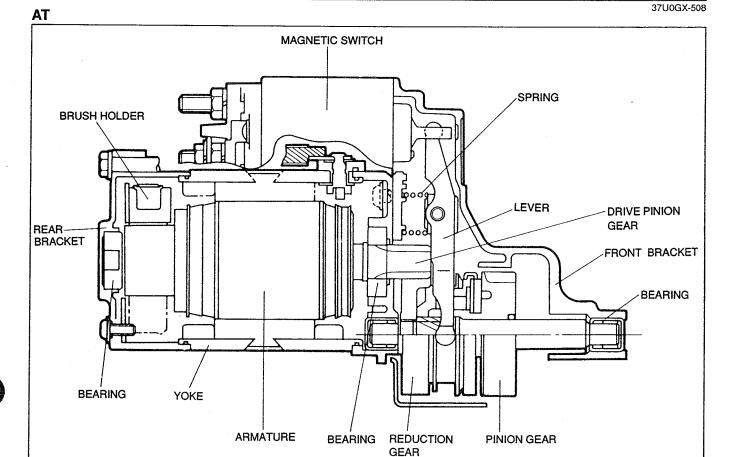
STARTER

 Vehicles with an automatic transmission are equipped with a high-torque reduction starter to ease starting.

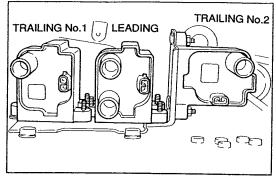
Structural View

MT





37U0GX-509



37U0GX-510

IGNITION SYSTEM

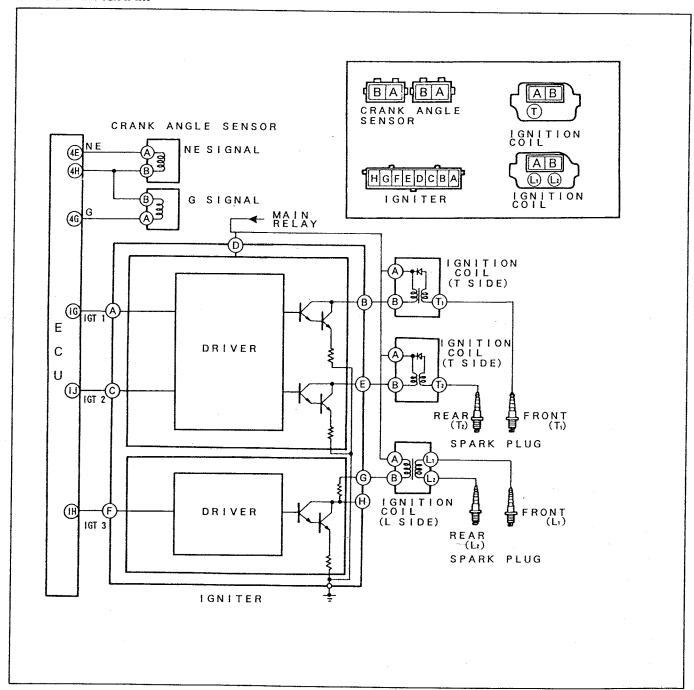
IGNITION COIL

 The ignition coil increases the voltage of the primary ignition signal input from the igniter and sends the signal to the spark plugs as secondary voltage. There are three ignition coils: trailing No.1, trailing No.2, and leading.

Resistance (Standard)

| | Primary coil | Secondary coil |
|-------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| T (trailing) side | 1.0Ω or less | _ |
| L (leading) side | 1.0Ω or less | 12.5—15.5Ω |

CIRCUIT DIAGRAM



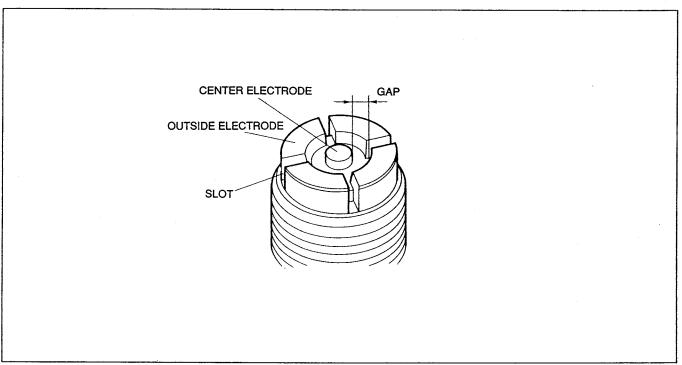
SPARK PLUGS

- Surface discharge type spark plugs are used on both the L (leading) and T (trailing) sides.
- The spark plugs have a platinum center electrode to improve ignition performance and spark plug reliability.

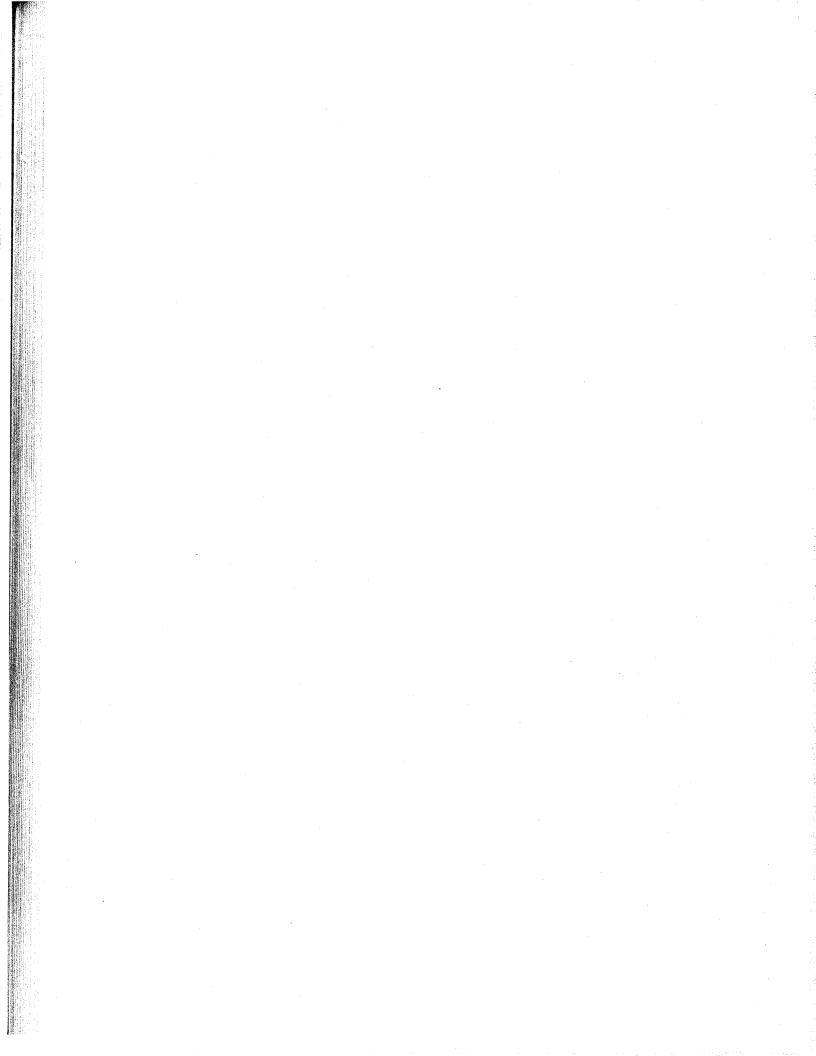
Features

- Because the spark jumps to any portion of the circular side electrodes, the electrodes wear less, improving durability.
- Resistor spark plugs are used to eliminate electrical noise generated by the ignition system and reduce static in the audio system.
- The slots between the side electrodes help to prevent spark plug fouling.

Structural View



37U0GX-512



CLUTCH

| OUTLINE | H–2 |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| FEATURES | H–2 |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | H–2 |
| CROSS-SECTIONAL VIEW | |
| SPECIFICATIONS | H–3 |
| CLUTCH CONTROL | H–4 |
| CLUTCH MASTER CYLINDER | H–4 |
| CLUTCH RELEASE CYLINDER | H–4 |
| CLUTCH PEDAL | H–4 |
| ASSIST SPRING | H–5 |
| CLUTCH UNIT | |
| CLUTCH RELEASE FORK | |
| CLUTCH RELEASE COLLAR | |
| CLUTCH COVER | H–8 |
| | 07110117 504 |

OUTLINE

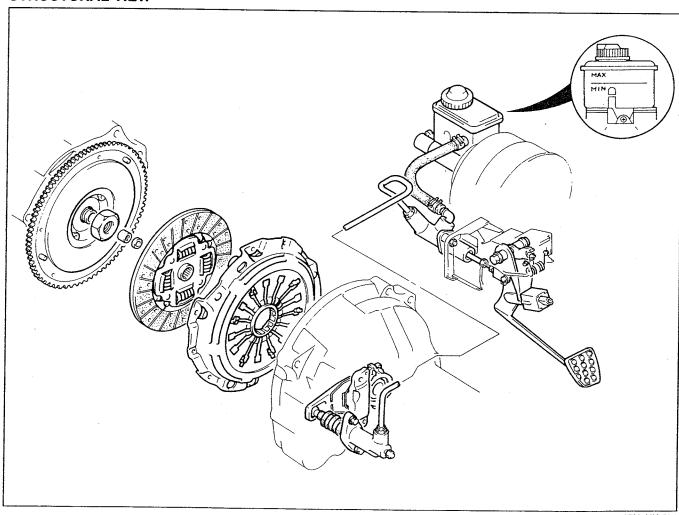
- The clutch mechanism is a dry, single-disc, hydraulically-controlled unit that uses a diaphragm spring.
 The clutch pedal has a turn-over-type assist spring for lighter and easier clutch pedal application.
 The clutch pedal uses a bracket separate from that of the brake pedal, making the clutch pedal assembly smaller, lighter, and easier to service.
- The clutch cover is a newly-developed pull type.

FEATURES

37U0HX-502

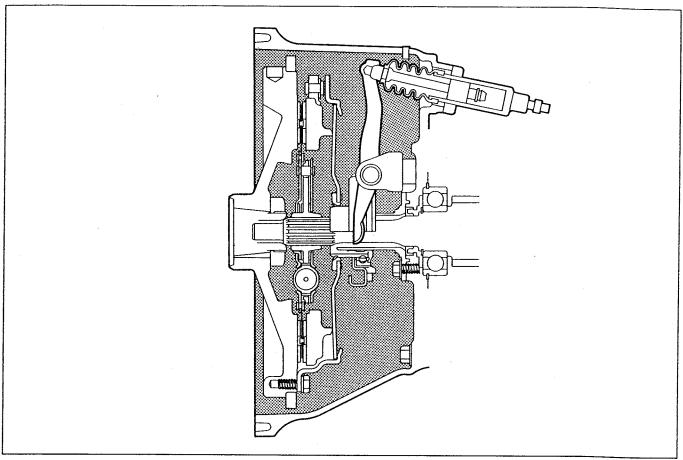
| Reduced size and weight | Brakes and clutch share the same reservoir H-4 Clutch pedal has its own separate bracket H-4 Clutch pedal uses a turn-over-type assist spring H-5 |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Improved serviceability | Adjustment-free clutch release cylinder is adopted |
| | Clutch pedal has its own separate bracket |
| Reduced noise and vibration | Clutch pedal bracket and dashpanel are spaced slightly apart from each other |
| Improved operability | Clutch pedal uses a turn-over type assist spring |
| р. этой эргийнху | Clutch cover is a pull type unitH_8 37U0HX-503 |

STRUCTURAL VIEW



37U0HX-504

CROSS-SECTIONAL VIEW

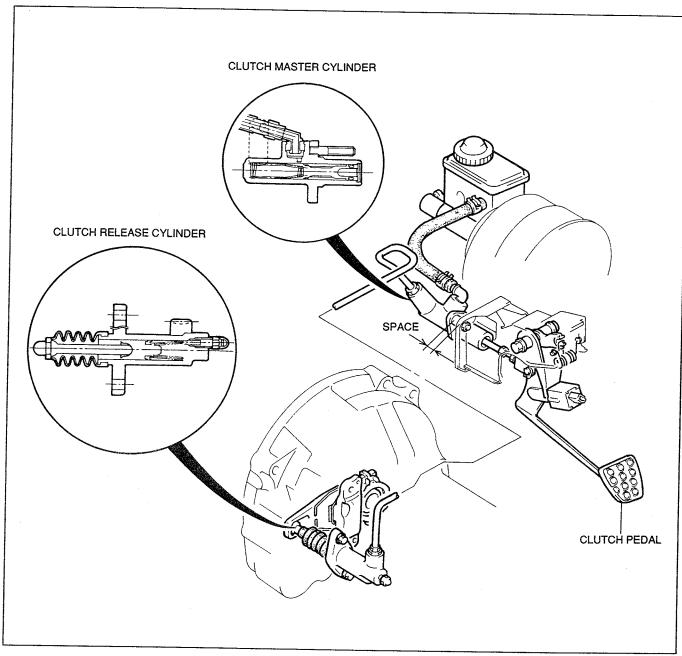


37U0HX-505

SPECIFICATIONS

| | | Engine/Transmission | n | 13B Turbo |
|----------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| Item | | _ | R15M-D (R5M-D) | |
| Clutch | Туре | | | Dry, single-disc diaphragm |
| Oluton | Control | | | Hydraulic |
| | Туре | | | Suspended |
| | Pedal ratio | | | 6.35 |
| Clutch pedal | Full stroke | mm {i | n} | 135 {5.32} |
| | Height (peda | surface carpet) mm (i | n} | 169.5—181.0 {6.67—7.13} |
| | Outer diamet | er × inner diameter mm {i | n} | 236 × 160 {9.29 × 6.30} |
| | Thickness | Flywheel side mm (i | 1} | 3.5 {0.14} |
| Clutch disc | | Pressure plate side mm {i | ٦} | 3.5 {0.14} |
| | Total friction area cm² {in²} | | 2} | 236 {36.6} |
| | Thickness wh | ien free mm {i | 1} | 8.2 {0.32} |
| | Material | | | Semi molding |
| Clutch cover | Туре | | | Pull |
| | Set load N {kgf, lbf} | | f} | 7,220 {736, 1,619} |
| Clutch master | Туре | | | Conventional |
| cylinder | Inner diameter mm (in) | | 1} | 15.87 {0.625} |
| Clutch release | Туре | | | Adjustment-free |
| cylinder | Inner diamete | er mm{ii | 1} | 19.05 {0.750} |
| Fluid | Туре | | | FMVSS116, DOT-3 |

CLUTCH CONTROL



37U0HX-507

CLUTCH MASTER CYLINDER

A conventional clutch master cylinder is used.

A common reservoir is used by the brakes and clutch to reduce weight and number of parts.

CLUTCH RELEASE CYLINDER

• The clutch release cylinder contains a conical spring to maintain pushrod-end free play at zero for maintenance-free operation.

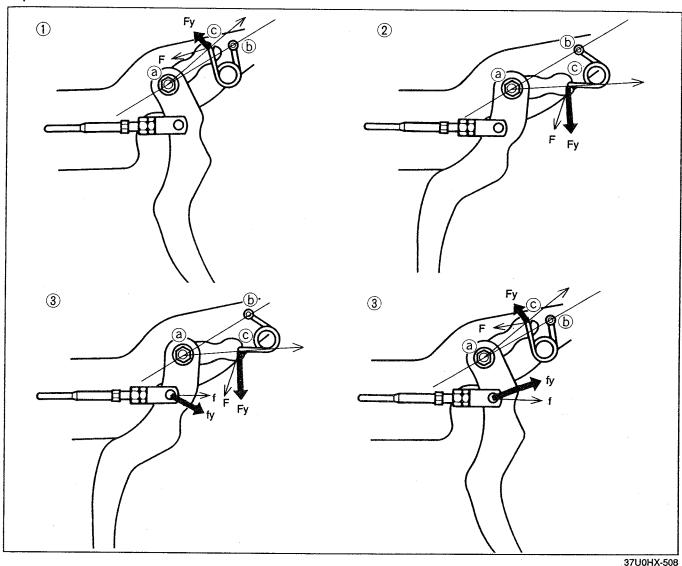
• The release cylinder is installed at the rear of the clutch housing to allow for use of a pull-type clutch.

CLUTCH PEDAL

- The clutch pedal assembly uses a separate bracket, and is thus smaller and lighter.
- The entire clutch pedal assembly can be removed, improving serviceability.
- Noise and vibration are reduced by a buffer space between the clutch master cylinder bracket and the dashpanel.
- Larger pedal bracket spacers reduce floor panel contact pressure, prevent against a drop in tightening torque, and at the same time make insertion of the master cylinder stud bolts easier.

ASSIST SPRING

• The clutch pedal uses a small, lightweight, turn-over-type assist spring to make pedal application pressure easier.



Explanation of Mechanism

1. Clutch pedal at resting position

The spring is under pressure when the clutch pedal stroke is still at zero inches. Force F trying to expand the spring acts on pivot point C. Force Fy is also acting on pivot point C, but in another direction, against pedal forward movement. This keeps the pedal from moving forward by itself.

2. Clutch pedal pressed

Pressing the clutch pedal rotates pivot point A rightward. Force Fy acts against pedal forward movement as long as the line that joins pivot points A and B is not passed by pivot point C. This combination of forces gives the pedal an elastic feeling when first pressed. When pivot point C passes the line between pivot points A and B, force Fy starts to work in the same direction as force F. This helps the driver press the pedal easier.

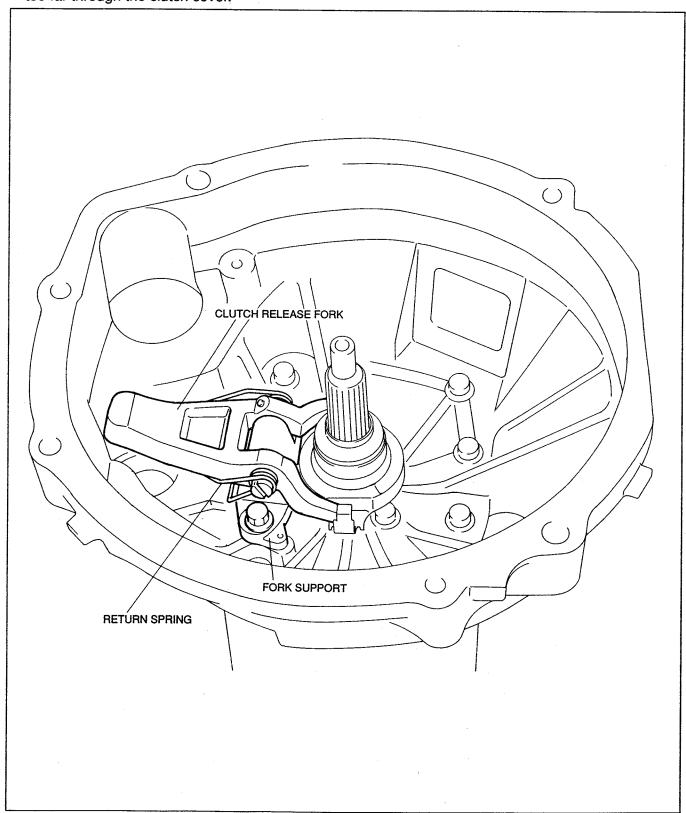
3. Clutch pedal released

When the clutch pedal is released, the clutch master cylinder pushrod exerts a counter force f on the pedal, and the fy component of that force acts against the clutch pedal's forward motion. Force fy becomes greater than the force Fy, and forces the pedal pivot point A to rotate leftward. When pivot point C returns past the line that joins pivot points A and B, the counter force fy from the master cylinder pushrod gains momentum. Force Fy now works in the same direction as the clutch pedal's backward momentum, thus returning the clutch pedal to its resting position.

CLUTCH UNIT

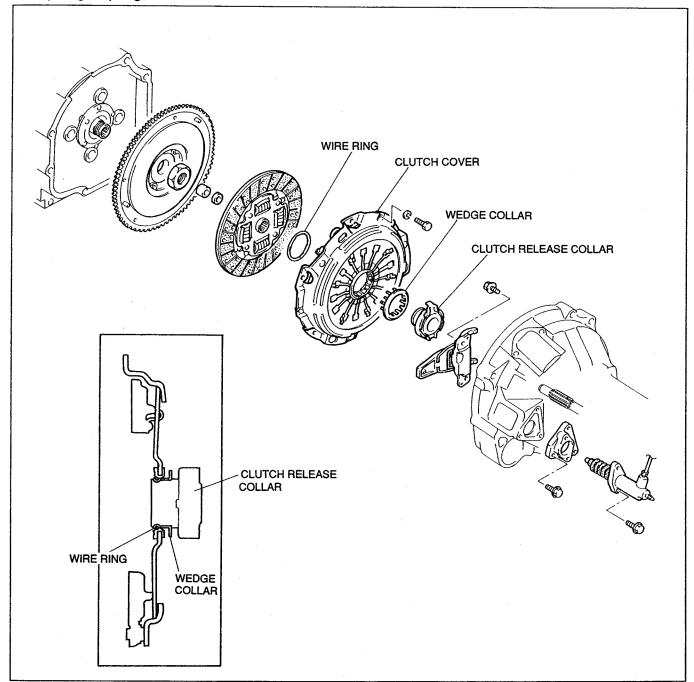
CLUTCH RELEASE FORK

- A cast iron clutch release fork is used for greater strength.
 The clutch release fork is held firmly to a cast iron support by an iron shaft, allowing for use of a pulltype clutch.
- A return spring is installed to the release fork assembly, thus keeping the release collar from returning too far through the clutch cover.



CLUTCH RELEASE COLLAR

- The clutch release collar uses a self-adjusting bearing to reduce noise and vibration.
- The release collar slots fit over the tips of the release fork, and the release collar is installed to the diaphragm spring.



37U0HX-510

The release collar is held to the diaphragm spring by a wire ring that fits into a groove in the release collar extension. An inward-tapered ring plate installed to the diaphragm spring keeps the wire ring from coming out of the groove when the clutch pedal is pressed, thus holding the release collar to the diaphragm spring.

When the pedal is at the resting position, the release fork return spring maintains enough tension to keep the release collar pulled in the direction of the transmission.

This keeps the wire ring pulled into the tapered ring plate, thus preventing the wire ring from accidentally slipping off the release collar. A wedge collar installed along the inner surface of the wire ring allows for removal of the wire ring from the groove and removal of the transmission. In the event that the clutch cover and release collar are separated, the wedge collar and wire ring must be replaced to maintain reliability of the clutch unit.

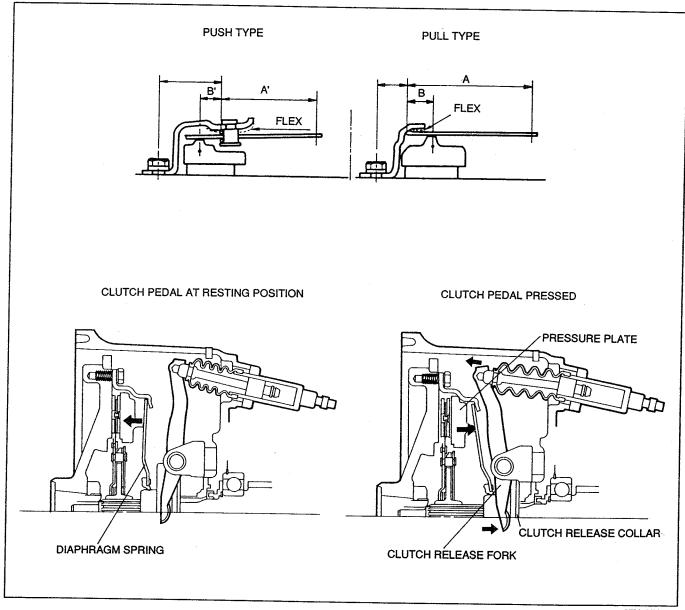
CLUTCH COVER

• Release leverage is increased by use of a pull-type clutch. This allows the driver to displace a heavier preset load with the same pedal pressure.

Clutch disengagement is improved by a design which shortens the distance between the clutch cover installation bolts and the diaphragm spring pivot point. This shortened distance minimizes diaphragm

spring flex, making clutch disengagement quicker and more effective.

The pivot point location on the pull-type clutch is different from that of the push type. The distance A between the pivot point and the force application point on the pull type clutch is longer than that (A') of the push type. This increases the release leverage A/B over A'/B'; therefore if both clutches have the same preset load, the pull-type clutch will require less pedal pressure than the push type, and operation will be easier.



37U0HX-511

Explanation of Mechanism

1. Clutch pedal at resting position

The diaphragm spring applies constant leftward force to the pressure plate.

2. Clutch pedal pressed

When the clutch pedal is pressed, the release fork moves the clutch release collar rightward and the diaphragm spring is pulled back. The pressure plate, which is clipped to the diaphragm spring, moves rightward with the release collar. The clutch disc and pressure plate are thus separated, and the clutch is disengaged.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION (R15M-D)

| | 2 |
|-----------|---|
| | 5 |
| .]_ | 3 |
| J_ | 3 |
| | 3 |
| J- | 4 |
| J– | 4 |
| J– | 5 |
| | _ |
| J- | 6 |
| J_ ; | 8 |
| | |
| | |
| 37U0JX-50 | |
| | J- J- J- J- J- J- J- J- 37U0JX-56 |

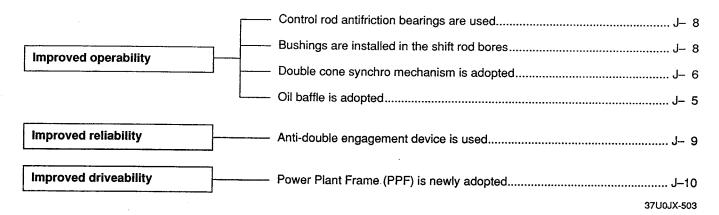
OUTLINE

- The new RX-7 uses the standard R15M-D (R5M-D) manual transmission.
- An oil baffle within the transmission interior improves operability.
- Bearings and bushings within the shift mechanism reduce control rod and shift rod friction during operation, and thus make shifting easier.
- Use of a double cone synchronizer (synchro) mechanism for 2nd and 3rd gears improves operability.

• A Power Plant Frame (PPF) is used to improve drivability.

37U0JX-502

FEATURES

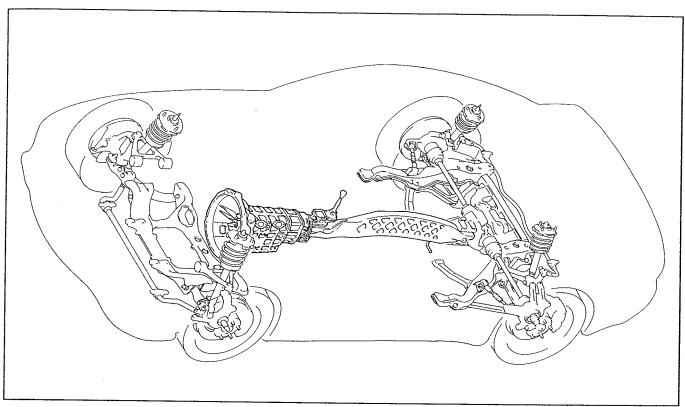


SPECIFICATIONS

| | E | ingine/Transmission | 13B Turbo |
|--------------------|-----------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| Item | | | R15M-D (R5M-D) |
| Shift type | | | 5-speed, floor |
| Operation | | | Direct |
| Synchronization me | echanism | | Synchromesh |
| | 1st | | 3.483 |
| | 2nd | | 2.015 |
| Gear ratio | 3rd | | 1.391 |
| Gear railo | 4th | | 1.000 |
| | 5th | | 0.806 |
| | Reverse | | 3.288 |
| | Grade | | API Service GL-4 or GL-5 |
| Oil | Viscosity | All-season | SAE 75W-90 |
| | Viscosity | Above 10°C {50°F} | SAE 80W-90 |
| | Capacity | L {US qt, Imp qt} | 2.5 {2.6, 2.2} |

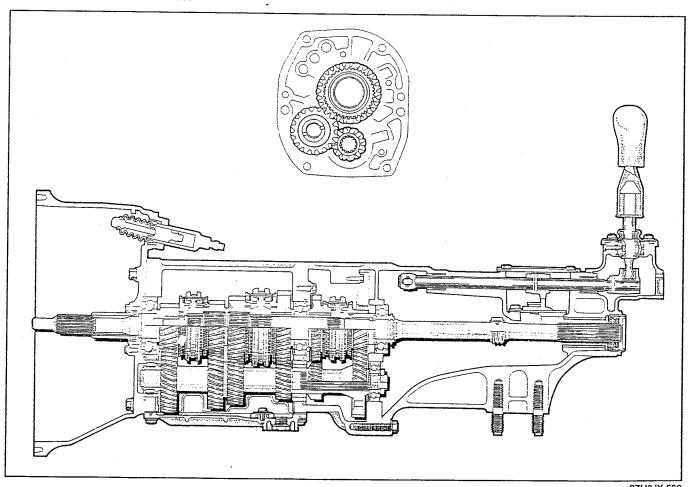
37U0JX-504

STRUCTURAL VIEW



37U0JX-505

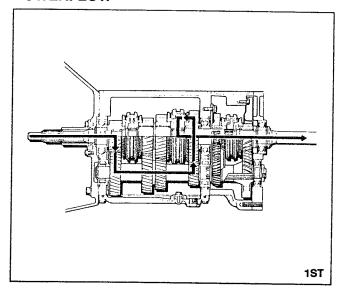
CROSS-SECTIONAL VIEW

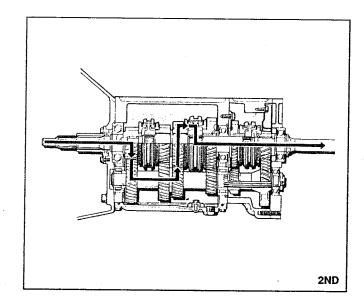


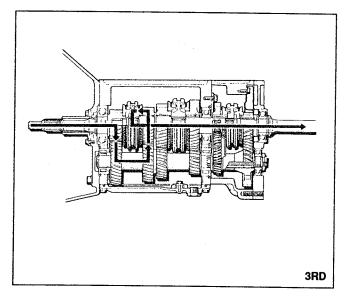
37U0JX-506

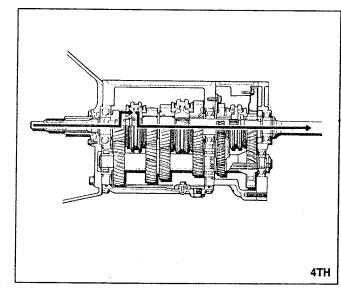
TRANSMISSION

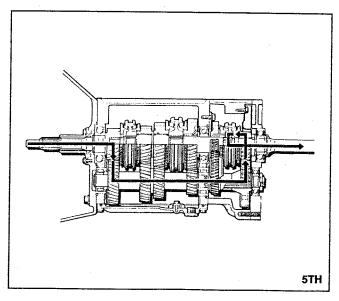
POWERFLOW

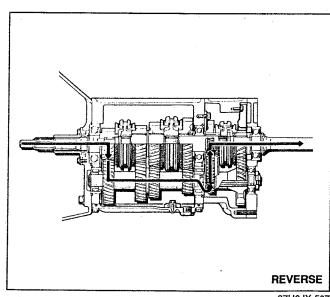






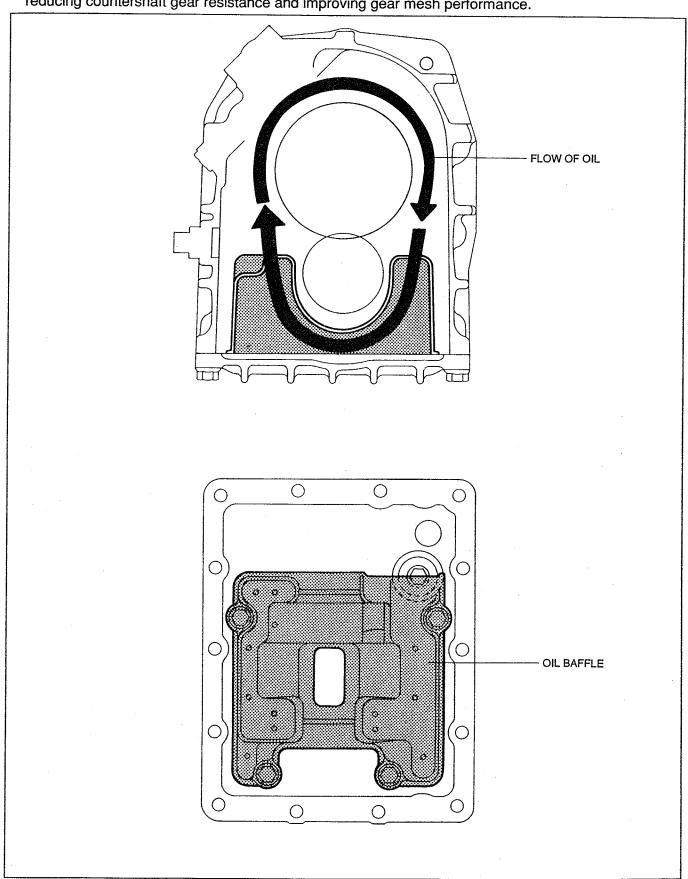






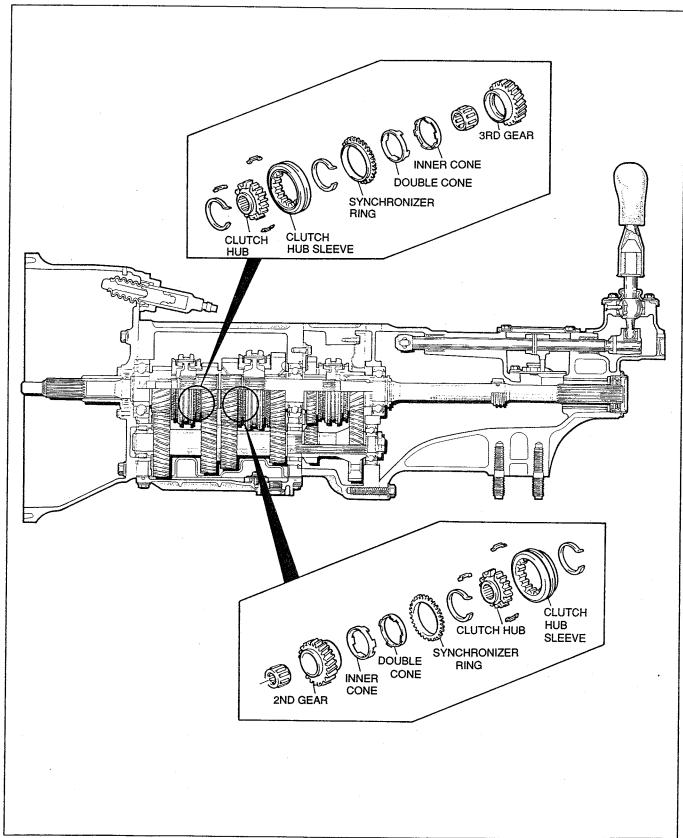
OIL BAFFLE

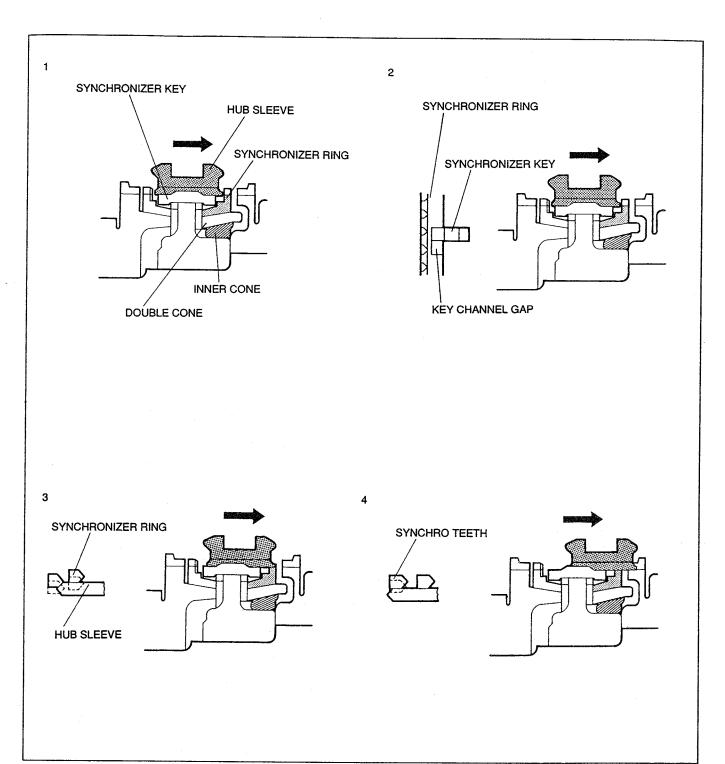
- A nylon plastic oil baffle is installed to the undercover.
 The oil baffle works with the countershaft to circulate oil throughout the transmission case, thus reducing countershaft gear resistance and improving gear mesh performance.



DOUBLE CONE SYNCHRONIZER MECHANISM

- A double cone synchronizer (synchro) mechanism is used for the 2nd and 3rd gears.
- The double cone synchro mechanism is a compact device capable of heavy duty meshing.
- The synchro mechanism reduces meshing time and improves operation.
- The double cone synchro mechanism includes a synchronizer ring, a double cone, and an inner cone.





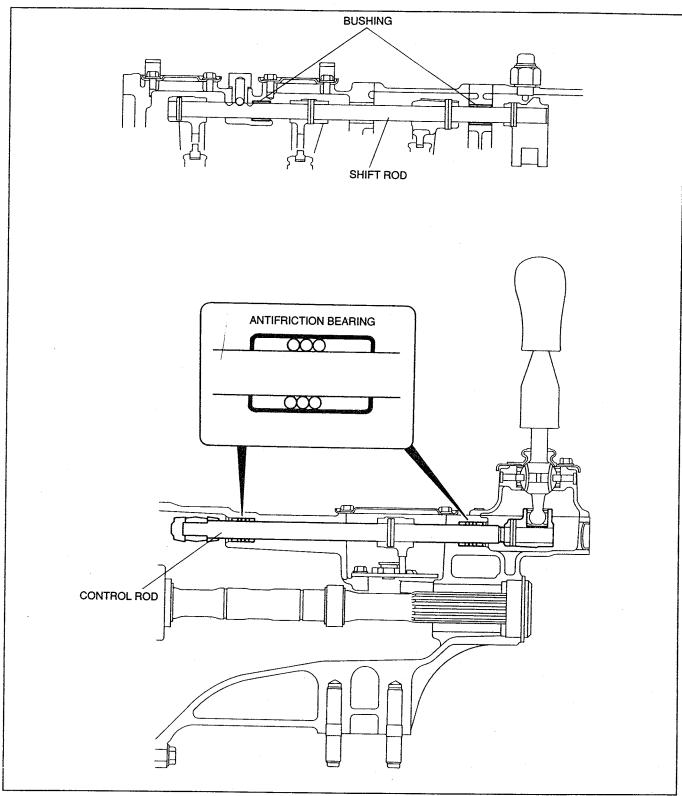
37U0JX-510

Operation

1. When the hub sleeve moves rightward (in the direction of the arrow), the synchronizer key presses against the synchronizer ring. The synchronizer ring is pressed onto the double cone, and the double cone is pressed onto the inner cone.

- 2. As the hub sleeve continues moving rightward, the key causes friction between the synchronizer ring, double cone, and inner cone. The synchronizer ring turns only the distance that the key channel gap allows, aligning the teeth of the hub sleeve and the synchronizer ring. As the hub sleeve continues moving, the friction between the cones becomes greater, and the difference between the rotational speeds of the synchronizer ring, inner cone, and double cone (unified with gear) gradually disappears.
- 3. The hub sleeve then moves up onto the synchronizer key and engages the synchronizer ring.
- 4. The hub sleeve then engages the synchro teeth of the gear to complete the shift.

SHIFT MECHANISM



37U0JX-511

Shift Rod

• Bronze bushings are installed in the shift rod bores of the transmission case and bearing housing to reduce shift rod friction during operation.

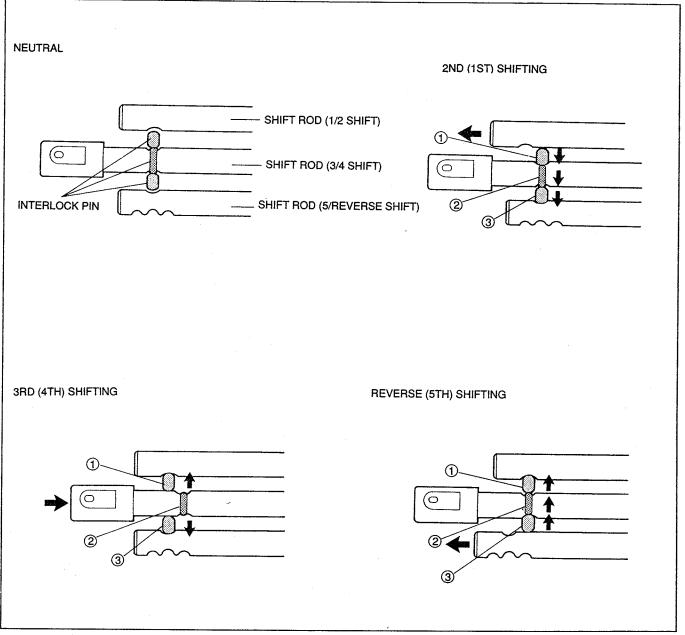
Control Rod

• Antifriction bearings are installed in the control rod bores of the extension housing to reduce control rod friction during operation.

SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM

• In normal interlock mechanisms if a shift rod is pushed, an interlock pin is forced out, locking only the neighboring shift rod. In the new interlock mechanism, another interlock pin installed inside the 3/4 shift rod ensures that when either the 1/2, 3/4, or 5/Reverse shift rod is moved, the remaining two shift rods are locked.

This provides reliable double-engagement prevention.



37U0JX-512

Operation

1/2 shifting

Movement of the 1/2 shift rod forces interlock pin 1 out of the 1/2 shift rod groove, and locks the 3/4 shift rod. Pin 2, forced by pin 1, pushes out pin 3 to lock the 5/Reverse shift rod.

3/4 shifting

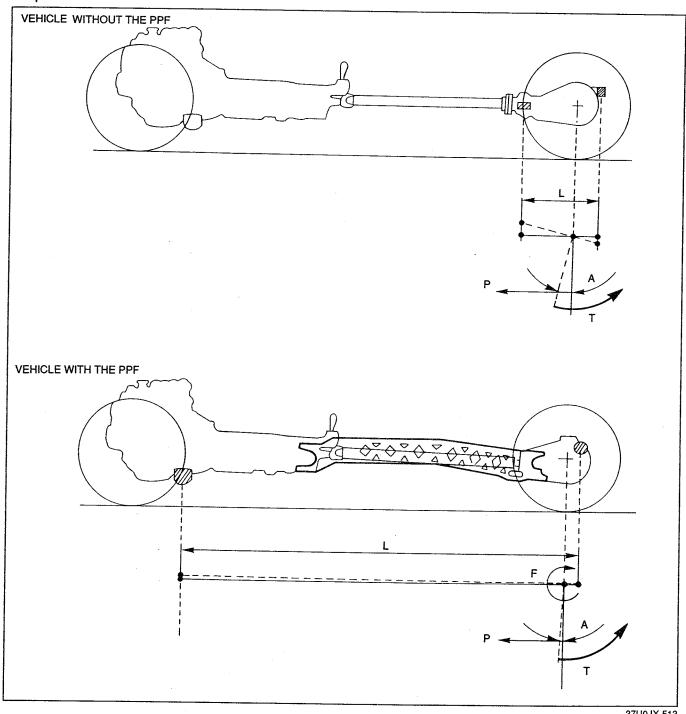
Movement of the 3/4 shift rod forces out pins 1 and 3, and locks the 1/2 and 5/Reverse shift rods. Pin 2 does not affect the other pins or shift rods during 3/4 shifting.

5/Reverse shifting

When performing 5/Reverse shifting, the interlock pins function the same way as in 1/2 shifting, except the pin movement order is in reverse, and the 3/4 and 1/2 shift rods are locked.

POWER PLANT FRAME (PPF)

The Power Plant Frame (PPF) creates a more direct, linear connection between the transmission and differential. A bracket installed between the transmission and differential maintains rigidity. This creates a more direct feeling between the vehicle and drive line, while at the same time generating a crisper shift.



During initial movement, the transmission sends power T through the tire contact surface to the road, and produces power P to move the vehicle forward. Traction from the road surface is then transmitted to the differential as rotational force F.

Mount span L, found in vehicles equipped with the PPF, is the area of rigidity that spans the distance from the differential to the engine mount. It greatly reduces the differential's angle of rotation A, more so than in cars without the PPF. Because of the rigidity and reduced angle of rotation, acceleration power is transmitted more linearly and efficiently. Also, power can be transmitted directly to the road surface, while at the same time reducing engine/transmission pitch.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

| SPECIFICATIONS | K- K- K- K- K- K- | 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 |
|--|----------------------------------|--|
| ELECTRONIC CONTROL SYSTEM | | |
| INPUT SIGNAL SYSTEM | K | 12 13 14 15 16 17 17 |
| EC-AT CONTROL UNIT | K- | 18 |
| OIL COOLER | K-2 | 20 |
| TRANSMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM | | |
| SHIFT-LOCK SYSTEMSHIFT-LOCK SYSTEM COMPONENTSSHIFT-LOCK SYSTEMKEY INTERLOCK SYSTEM | K-2 K-2 K-2 | 21 21 22 |
| SERVICE SERVICE POINTS | K-2 K-2 K-2 | 24 25 27 31 |
| 271 | IOKY. | 501 |

OUTLINE

- The 1993 RX-7 uses an RB4A-EL type 4-speed, electronically-controlled automatic transmission.
 The basic construction and operation are the same as the 1992 929 R4A-EL type automatic transmission, however, some specifications are changed to match the characteristics of the RX-7's rotary engine.
- The automatic transmission features a shift-lock system for improved safety.
- A power plant frame (PPF), interconnecting the driveline, is installed to improve drivability. (Refer to Section J.)

Comparison of 1993 RX-7 (RB4A-EL) and 1992 929 (R4A-EL)

- 1. To improve engine cooling, the EC-AT control unit lowers the lockup points when the engine coolant temperature exceeds 115°C {239°F}.
- 2. Service code number "58 (atmospheric pressure sensor)" is added to the EC-AT control unit self-diagnosis function.
- 3. The transmission gear ratios and the final gear ratio are different to improve acceleration.
- 4. To cope with the increased power of the rotary engine, the band servo piston diameter, forward clutch drive/driven plate numbers, and low and reverse brake drive/driven plate numbers are increased.

SPECIFICATIONS

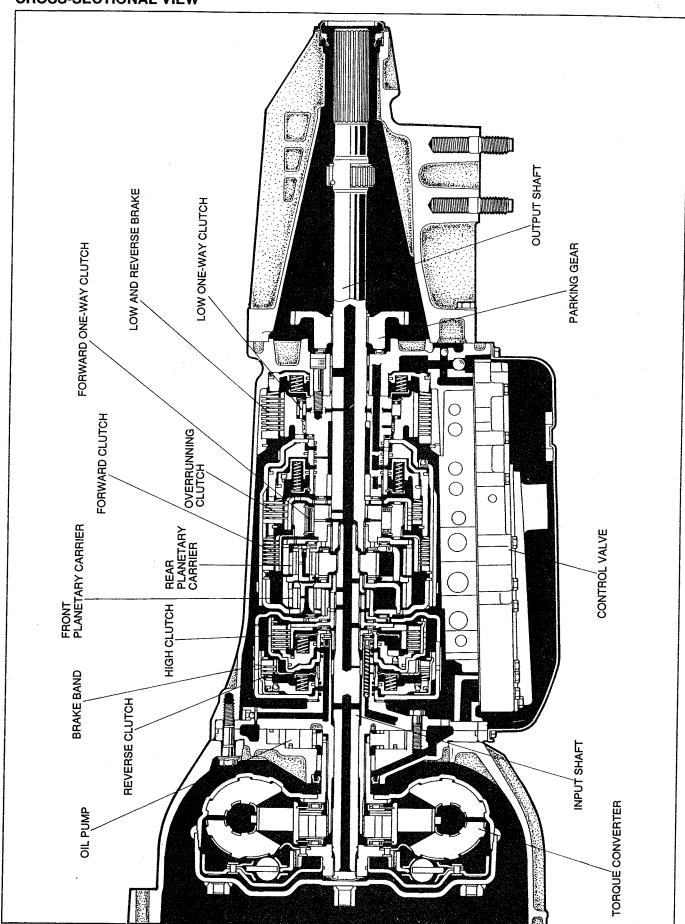
37U0KX-502

| | Model | 1993 RX-7 | 1992 929 | |
|---|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--|
| Item | | RB4A-EL | R4A-EL | |
| Engine type | | 13B Turbo | JE DOHC | |
| Transmission control | | Floo | or shift | |
| Operation method | | F | Rod | |
| | 1st | 3.027 | 2.785 | |
| | 2nd | 1.619 | 1.545 | |
| Gear ratio | 3rd | 1.1 | 000 | |
| • | O/D | 0.0 | 694 | |
| | Reverse | 2.2 | 272 | |
| Final gear ratio | | 3.909 | 4.300 | |
| Automatic transmission | Туре | Dexron® II or M-III | | |
| fluid (ATF) | Capacity L {US qt, Imp qt} | 8.6 {9.1, 7.6} | | |
| Torque converter stall torque | ratio | 2.200 | 2.400 | |
| | Reverse clutch | 2/2 | | |
| Hydraulic system | High clutch | 4. | /7 | |
| (number of drive/driven | Forward clutch | 6/6 | 5/5 | |
| plates) | Overrunning clutch | 3/5 | | |
| | Low and reverse brake | 7/7 | 6/6 | |
| Band servo mm {in} | Servo piston diameter (large/small) | 80.0/50.0 {3.15/1.97} | 72.0/44.0 {2.83/1.73} | |
| Dand Servo min (iii) | O/D servo piston outer diameter | 72.0 {2.83} | 68.0 {2.68} | |
| | Sun gear | 3 | 3 | |
| Front planetary carrier (number of teeth) | Pinion gear | 2 | 1 | |
| individual or tootily | Internal gear | 7: | 5 | |
| | Sun gear | 37 | 42 | |
| Rear planetary carrier (number of teeth) | Pinion gear | 19 | 17 | |
| indifficultion of teetiny | Internal gear | 7: | 5 | |

OUTLINE OF OPERATION

| Γ | D | | | Gear | Caaraatia | E | Except HOL | .D mode | | HOLD m | node | | | |
|---|------------|-----|----------|--------------|-----------|--|----------------|---------|--------------|----------------|------|-----------|---|------|
| | Range | | position | Gear ratio | Shift | Lockup | Engine braking | Shift | Lockup | Engine braking | | | | |
| | P | 4 | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | R | | | Reverse | 2.272 | _ | _ | 0 | _ | _ | 0 | | | |
| Г | N | | | - | _ | | | | | _ | | | | |
| | | 7 | 7 | 1st | 3.027 | A | | | | * | | | | |
| | D | | | n | | | 2nd | 1.619 | * | | O *1 | Low speed | | 0 *1 |
| K | | ' | | 3rd | 1.000 | * | 0 | O *1 | Fixed | 0 | O *1 | | | |
| | | | | O/D | 0.694 | V . | | | T | | | | 0 | |
| | | | | 1st | 3.027 | A | | | | | | | | |
| | s | ; | | 2nd | 1.619 | - + | | O *2 | Fixed | | O *2 | | | |
| | | | | 3rd | 1.000 | + | 0 | O *2 | 1 | 0 | O *2 | | | |
| - | L | | | 1st | 3.027 | | | 0 | Fixed | | 0 | | | |
| | ▼ L | · Ł | 1 | 2nd | 1.619 | * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * | | 0 | | | 0 | | | |

- <
- ↔ O O *1 O *2
- Does not shift unless the selector lever push button is depressed. Shifts without depressing the selector lever push button. Indicates that transmission shifts in the direction of the arrow. Indicates that lockup or engine braking is available. Engine braking is actuated at vehicle speeds over 10 km/h {6.2 MPH} and at throttle opening below 1.3/8. Engine braking is actuated at throttle opening below 1.3/8.



OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION

 The EC-AT can be divided into two systems: the transmission (mechanical system), which operates on hydraulic pressure, and the electronic control (electrical system), which electronically controls transmission pressure and operation.

• The mechanical system is the same as the 1992 929 R4A-EL type automatic transmission. Some

electrical system components are added or redesigned.

(Transmission)

Mechanical system -

Torque converter system

Torque converter

Powertrain system

Reverse clutch High clutch Forward clutch Overrunning clutch Low and reverse brake

Brake band

Forward one-way clutch Low one-way clutch Front planetary carrier Rear planetary carrier

Input shaft Output shaft

Hydraulic control system

Control valve Oil pump

(Electronic control)

Electrical system -

Input system

Hold switch Throttle sensor *1 Speed sensor 1 (revolution sensor)

Pulse generator Torque reduced signal

Mileage switch *2

Slip lockup OFF signal *2 ATF thermosensor

Atmospheric pressure sensor O/D inhibit signal (ASC signal) TAT terminal (diagnosis connector)

Output system

Solenoid valves (shift A, B) Solenoid valve (line pressure) Solenoid valve (lockup) Solenoid valve (lockup control) Solenoid valve (overrunning clutch) Dropping resistor

Reduce torque signal Slip lockup signal *2 Inhibitor signal Hold indicator

Other components

Range indicator

Control system

EC-AT control unit

Inhibitor switch

Speed sensor 2

Stoplight switch

(Speedometer sensor)

Water thermoswitch *2

Engine rpm signal *1

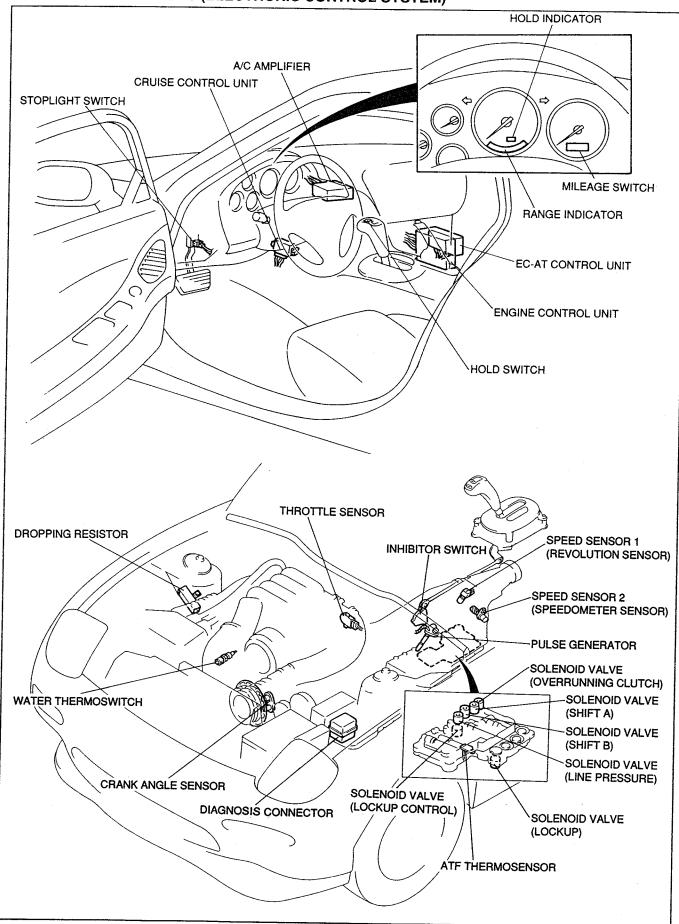
Idle signal *1

A/C signal

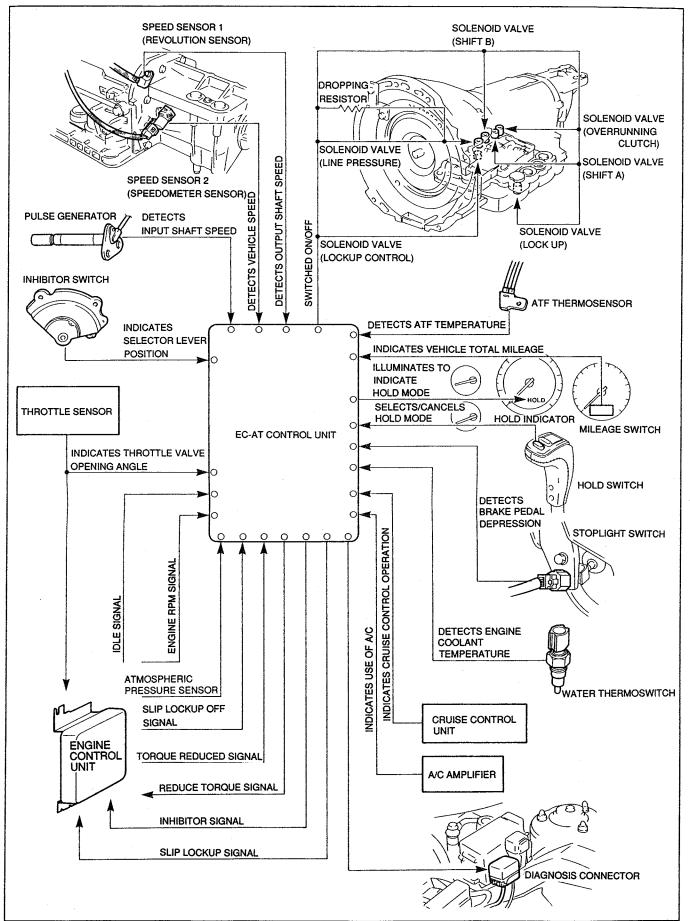
^{*1:} Components are redesigned.

^{*2:} Components are added.

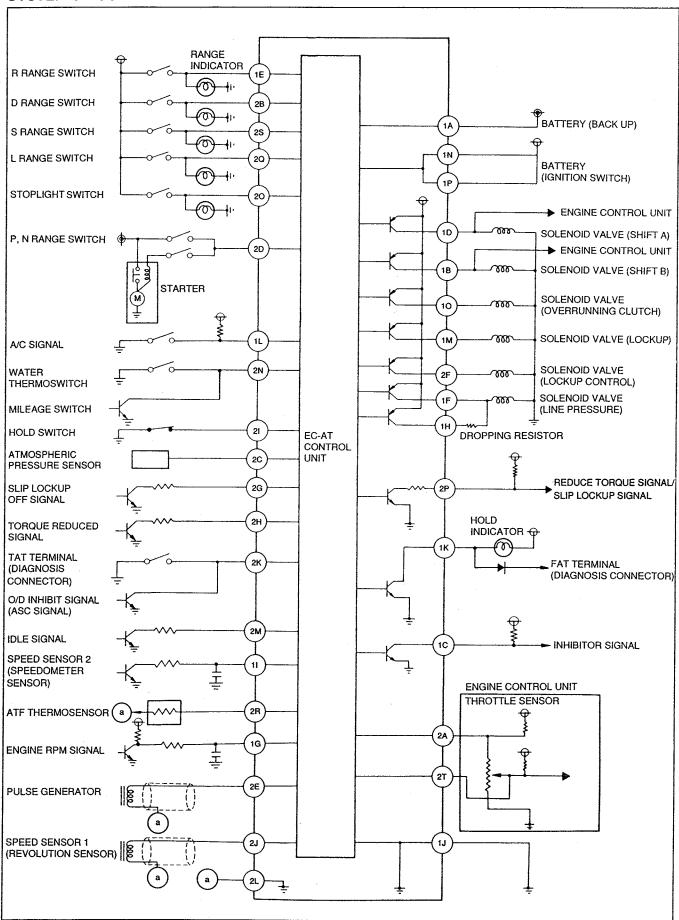
COMPONENT LOCATIONS (ELECTRONIC CONTROL SYSTEM)



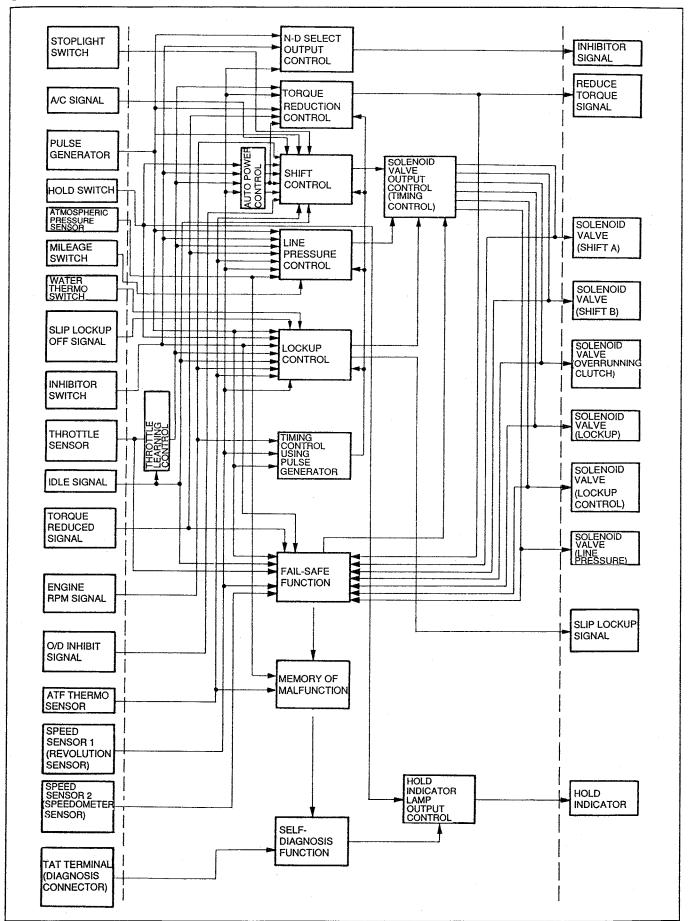
SYSTEM STRUCTURE



SYSTEM CIRCUIT



SYSTEM DIAGRAM



Electronic Components / Signals and Functions

| | . P. L. C. M. C. | Component / Signal | Function | | | | | |
|----------------|--|---|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| | Hold switch | | Selects/cancels HOLD mode and changes shifting pattern | | | | | |
| | Inhibitor swi | tch | Indicates selector lever range (position) | | | | | |
| | Throttle sen | sor*1 | Indicates throttle valve (accelerator pedal) opening angle | | | | | |
| | Idle signal*1 | | Indicates fully closed throttle valve (accelerator pedal) | | | | | |
| | Speed sens | peed sensor 1 (revolution sensor) Detects output shaft speed | | | | | | |
| | Speed sense (spare sense | or 2 (speedometer sensor) or) | Detects vehicle speed | | | | | |
| 1_ | Pulse generator Detects input shaft speed | | | | | | | |
| ter | Stoplight sw | Stoplight switch Detects brake pedal depression | | | | | | |
| Input system | Torque redu | ced signal | Indicates torque reduction control available | | | | | |
| E | Water therm | oswitch*2 | Detects engine coolant temperature | | | | | |
| = | Mileage swit | ch*² | Indicates vehicle total mileage | | | | | |
| 1 | A/C signal | | Indicates use of A/C | | | | | |
| | Slip lockup C | OFF signal*2 | Indicates slip lockup control not available | | | | | |
| | Engine rpm | signal*1 | Detects engine speed | | | | | |
| | ATF thermos | ensor | Detects ATF temperature | | | | | |
| | Atmospheric | pressure sensor | Detects atmospheric pressure | | | | | |
| | O/D inhibit si | gnal (ASC signal) | Indicates cruise control operation | | | | | |
| | TAT terminal | (diagnosis connector) | Allows indication of service code(s) when grounded | | | | | |
| | Solenoid valve | Shift A, B | Switched ON/OFF by electrical signals from EC-AT control unit; regulates shifting by switching oil paths | | | | | |
| | | Line pressure | Switched ON/OFF by electrical signals (duty signals) from EC-AT control unit; adjusts oil pump discharge pressure to appropriate line pressure for driving condition | | | | | |
| | | 1 | Lockup | Switched ON/OFF by electrical signals (duty signals) from EC-AT control unit; controls lockup together with solenoid valve (lockup control) | | | | |
| stem | | Lockup control | Switched ON/OFF by electrical signals from EC-AT control unit; controls lockup together with solenoid valve (lockup) | | | | | |
| Output system | | Overrunning clutch | Switched ON/OFF by electrical signals from EC-AT control unit; controls engine braking based on driving condition | | | | | |
| Out | Dropping resi | | Relays electrical signals from EC-AT control unit to solenoid valve (line pressure) | | | | | |
| | Reduce torqu | | Sends signal to engine control unit when shifting | | | | | |
| | Slip lockup si | gnal*² | Sends signal to engine control unit during slip lockup condition | | | | | |
| | Inhibitor signa | al | Sends signal to engine control unit when transmission shifted from P and N ranges to driving ranges | | | | | |
| | Hold indicator | | Illuminates to indicate HOLD mode when hold switch is activated; flashes if malfunction is detected as a result of self-diagnosis, flashes service code(s) when TAT terminal is grounded | | | | | |
| Others | Range indicat | or | Illuminates to indicate selector lever range position | | | | | |
| Control system | EC-AT contro | unit | Regulates shift points and lockup points according to electrical signals from various sensors; actuates solenoid valves | | | | | |
| | | · | 37LI0KX-507 | | | | | |

^{*1:} Components are redesigned.
*2: Components are added.

RELATION OF ELECTRONIC COMPONENT AND CONTROL SYSTEM

| | | 3 | i e | 0 | | | ı | | l | 1 | 1 | |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|---|--|--|---|--|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| | Mode selection control | Auto power control | Shift control | Timing control using pulse generator | Engine braking control | Line pressure control | Lockup control | Throttle learning control | Torque reduction control | N-D select output control | Fail-safe function | Self-diagnosis function |
| Hold switch | 0 | 0 | 0 | | 0 | | 0 | | | | | |
| Inhibitor switch | 0 | 0 | 0 | | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | 0 | 0 | |
| Throttle sensor | 0 | 0 | 0 | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | 0 | 0 |
| Idle signal | | | 0 | | | | 0 | 0 | | | 0 | |
| Speed sensor 1 (revolution sensor) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Speed sensor 2 (speedometer sensor) | Δ | Δ | Δ | | Δ | Δ | Δ | | Δ | Δ | 0 | 0 |
| Pulse generator | | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Stoplight switch | | | 0 | | | | | | | | | |
| Torque reduced signal | | | | | | 0 | | | 0 | | 0 | |
| Water thermoswitch | 0 | | | | | | 0 | | | | | |
| Mileage switch | | | | | | 0 | | | | | | |
| A/C signal | 0 | | 0 | | | | | | | | | |
| Slip lockup OFF signal | | | | | | | 0 | | | | | |
| Engine rpm signal | 0 | | 0 | 0 | | | 0 | | | | | 0 |
| ATF thermosensor | 0 | | 0 | | | 0 | 0 | | | | | 0 |
| Atmospheric pressure sensor | | | | | | 0 | | | | | | 0 |
| O/D inhibit signal (ASC signal) | | | 0 | | | | · | | | | | |
| TAT terminal (diagnosis connector) | | | | | | | | | | | | 0 |
| Solenoid valves (shift A, B) | | | 0 | | | | | | | | 0 | 0 |
| Solenoid valve (line pressure) | | | | | | 0 | | | | | 0 | 0 |
| Solenoid valve (lockup) | | | | | | | 0 | | | | 0 | 0 |
| Solenoid valve (lockup control) | | | | | | | 0 | | | | 0 | 0 |
| Solenoid valve (overrunning clutch) | | | - | | 0 | | | | | | 0 | 0 |
| Reduce torque signal | | | | | | | - | | 0 | | 0 | 0 |
| Slip lockup signal | | | | | | | 0 | | | | | |
| Inhibitor signal | | | | | | | | | | 0 | | |
| Hold indicator | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | 0 |
| | Inhibitor switch Throttle sensor Idle signal Speed sensor 1 (revolution sensor) Speed sensor 2 (speedometer sensor) Pulse generator Stoplight switch Torque reduced signal Water thermoswitch Mileage switch A/C signal Slip lockup OFF signal Engine rpm signal ATF thermosensor Atmospheric pressure sensor O/D inhibit signal (ASC signal) TAT terminal (diagnosis connector) Solenoid valves (shift A, B) | Hold switch Inhibitor switch O Inhibitor switch O Throttle sensor Idle signal Speed sensor 1 (revolution sensor) Speed sensor 2 (speedometer sensor) Pulse generator Stoplight switch Torque reduced signal Water thermoswitch A/C signal Slip lockup OFF signal Engine rpm signal ATF thermosensor Atmospheric pressure sensor O/D inhibit signal (ASC signal) TAT terminal (diagnosis connector) Solenoid valves (shift A, B) Solenoid valve (lockup) Solenoid valve (lockup control) Solenoid valve (overrunning clutch) Reduce torque signal Inhibitor signal | Hold switch O Inhibitor switch O Idle signal Speed sensor 1 (revolution sensor) O Speed sensor 2 (speedometer sensor) O Speed sensor 2 (speedometer sensor) O Pulse generator Stoplight switch Torque reduced signal Water thermoswitch Mileage switch A/C signal Slip lockup OFF signal Engine rpm signal ATF thermosensor Atmospheric pressure sensor O/D inhibit signal (ASC signal) TAT terminal (diagnosis connector) Solenoid valves (shift A, B) Solenoid valve (line pressure) Solenoid valve (lockup) Solenoid valve (lockup control) Solenoid valve (overrunning clutch) Reduce torque signal Inhibitor signal | Hold switch Hold switch Cocolor Inhibitor switch Cocolor Inhibitor switch Cocolor Inhibitor switch Cocolor Inhibitor switch Cocolor Inhibit signal (ASC signal) TAT terminal (diagnosis connector) Solenoid valve (lockup) Solenoid valve (lockup) Solenoid valve (lockup control) Reduce torque signal Hold switch Cocolor Cocol | Hold switch Hold switch O O O Inhibitor switch O O O Inhibit sensor Idle signal Speed sensor 1 (revolution sensor) O O O O Speed sensor 2 (speedometer sensor) O O O O Speed sensor 2 (speedometer sensor) O O O O Speed sensor 2 (speedometer sensor) O O O O Speed sensor 2 (speedometer sensor) O O O O Stoplight switch Torque reduced signal Water thermoswitch O O O Mileage switch A/C signal Slip lockup OFF signal Engine rpm signal O O O ATF thermosensor Atmospheric pressure sensor O/D inhibit signal (ASC signal) TAT terminal (diagnosis connector) Solenoid valves (shift A, B) Solenoid valve (line pressure) Solenoid valve (lockup) Solenoid valve (lockup control) Solenoid valve (voerrunning clutch) Reduce torque signal Inhibitor signal | Hold switch Hold sensor Hold | Hold switch Hold switch No N | Hold switch | Hold switch | Hold switch | March Marc | Inhibitor switch |

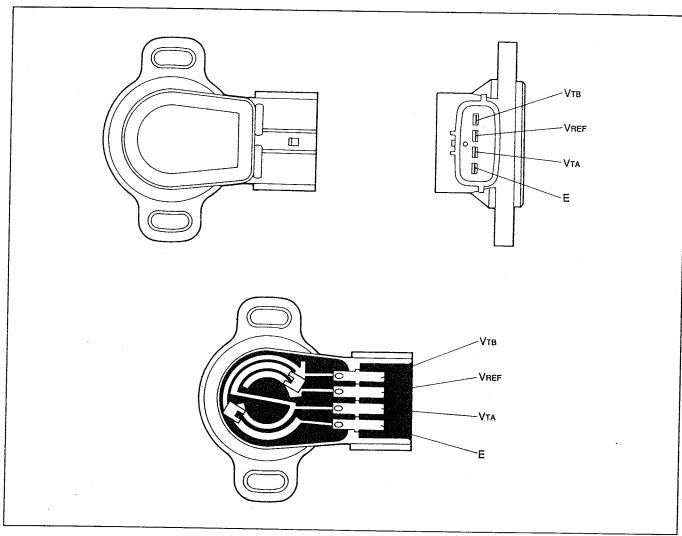
 \triangle : Backup for speed sensor 1 (revolution sensor)

ELECTRONIC CONTROL SYSTEM

INPUT SIGNAL SYSTEM

THROTTLE SENSOR

• The throttle sensor, (variable resistor linear-type) attached to the throttle body, is basically the same as for the 1992 RX-7.



37U0KX-509

Construction

The throttle sensor contains a plate which is coaxially connected to the throttle valve.
 This plate rotates together with the throttle valve and is so designed that the contact points slide over the resistor, which is printed on a base plate.

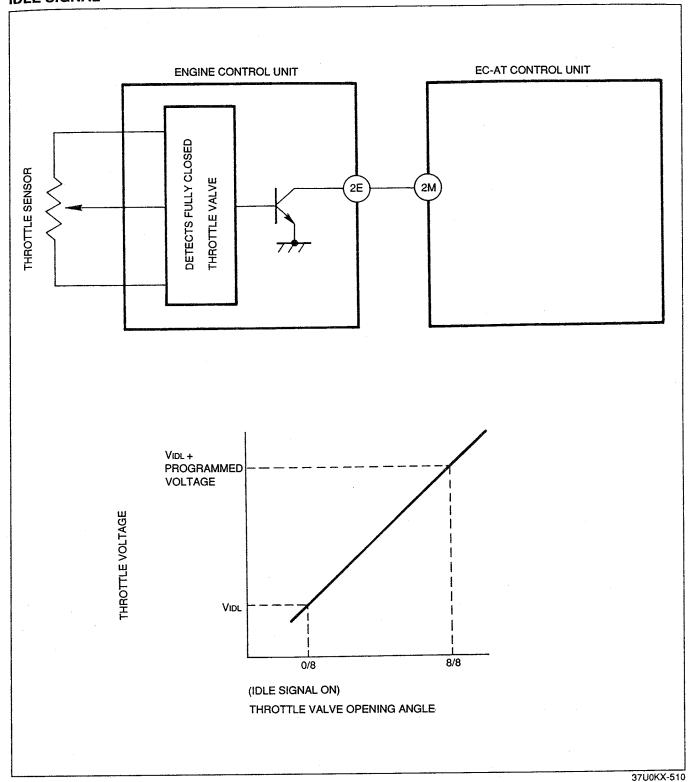
Operation

• As the plate rotates, resistance between terminals V_{TB} and E increases in proportionately. Therefore, voltage between terminals V_{TB} and E also increases in proportion to the resistance. The EC-AT control unit then calculates the voltage ratio between terminals V_{TB} and E and terminals V_{REF} and E as the throttle valve opening angle.

Voltage ratio (%) =
$$\frac{V_{TB} \leftrightarrow E \text{ voltage}}{V_{REF} \leftrightarrow E \text{ voltage}} \times 100$$

Note

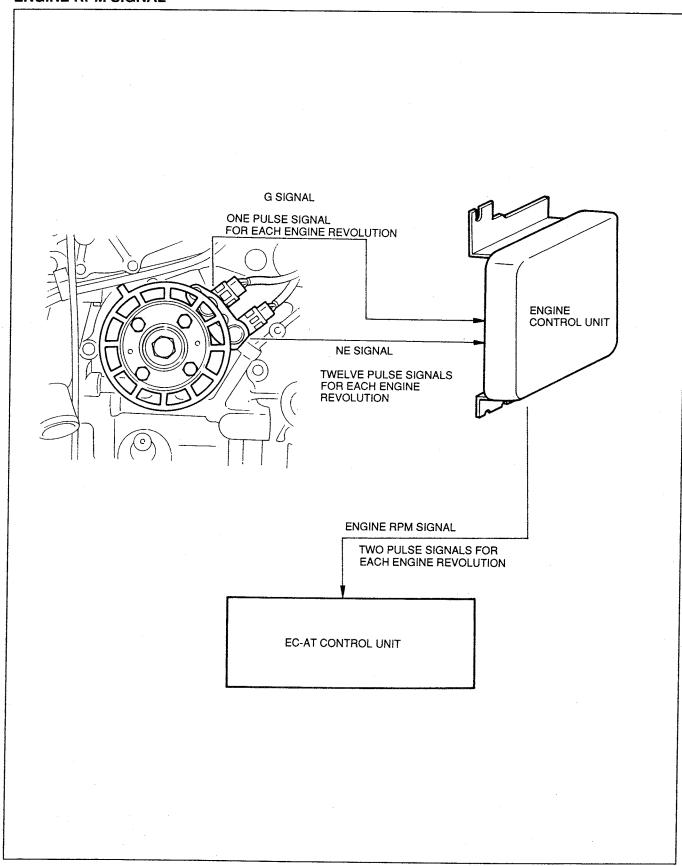
V_{TA} signal is for engine control, and has no relation to the EC-AT system control.



The idle signal is output by the engine control unit (ECU).
 The ECU detects the throttle valve opening angle and sends a signal to the EC-AT control unit when the throttle valve is fully closed (idle).

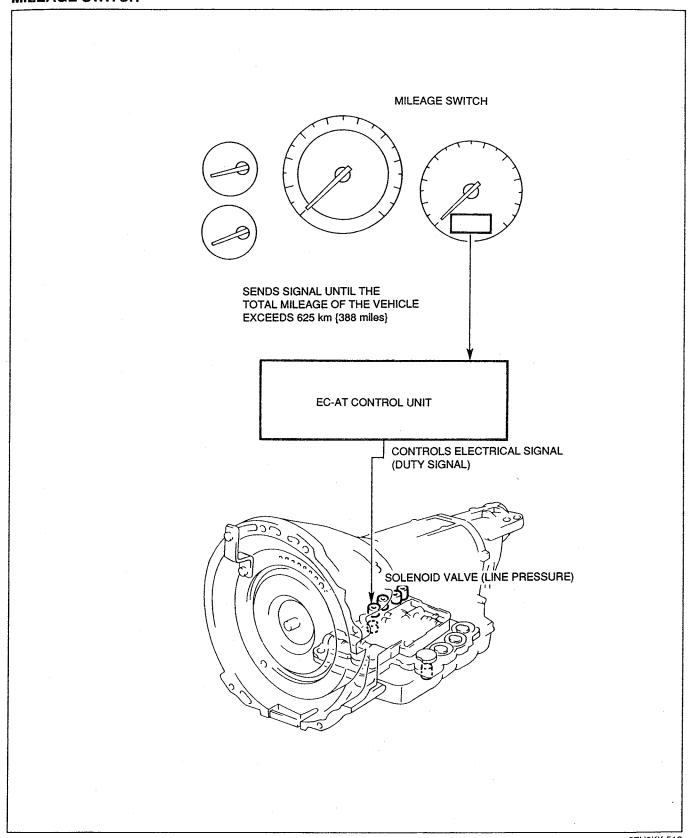
Also, to compensate for slight variation in throttle voltage, a throttle learning control program is contained in the ECU, the same as that employed for the 1992 929.

Throttle learning control registers the voltage when the idle signal is ON (throttle valve is fully closed) as the voltage at 0/8 throttle valve opening (V_{IDL}). Based on this data, the throttle learning control calculates the voltage at 8/8 throttle valve opening as V_{IDL} + programmed voltage.



<sup>Igniter pulse signals are input to the EC-AT control unit as engine rpm signals to control the driving pattern, shift timing, and lockup operation.
Two pulse signals are input for each revolution of the engine.</sup>

MILEAGE SWITCH



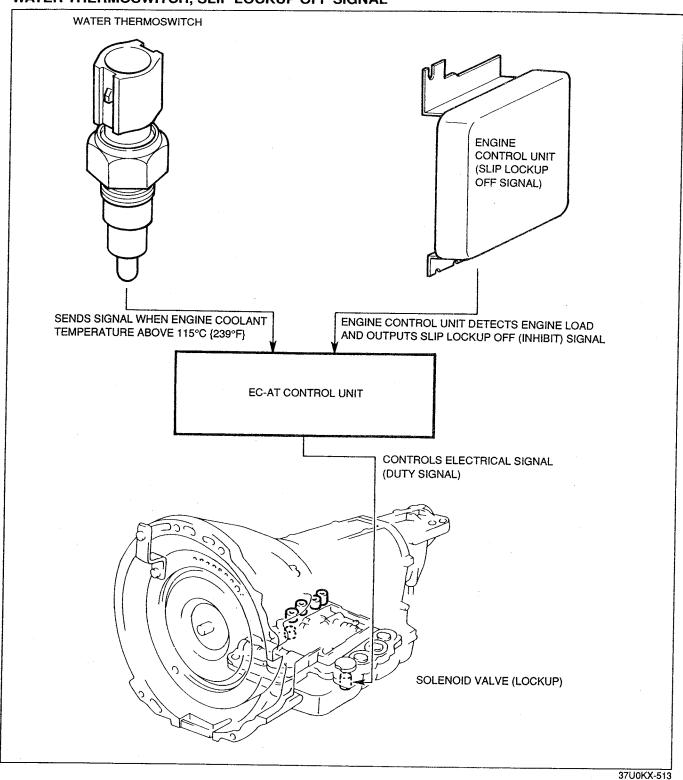
37U0KX-512

Mileage Switch

- A mileage switch is included in the instrument cluster.
- Until the total mileage of the vehicle exceeds 625 km {388 miles}, as indicated by the mileage switch, the EC-AT control unit reduces the line pressure to improve break-in of the transmission.

 • At 625 km {388 miles}, the mileage switch opens to signal the EC-AT control unit.

WATER THERMOSWITCH, SLIP LOCKUP OFF SIGNAL



Water Thermoswitch

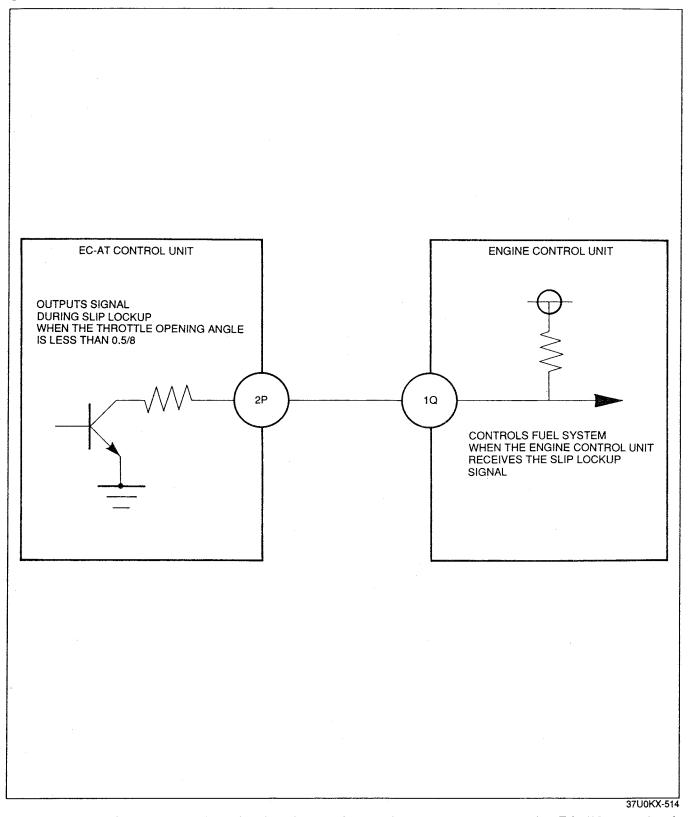
- The water thermoswitch is installed on the thermostat cover to detect engine coolant temperature.
- When the engine coolant temperature is more than 115°C {239°F}, the EC-AT control unit commands lockup engagement at lower speeds than normal to reduce the load on the engine and to improve cooling performance.

Slip Lockup OFF Signal

 The engine control unit detects engine load and outputs the slip lockup OFF signal to inhibit slip lockup operation when necessary.

OUTPUT SIGNAL SYSTEM

SLIP LOCKUP SIGNAL



 During slip lockup control when the throttle opening angle is less than 0.5/8, the EC-AT control unit outputs the slip lockup signal to the engine control unit (ECU).
 When the ECU receives the slip lockup signal, the ECU controls the fuel system to reduce the shift shock when deceleration.

• The EC-AT control unit terminal 2P is used for the slip lockup signal and the reduce torque signal.

CONTROL SYSTEM

EC-AT CONTROL UNIT

 The EC-AT control unit functions are basically the same as for the 1992 929 EC-AT, however, some control functions are changed to improve drivability and serviceability.

Mode Selection Control

- In D range there are four modes are available "HOLD" "POWER" "NORMAL A/C ON" "NORMAL A/C OFF", which are the same as the 1992 929 EC-AT.
- In S and L ranges, there are three modes are available "HOLD" "POWER" "NORMAL".
- The auto power control is also featured.

Note

• Once the POWER mode is selected, the EC-AT control unit does not switch to NORMAL mode until the ignition switch is turned OFF.

Some new functions are added as follows

- To improve vehicle performance, the EC-AT control unit selects the low ATF temperature mode under the following all conditions:
 - (1) In the period shortly after the engine is started
 - (2) When D range is selected
 - (3) When the ATF temperature is less than 40°C {104°F}

Note

- The shift points during the low ATF temperature mode are higher than in the POWER mode.
- When the engine coolant temperature is above 115°C {239°F}, the lockup points are lowered to aid engine cooling.

Shift Control

O/D inhibition conditions are changed as follows.

O/D will be inhibited when either of the following conditions is met:

- O/D inhibit signal (auto speed control [ASC]) is ON
 - (1) When the vehicle speed drops more than 8 km/h {5 MPH} below the set speed while cruise control is in use.
 - (2) When the RESUME/ACCEL switch is pressed.
- ATF temperature is below 10°C {50°F}
- ATF temperature is below 38°C {100°F} and vehicle speed is below 63 km/h {39 MPH}

Engine Braking Control

The overrunning clutch engagement conditions are changed as follows.

The overrunning clutch is engaged when the following conditions are met:

| Range | D | | S | Ĺ | |
|---------------|---|------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Mode | NORMAL A/C OFF | HOLD | Except HOLD | HOLD | ***** |
| Gear position | 1st, 2nd, 3rd | 2nd, 3rd | 1st, 2nd, 3rd | 2nd, 3rd | 1st, 2nd |
| Condition | Engaged when throt is below 1.3/8 and above 10 km/h | vehicle speed is | Engaged when thro is below | ottle opening angle v 1.3/8 | Constantly engaged |

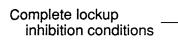
Note

 In D or S range 1st gear, engine braking is not available because the low and reverse brake does not engage. Also, the overrunning clutch does not engage in O/D, but engine braking is available.

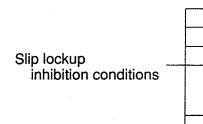
Lockup Control

Lockup inhibition conditions are changed as follows.

Complete lockup and slip lockup are inhibited when any of the following conditions are met:



- Transmission is in 3rd gear position and ATF temperature is below 38°C {100°F}
- Transmission is in O/D gear position and ATF temperature is below 20°C {68°F}



- ATF temperature is above 100°C {212°F}
- ATF temperature is below 50°C {122°F}
- Slip lockup OFF signal is ON
- Accelerator pedal is depressed abruptly (throttle opening angle changes more than 0.3/8 in less than 0.08 second)
- Transmission is in O/D gear position and idle signal is ON.
- Transmission is in 3rd gear position and idle signal is ON and vehicle speed is below 140 km/h {87 MPH}

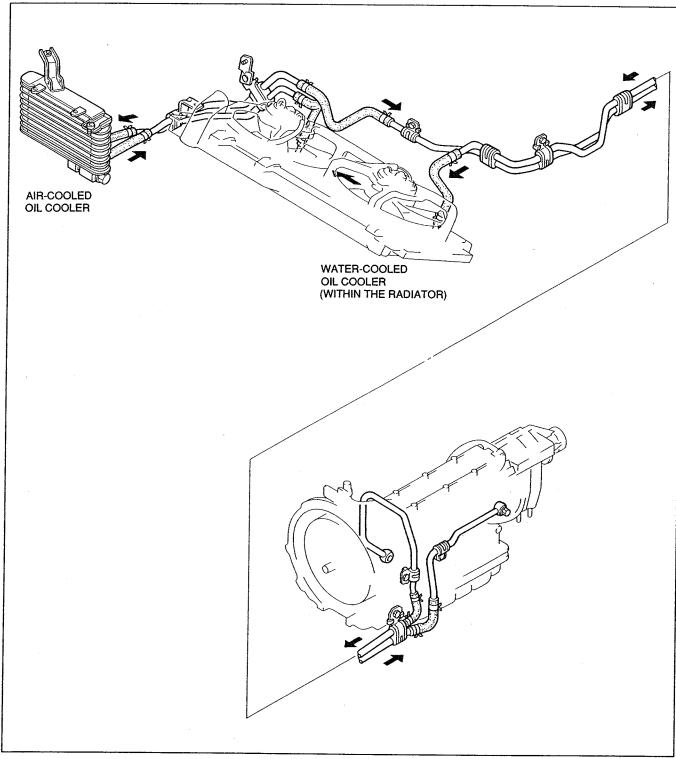
Self-Diagnosis Function

• The self-diagnosis function is the same as the 1992 929 EC-AT, however, service code number 58 "atmospheric pressure sensor" is added.

When the atmospheric pressure sensor is not input from the engine control unit, the EC-AT control unit registers code number 58 and warns the driver by flashing the hold indicator.

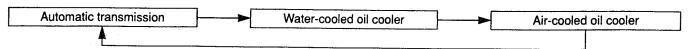
OIL COOLER

OIL COOLER



37U0KX-537

The automatic transmission is equipped with an air-cooled oil cooler, in addition to a water-cooled oil cooler (within the radiator), for improved ATF cooling performance. The ATF flows as shown below.



TRANSMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

SHIFT-LOCK SYSTEM

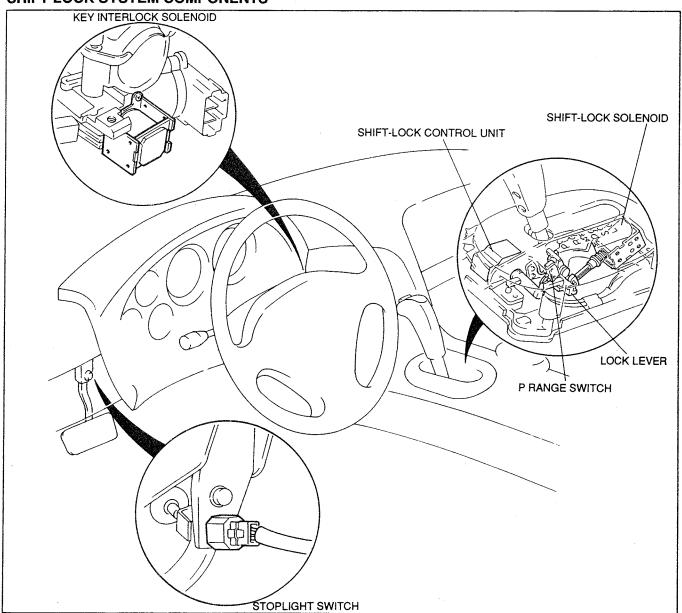
OUTLINE

- 1. The automatic transmission also features a shift-lock system for improved safety.

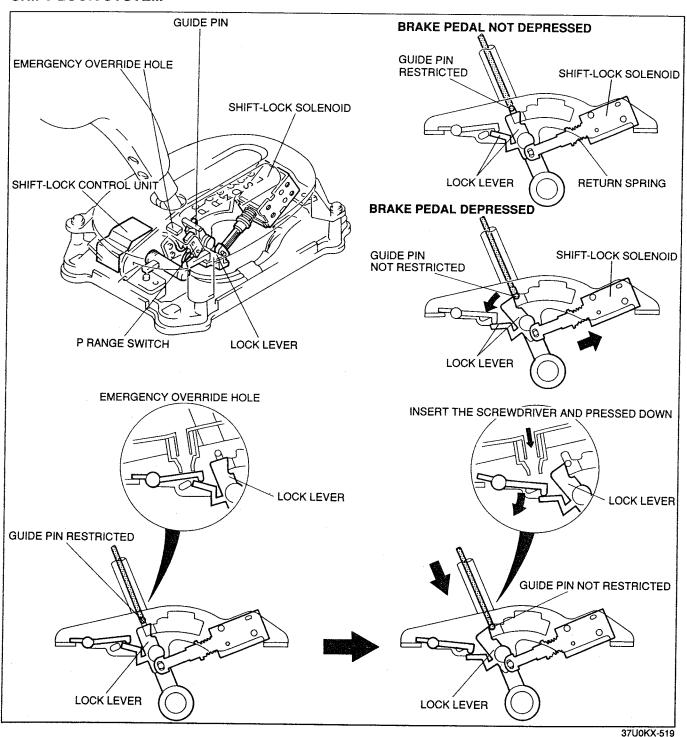
 This system's operation is the same as the 1992 RX-7, but the components are redesigned for 1993 RX-7.
- 2. The shift-lock system is composed of the shift-lock actuator, P-range switch, and lock lever. The shift-lock actuator is changed to a solenoid type to reduce shift-lock operation noise, and the shift-lock control unit is separated from the actuator (solenoid).
- 3. A shift-lock release system, which releases the selector lever lock when insert the screwdriver provided in the tool kit to the emergency override hole and pressed down, is featured as a shift-lock system fail-safe.
- 4. The key interlock system, which prevents the ignition key from being turned to LOCK position when the selector lever is in other than P range, is the same as for the 1992 RX-7, however, a key interlock solenoid is used instead of an interlock cable to lock the key cylinder.

37U0KX-517

SHIFT-LOCK SYSTEM COMPONENTS



SHIFT-LOCK SYSTEM



Shift-Lock System

 The shift-lock system, which is composed of the shift-lock solenoid, P-range switch, and lock lever, is controlled by the shift-lock control unit.

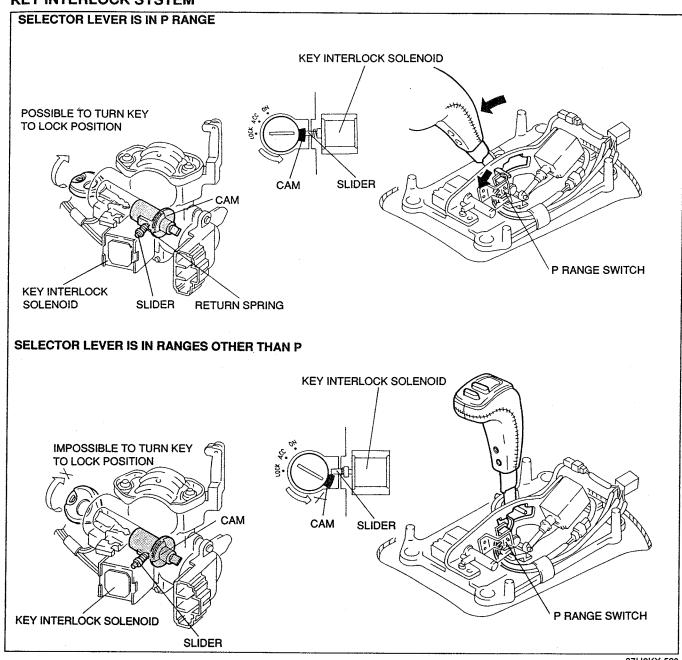
 When the brake pedal is depressed with the selector lever is in P range and the ignition switch is ON, the relays in the shift-lock control unit cause current to flow to the shift-lock solenoid, moving the lock lever to the release side.

• When there is no current to the shift-lock solenoid, the lock lever is held in the lock position by the return spring.

Shift-Lock Release System

 When the screwdriver is inserted into the emergency override hole and pressed down, the lock lever releases the guide pin, enabling gear selection.

KEY INTERLOCK SYSTEM



37U0KX-520

Construction

The key interlock system is composed of the key interlock solenoid, P-range switch, slider, cam, and return spring.

This system controls the movement of the key cylinder via the slider and the key interlock solenoid installed on the key cylinder.

Operation

P range (no current flow to key interlock solenoid)

When the selector lever is in P range, the P-range switch is OFF and no current flows to the key interlock solenoid.

Because the slider is pulled back by the return spring, the cylinder can be turned to the LOCK position.

Ranges other than P (current flow to key interlock solenoid)

When the selector lever is in ranges other than P, the P-range switch is ON and current flows to the key interlock solenoid, pushing the slider toward the key cylinder.

Because the cam hits against the slider, the cylinder cannot be turned to LOCK position.

SERVICE

SERIVCE POINTS

OUTLINE

• In 1993 RX-7, there are three testers are available to check the EC-AT system as shown in the chart below.

| Item | Tester | DT-S 1000 | Self-Diagnosis Checker | Engine Signal Monitor |
|---|---------|-----------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Self-diagnosis function (Service code number) | | 0 | 0 . | |
| Electrical signal inspection | | 0 | | |
| EC-AT control unit terminal | voltage | | | 0 |

Self-Diagnosis Function (Service Code Number)

• When checking the service code number of the self-diagnosis function which is memorized in the EC-AT control unit, the new **DT-S 1000** or the **Self-Diagnosis Checker** is available.

Note

• The service code number checking procedure with the Self-Diagnosis Checker is the same as the 1992 929.

Electrical Signal Inspection

- When inspecting the electrical signal of the EC-AT control unit, the new DT-S 1000 is available.
- The DT-S 1000 checks for proper operation of various switches and sensors in the EC-AT system, and also checks the EC-AT control unit for output the various control signals.

EC-AT Control Unit Terminal Voltage

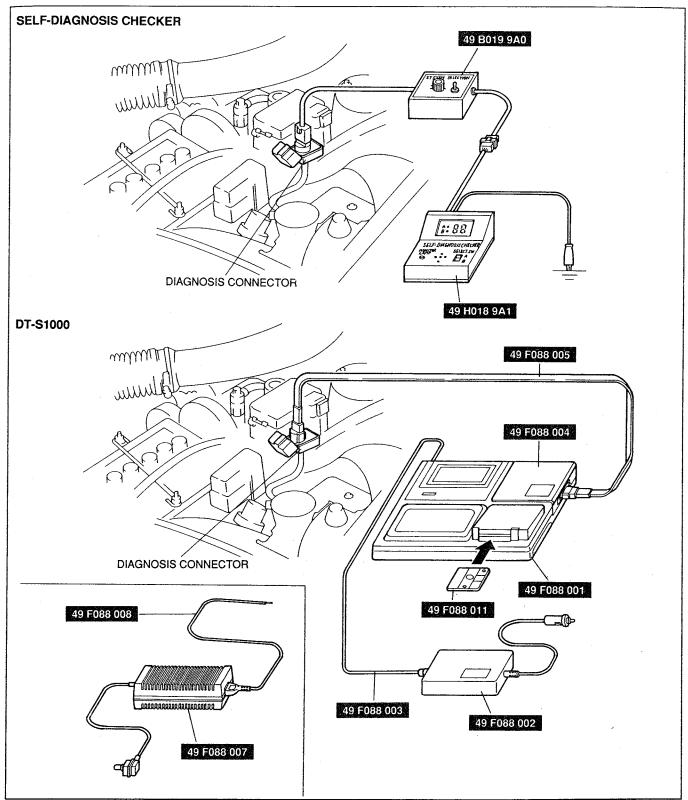
• When inspecting the EC-AT control unit terminal voltage, the Engine Signal Monitor is available.

Note

- The EC-AT control unit terminal voltage inspection procedure with the Engine Signal Monitor is the same as the 1992 929.
- The new DT-S 1000 is also available for inspecting the EC-AT control unit terminal voltage.

37U0KX-521

SELF-DIAGNOSIS FUNCTION



37U0KX-522

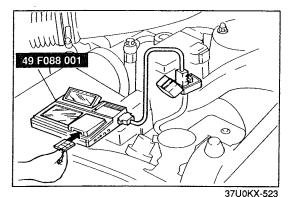
Description

The self-diagnosis system integrated in the EC-AT control unit diagnoses malfunction of the main sen-

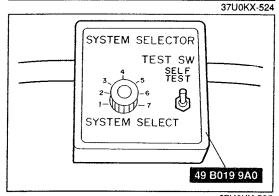
sors (input/output) and solenoid valves (output) and the EC-AT control unit itself.

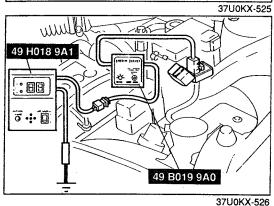
Malfunctions or intermittent malfunctions are memorized in the EC-AT control unit to later be output as service codes.

The new DT-S 1000 or the Self-Diagnosis Checker is available to retrieve these service code numbers.



[Service code check] No service codes. EXIT RE-CHECK





Service Code Number Inspection Procedure DT-S 1000

- 1. Assemble the **DT-S 1000**. (Refer to page K–25.)
- 2. Connect the DT-S 1000 to the diagnosis connector.

- 3. Select the self-diagnosis function from the DT-S 1000 display.
- 4. Verify that any service code numbers are displayed.

Note

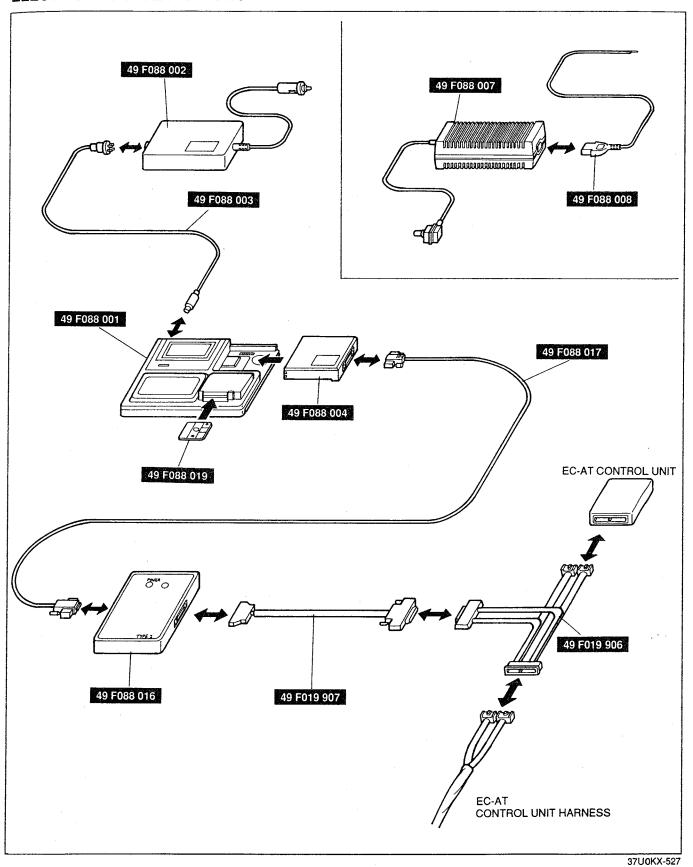
 When there is more than one malfunction, each service code is displayed one time in numerical order starting from the lowest number.

Self-Diagnosis Checker

- 1. Connect the **System Selector** to the diagnosis connector.
- 2. Set the SYSTEM SELECT switch to position 2.
- 3. Set the TEST SW to SELF TEST position.

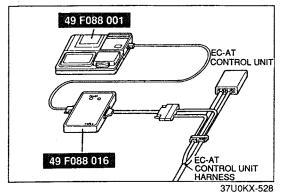
- 4. Connect the **Self-Diagnosis Checker** to the **System Selector**.
- 5. Set the SELECT SW to position A.
- 6. Turn the ignition switch ON and check for any service code number(s).

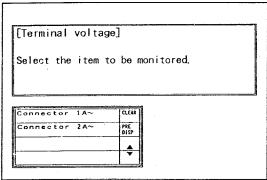
ELECTRICAL SIGNAL INSPECTION

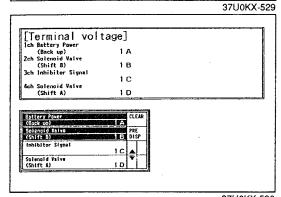


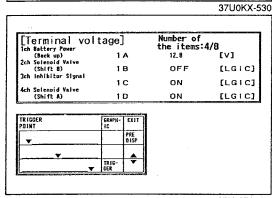
Description

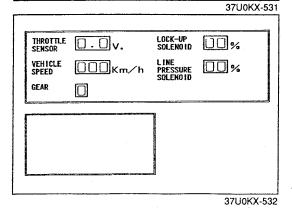
For easy troubleshooting of the EC-AT control unit input and output signals, a **DT-S 1000** is required. The **DT-S 1000** checks for proper operation of various switches and sensors in the EC-AT system, and also checks the EC-AT control unit for output the various control signals.











Inspection Procedure

Input/Output signal monitor function

- Assemble the **DT-S 1000**. (Refer to page K–27.)
 Disconnect the negative battery cable and connect the **DT-S 1000** to the EC-AT control unit.
- 3. Reconnect the negative battery cable.

4. Select the input/output signal monitor function from the DT-S 1000 display.

Note

- The maximum selection item is 8.
- 5. Select the inspection item (terminal No.).
- Verify indication of the respective data item in each condition, referring to the EC-AT control unit terminal voltage chart.

(Example)

When checking the solenoid valve pattern at each gear position, and the overrunning clutch (engine braking) control, the following steps are available.

Step 1

Select the solenoid valve (shift A), solenoid valve (shift B), and solenoid valve (overrunning clutch).

Step 2

Drive the vehicle and verify that the ON/OFF (battery voltage/0V) pattern of the solenoid valve (shift A, and B) are same as the solenoid valve operation table, and engine braking is operate when solenoid valve (over-running clutch) is ON (battery voltage).

Shifting check monitor function

- 1. Assemble the **DT-S 1000**. (Refer to page K–27.)
- 2. Disconnect the negative battery cable and connect the **DT-S 1000** to the EC-AT control unit.
- 3. Reconnect the negative battery cable.
- 4. Select the shifting check monitor function from the DT-S 1000 display.
- 5. Drive the vehicle and verify the shift point, lockup point, and shift schedule.

DT-S 1000 Monitor Item ChartBy using the **DT-S 1000**, following input/output signals to/from the EC-AT control unit signal can be checked.

| | Input or | | | DT-S 1000 function | | |
|----------|--------------|--|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---|--|
| Terminal | Output | Component | Input/output signal monitor | Shifting check monitor | Remark | |
| 1A | - | Battery power (backup) | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 1B | Output | Solenoid valve (shift B) | ○ (Voltage) | ○ (Gear position) | Solenoid valve pattern can be checked DT-S1000 displayed gear position is calculated by sig- nals received from solenoid valves (shift A, shift B) | |
| 1C | Output | Inhibitor signal | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 1D | Output | Solenoid valve (shift A) | ○ (Voltage) | ○ (Gear position) | Solenoid valve pattern can be checked DT-S1000 displayed gear position is calculated by sig- nals received from solenoid valves (shift A, shift B) | |
| 1E | Input | Inhibitor switch (R range) | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 1F | Output | Solenoid valve (line pressure) | ○ (Duty; %) | ○ (Duty; %) | Output duty ratio can be checked | |
| 1G | Input | Engine rpm signal | ○ (rpm) | | Engine rpm signal can be checked | |
| 1H | Output | Dropping resistor | ○ (Duty; %) | | Output duty ratio can be checked | |
| 11 | Input | Speed sensor 2 (Speedometer sensor) | ○ (km/h) | | Vehicle speed signal (back- up signal) can be checked | |
| 1J | | Ground (EC-AT control unit) | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 1K | Output | Hold indicator | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 1L | Input | A/C signal | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 1M | Output | Solenoid valve (lockup) | ○ (Duty; %) | ○ (Duty; %) | Output duty ratio can be checked | |
| 1N | | Battery power (main) | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 10 | Output | Solenoid valve (overrunning clutch) | ○ (Voltage) | | Solenoid valve pattern can be checked | |
| 1P | | Battery power (main) | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 2A | Input | Throttle sensor (Vref) | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 2B | Input | Inhibitor switch (D range) | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 2C | Input | Atmospheric pressure sensor | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 2D | Input | Inhibitor switch (P, N range) | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 2E | Input | Pulse generator | (rpm) | | Input shaft rpm signal can b checked | |
| 2F | Output | Solenoid valve (lockup control) | ○ (Voltage) | · | Solenoid valve pattern can be checked | |
| 2G | Input | Slip lockup OFF signal | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 2H | Input | Torque reduced signal | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 21 | Input | Hold switch | ○ (Voltage) | | | |
| 2J | Input | Speed sensor 1 (revolution sensor) | (Vehicle speed; km/h) | ○ (Vehicle speed; km/h) | Vehicle speed signal (main signal) can be checked | |

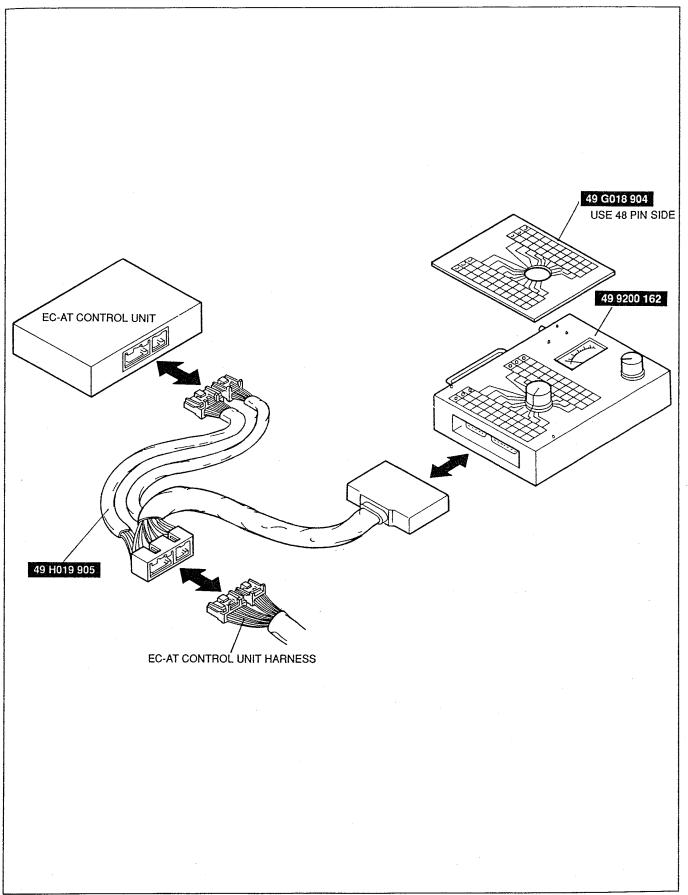
⁾ indicates DT-S 1000 display unit.

| | Immed an | | | DT-S 1000 function | n |
|--------------------------|--------------|--|------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Terminal Input or Output | | Input/output signal monitor | Shifting check monitor | Remark | |
| 2K | Input | TAT terminal/O/D inhibit signal (ASC signal) | ○ (Voltage) | | |
| 2L | _ | Ground (input signal) | ○ (Voltage) | | |
| 2M | Input | Idle signal | ○ (Voltage) | | |
| 2N | Input | Water thermoswitch/ Mileage switch | ○ (Voltage) | | |
| 20 | Input | Stoplight switch | ○ (Voltage) | | |
| 2P | Output | Reduce torque signal/ Slip lockup signal | ○ (Voltage) | | |
| 2Q | Input | Inhibitor switch (L range) | ○ (Voltage) | | |
| 2R | Input | ATF thermosensor | ○ (Voltage) | | |
| 2S | Input | Inhibitor switch (S range) | ○ (Voltage) | | |
| 2T | Input | Throttle sensor (TVO) | ○ (Voltage) | O (Voltage) | Throttle opening angle can be checked |

) indicates DT-S 1000 display unit.

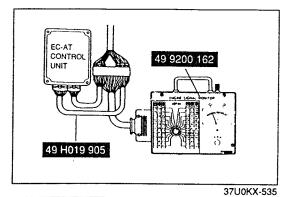
37U0KX-533

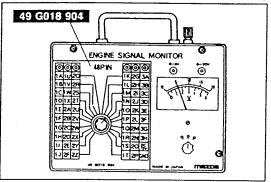
EC-AT CONTROL UNIT TERMINAL VOLTAGE

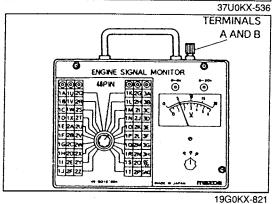


37U0KX-534

When inspecting the EC-AT control unit terminal voltage, the **Engine Signal Monitor** is available.







Inspection Procedure

1. Disconnect the EC-AT control unit connectors.

2. Connect the Engine Signal Monitor and Adapter Harness to the EC-AT control unit as shown.

3. Place the Sheet on the Engine Signal Monitor.

4. Measure the voltage at each terminal.

5. If any EC-AT control unit terminal voltage is incorrect, check the related input or output devices and wiring. If no problem is found, replace the EC-AT control unit.

Caution

• Never apply voltage to SST terminals A and B.

PROPELLER SHAFT

| OUTLINE | L- | 2 |
|-----------------|----------|-----|
| FEATURES | | |
| SPECIFICATIONS | | |
| PROPELLER SHAFT | L- | 3 |
| | 37UOLX-5 | :O1 |

OUTLINE

The propeller shaft is a one-piece structure that employs a caulking-type fixing method for the universal joint for improved reliability.
The propeller shaft pipe is friction welded for improved marketability.

37U0LX-502

FEATURES

| Reduced size and weight | | Friction weldingL-3 |
|-------------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| Improved marketability | ··········· | Friction weldingL_3 |

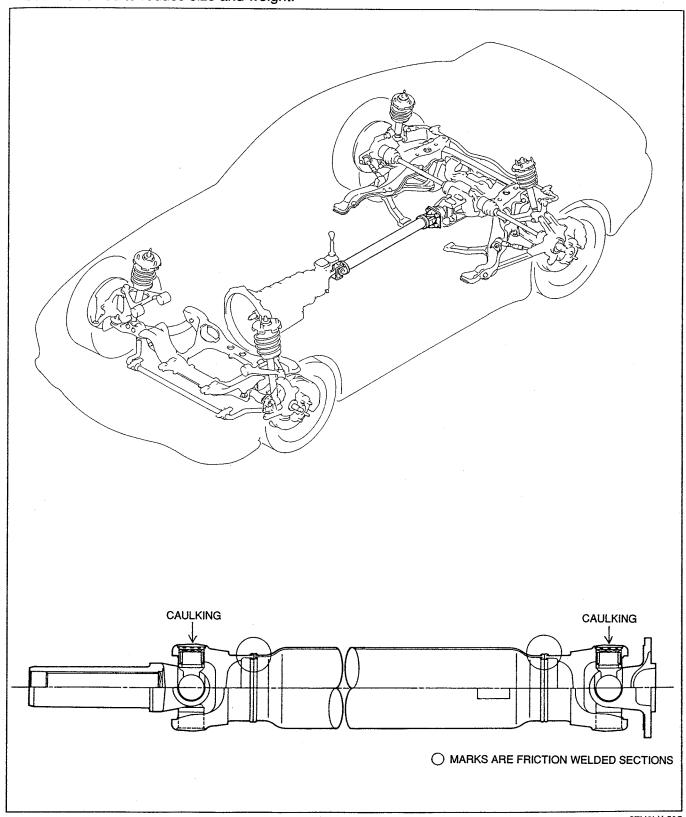
SPECIFICATIONS

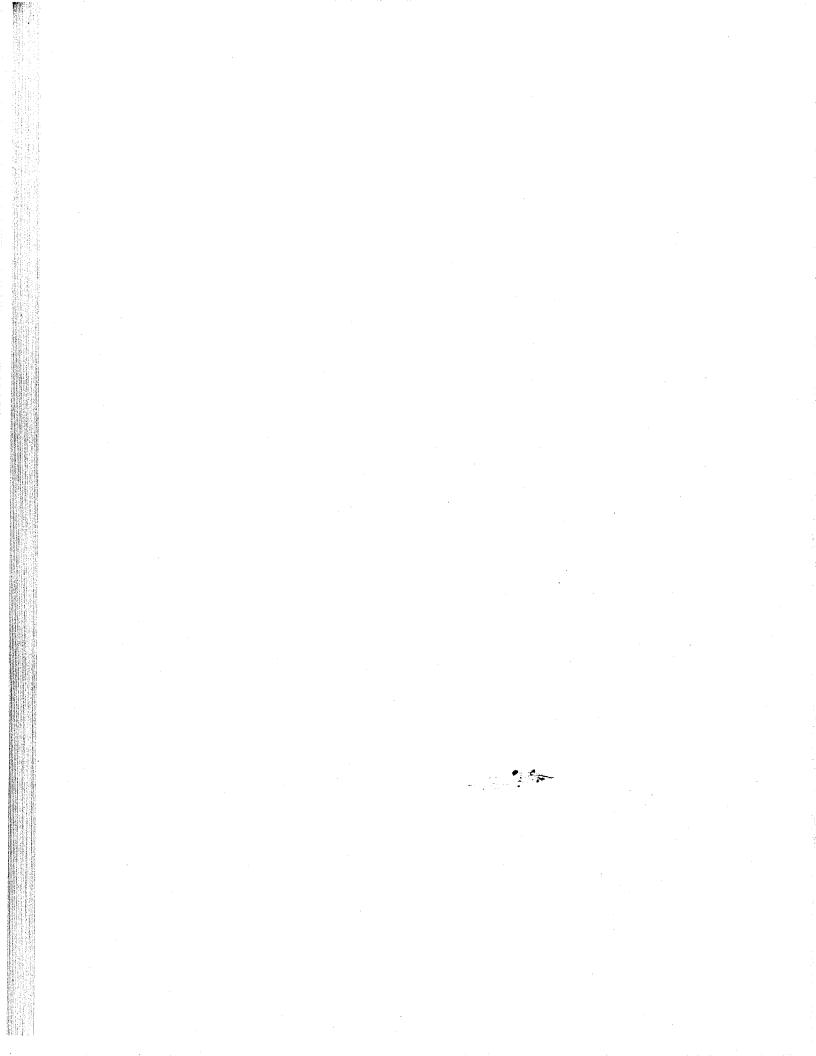
| | Engine/Transmission | 13B Turbo | |
|----------------|---------------------|-------------|--------------|
| Item | | R15M-D (MT) | RB4A-EL (AT) |
| Length | mm {in} | 863 {33.98} | 875 {34.45} |
| Outer diameter | mm {in} | 75 {3.0} | |

37U0LX-504

PROPELLER SHAFT

- The universal joint is sealed by a caulking-type fixing method for improved reliability.
 The propeller shaft pipe is friction welded, providing uniform welding of joints. By adopting this system, marketability has been improved and thermal deformation lowered when compared with that of conventional arch welding. Additionally, configurations of each propeller shaft component have been reviewed to reduce size and weight.





FRONT AND REAR AXLES

| OUTLINE | M- | 2 |
|-----------------------------|--------|---|
| OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION | | |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | M- | 2 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | M- | 3 |
| FRONT AXLE | M- | 4 |
| REAR AXLE | | |
| DRIVE SHAFT | M | 6 |
| DIFFERENTIAL | | |
| TORQUE SENSING LIMITED-SLIP | | |
| DIFFERENTIAL ("TORSEN" LSD) | M | 8 |
| | JOMX-5 | |

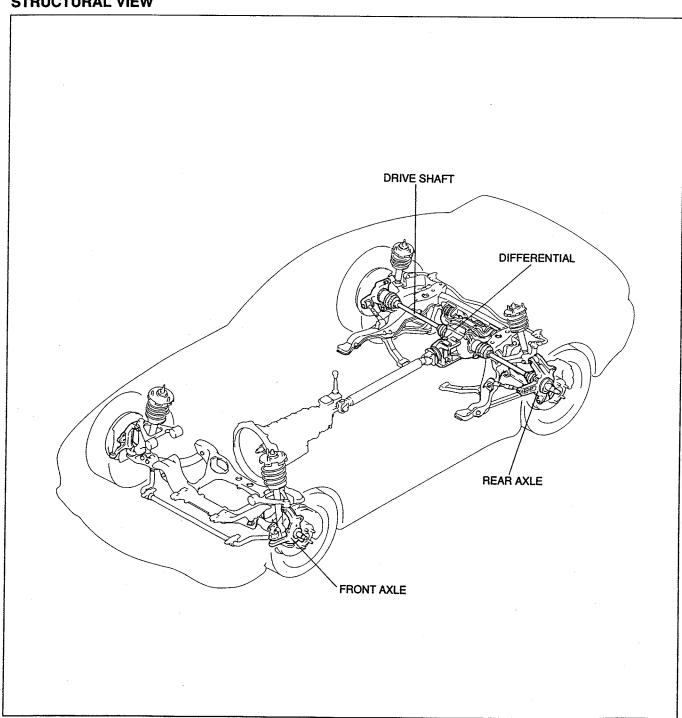
OUTLINE

OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION

- Low resistance, unitized angular ball bearings are used for the front and rear wheel bearings for all models to improve serviceability and drivability.
- The drive shaft has a tripod joint on the differential side and a bell joint on the wheel side to reduce noise and vibration and to improve durability.
- An intergal carrier differential is used for all models to reduce noise and vibration. With the intergal carrier differential, the side bearings that support the differential case are mounted within the intergal carrier for improved strength.
- A torque sensing limited-slip differential ("TORSEN" LSD) is standard equipment for all models to improve drivability and stability.

37U0MX-502

STRUCTURAL VIEW



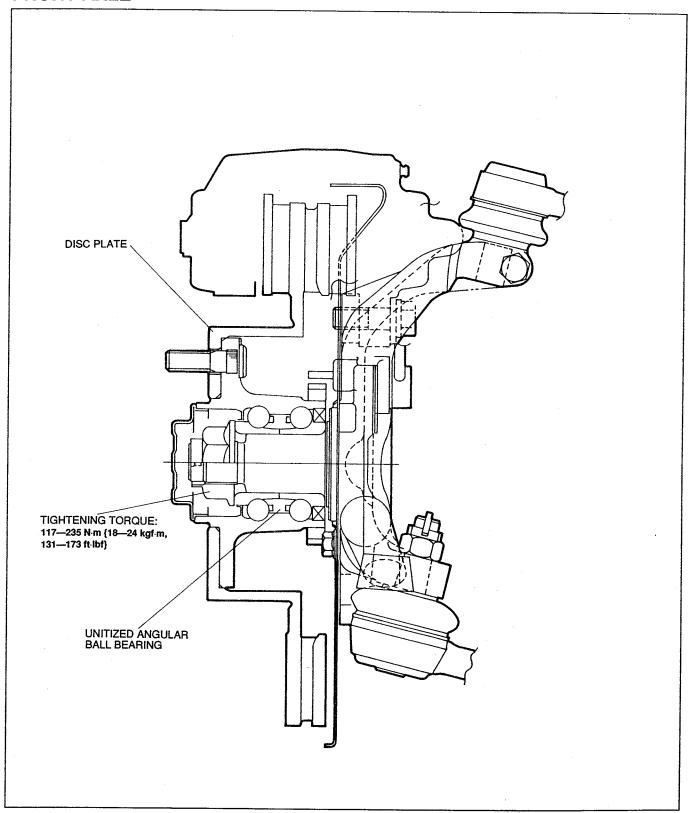
37U0MX-503

SPECIFICATIONS

| | Engine/Transmission | 1: | 3B |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| Item | | МТ | AT |
| Drive shaft | | | |
| Joint type | Wheel side | Bell | joint |
| Joint type | Differential side | Tripod joint | |
| Length mm {in} | Left side | | {19.06} |
| (between centers of joints) | Right side | | {19.06} |
| Shaft diameter | mm {in} | 29.0 {1.14} | |
| Differential | | | |
| Ring gear size | mm {in} | 204.2 | [8.038] |
| Final gear ratio | | 4.100 | 3.909 |
| Reduction gear | | Hypoid gear | |
| Differential gear | | Worm gear | |
| Ring gear teeth | | 41 | 43 |
| Drive pinion gear teeth | | 10 | 11 |
| | Grade | API Service GL-4 or 5 | |
| Oil | Viscosity | Above –18°C Below –18°C | |
| | Capacity L {US qt, Imp qt} | 1.30 {1.3 | 38, 1.14} |

37U0MX-504

FRONT AXLE



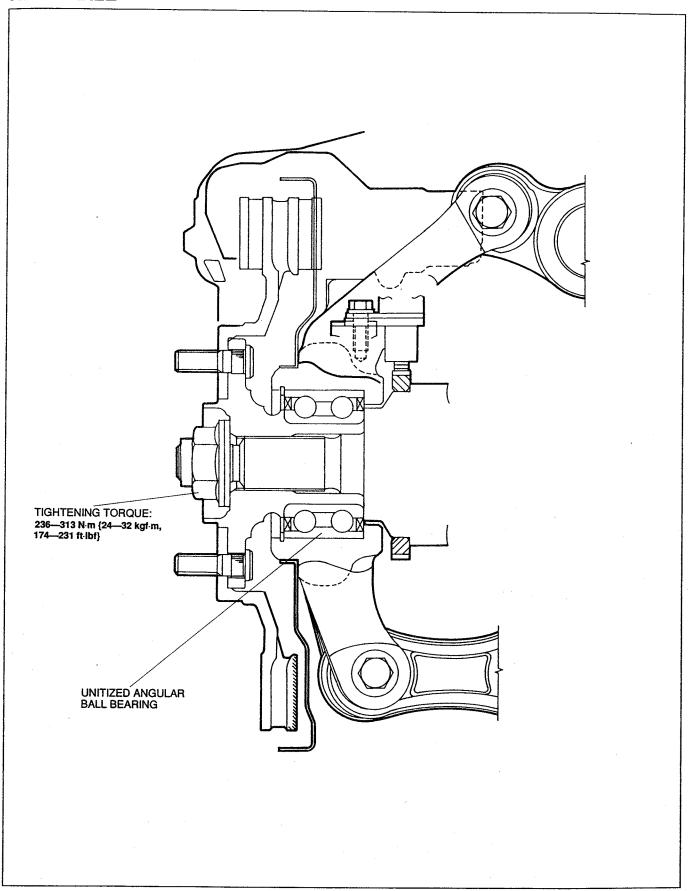
37U0MX-505

• The disc plate is held in place by the wheel lug nuts, making removal and installation easier and reducing wheel hub weight.

 The unitized angular ball bearing assembly, which has low rotational resistance, improves serviceability.

With this type of bearing, the preload is easily set by tightening the wheel hub nut to the specified torque. Another merit of this bearing is that it withstands large thrust loads.

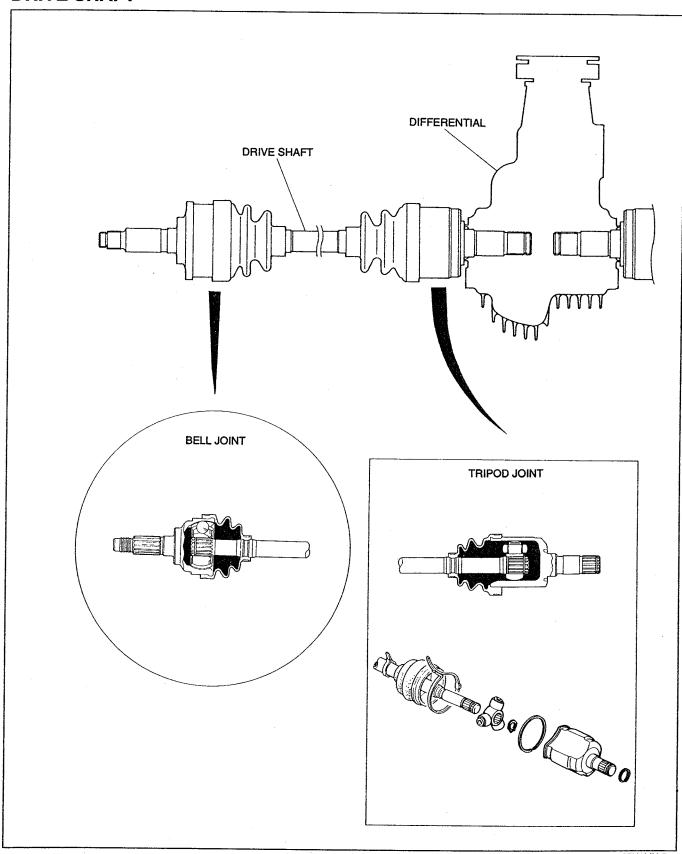
REAR AXLE



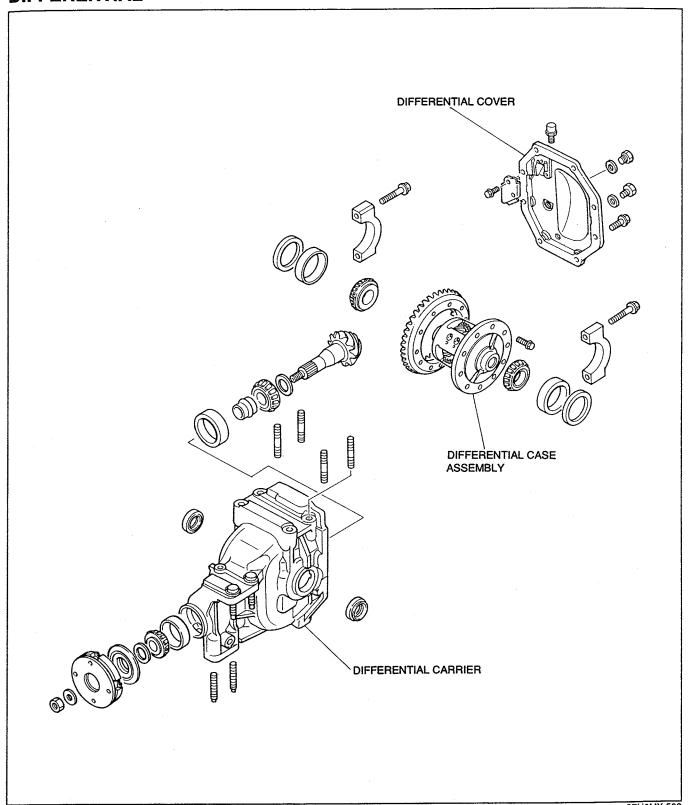
37U0MX-506

• The unitized angular ball bearing assembly, improves serviceability and durability.

DRIVE SHAFT



The drive shaft employs a tripod joint on the differential side and a bell joint on the wheel side to reduce noise and vibration and improve durability.
The differential side of the drive shaft is splined, and is installed directly into the side gear of the differential to reduce weight (no output shaft is required).



37U0MX-508

• The "TORSEN" LSD torque sensing limited-slip differential is standard equipment for all models to improve drivability and stability. (Refer to page M-8.)

improve drivability and stability. (Refer to page M–8.)

• The power plant frame (PPF) couples the engine/transmission assembly to the differential to unify them as a total drivetrain unit. (Refer to Section J.)

them as a total drivetrain unit. (Refer to Section J.)

• The intergal carrier differential, with the differential case assembly securely mounted within it, improves the rigidity of the differential and reduces noise and vibration.

• The differential cover is made of aluminum alloy to reduce weight.

TORQUE SENSING LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL ("TORSEN" LSD) Outline

- The torque sensing limited-slip differential ("TORSEN" LSD) is a torque-proportioning type LSD with a large bias ratio*. It uses the friction of the worm gear teeth and the thrust washers for the differential-limiting force.
- In comparison with viscus type or friction type LSD, it has following benefits.
 - 1. Large bias ratio torque proportioning
 - 2. Less change of bias ratio over time of vehicle use
 - 3. Standard differential oil is used (special LSD oil not needed)
 - 4. Improved overall traction and improved controllability under acceleration

*Bias ratio

A bias ratio indicates the effectiveness of the LSD function. For an open (non-LSD) differential, when one wheel is spinning, torque to the other wheel is decreased. For LSD, increased torque is transmitted to the wheel not spinning. This torque ratio is called bias ratio. The bias ratio is calculated as follows:

Bias ratio = Rotational torque of high resistance shaft

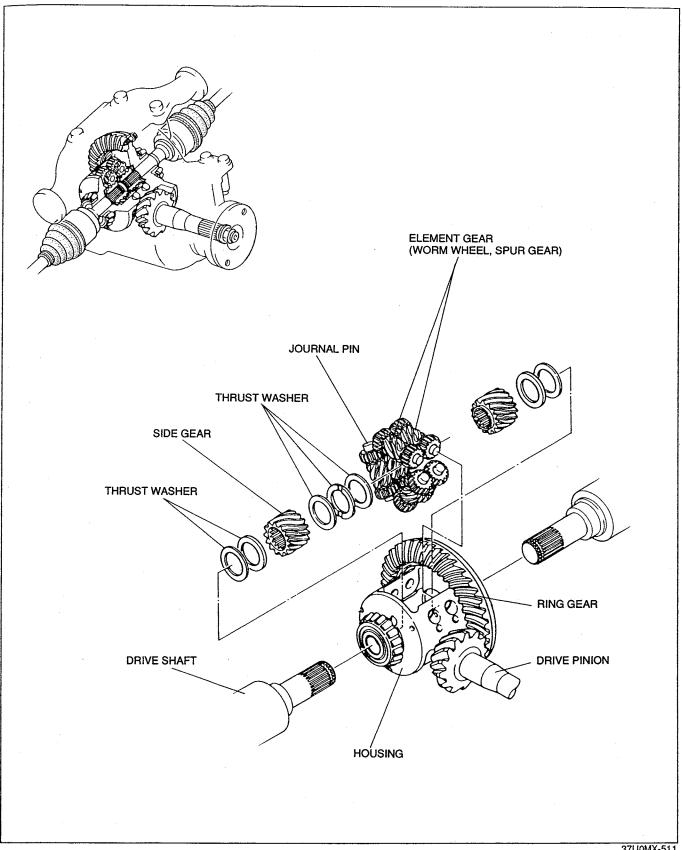
Rotational torque of low resistance shaft

Comparison of "TORSEN" LSD and Others

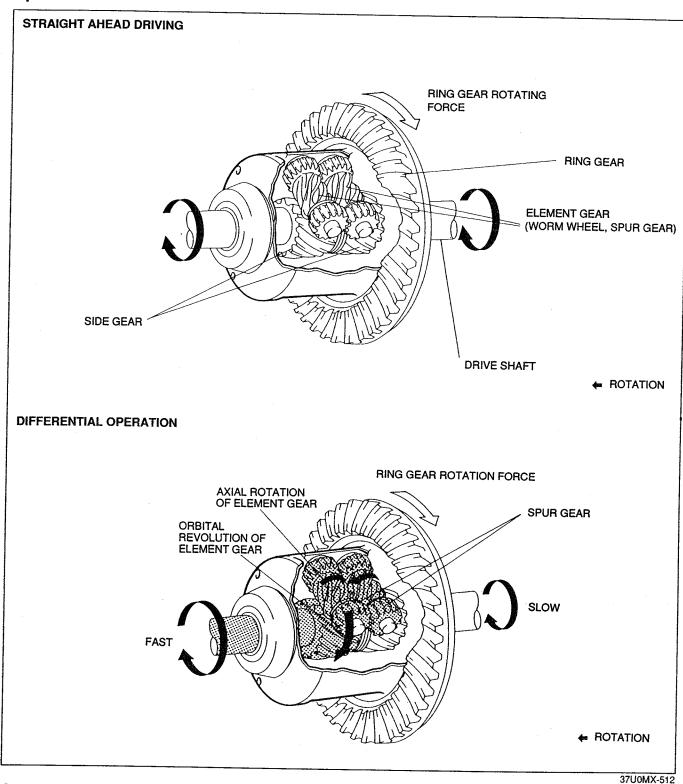
37U0MX-509

| | "TORSEN" LSD | Viscous LSD | Friction-type LSD |
|--|---|---|---|
| Differential-limiting force generation mechanism | Frictional force of worm gear teeth Frictional force of thrust washers | Viscous resistance of silicone oil | Frictional resistance of metal and composition plates |
| Differential-limiting force generation type | Torque-proportioning system | Wheel speed-proportioning system | Torque-proportioning system |
| Characteristics | HIGH BIAS LOW BIAS LOW BIAS TORQUE PROVIDED TO LOW FRICTION WHEEL | DIFFERENCE BETWEEN LEFT AND RIGHT WHEEL (rpm) | TORQUE PROVIDED TO LOW FRICTION WHEEL |
| Vibration and noise | Less than friction type LSD | No vibration or noise during LSD operation | Vibration and noise some- time occur during LSD oper- ation |
| Lubricating oil | Standard differential oil | Standard differential oil (viscous oil in sealed viscous coupling unit) | Special LSD oil |
| Maintenance | Nonrebuildable, maintenance-free | Nonrebuildable, maintenance-free | Adjustment of friction plates and friction disc is necessary |
| Features | Refer to above | Viscous mode and hump mode exist | Bias ratio is less than 2 |

37U0MX-510



• The torque sensing limited-slip differential is composed of the LSD assembly and differential mechanism. The LSD assembly consists of two side gears, six element gears (each consisting of two spur gears, a worm gear and a journal pin) and seven thrust washers. The journal pins are fixed in the housing.



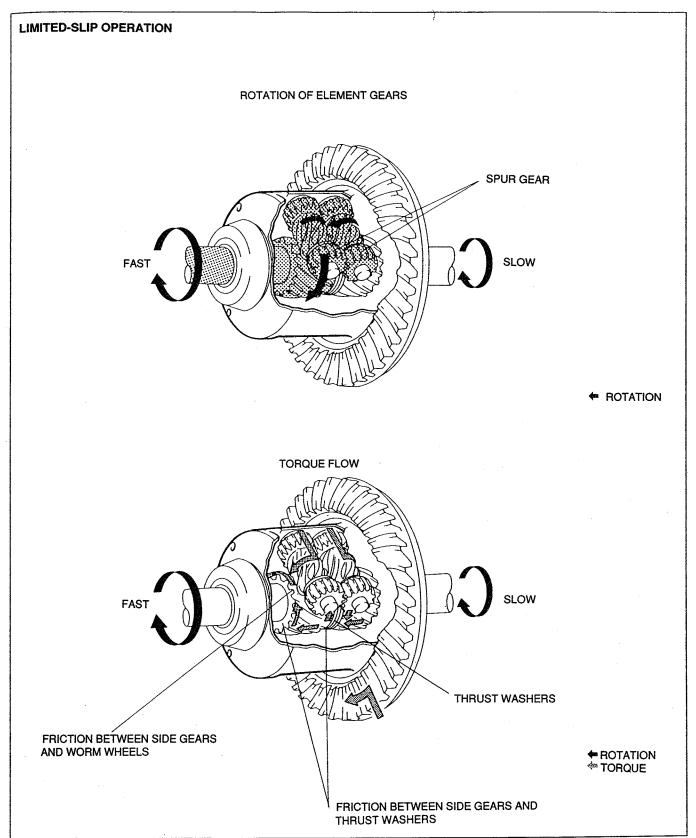
Straight ahead driving

When driving straight, the right and left side gears rotate at the same speed and the differential assembly rotates as a unit. Input force from the ring gear is transmitted to the drive shafts through the element gears and the side gears. During this operation, the element gears turn with the side gears.

Differential operation

When rotation speed between the right and left wheel becomes different, the element gears revolve in the opposite direction of each other to absorb the difference.

The function of the spur gears is similar to that of a pinion gear in a conventional differential.

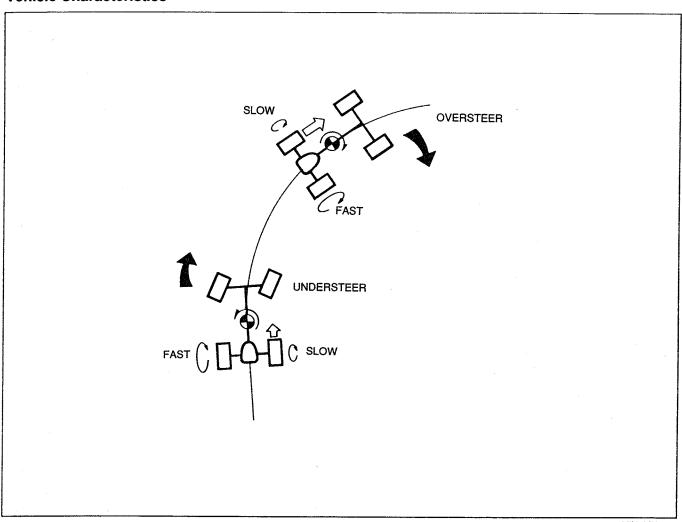


37U0MX-513

Limited-slip operation

When the differential encounters a condition such as a wheel spinning, thrust force is generated by the worm gears and the rotational torque of the spinning wheel is reduced by the friction between the side gears and the worm wheels and friction between the side gears and thrust washers. The torque is then transmitted to the higher traction side. The torque transmitted to high traction side is proportionate to the input torque of the ring gear.

Vehicle Characteristics



37U0MX-514

The vehicle's cornering is improved because of the steering characteristic of the "TORSEN" LSD.

Light understeer at beginning of turn

At the beginning of a turn, greater torque is applied to inner wheel because it rotates slower than outer wheel. This torque gently forces the vehicle outward (understeer).

Understeer during turning

If the accelerator is further depressed during the turn, torque applied to the inner wheel becomes greater and understeering becomes more pronounced.

Oversteer at limit

At the limit of traction during the turn, the inner wheel starts spinning because its road friction is greatly reduced. While spinning of the inner wheel is reduced by the "TORSEN" LSD, at the same time extra torque is applied to the outer wheel.

Thus the vehicle is gently forced inward (oversteer).

STEERING SYSTEM

| OUTLINE | N- | 2 |
|-------------------------|-------|---|
| OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION | N- | 2 |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | N- | 2 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | N- | 3 |
| | ONX-5 | |

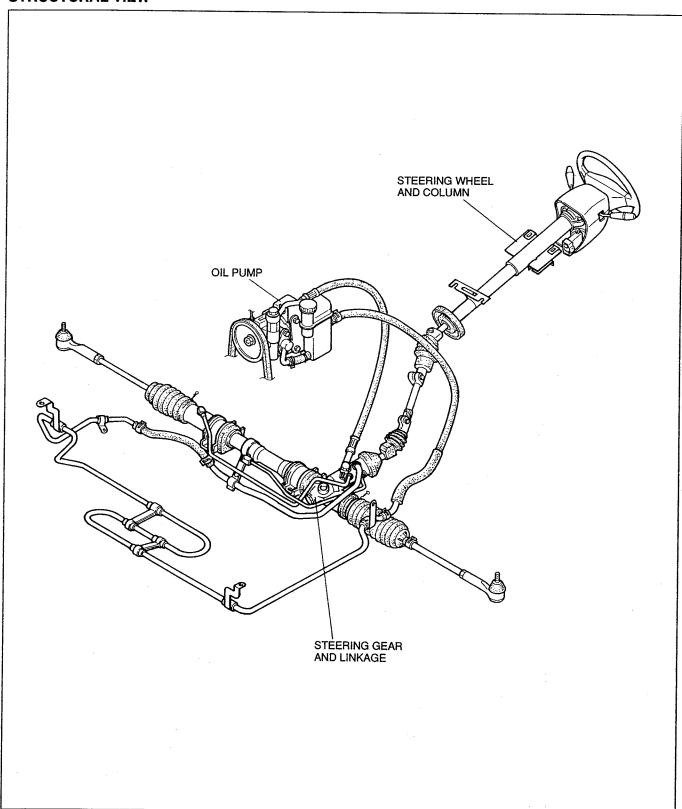
OUTLINE

OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION

- Engine speed sensing power steering (ESPS) is standard equipment for all models.
 The construction and operation are similar to previous model's.
 The oil pump pulley is made of resin to reduce weight.

37U0NX-502

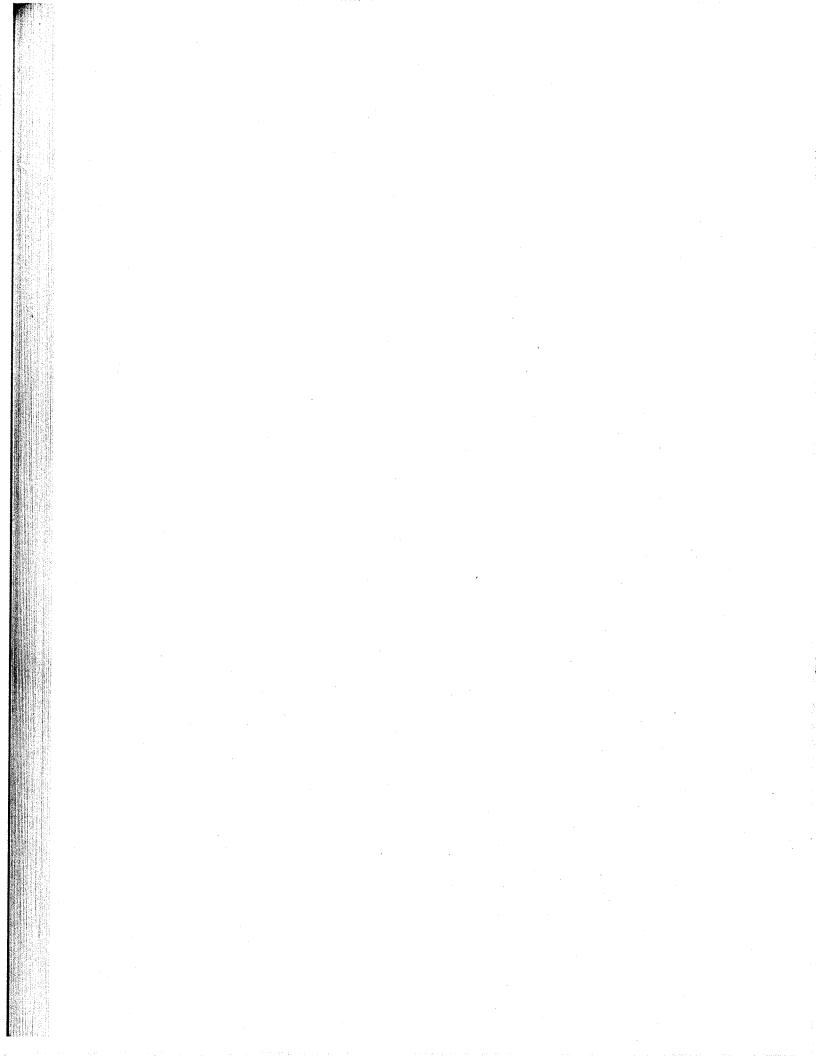
STRUCTURAL VIEW



SPECIFICATIONS

| | Item | Specifications |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Ota a via a vida a l | Outer diameter mm {in} | 380 {15.0} |
| Steering wheel | Lock-to-lock turns | 2.9 |
| | Туре | Rack-and-pinion |
| Steering gear | Gear ratio | ∞ (infinite) |
| Steering gear | Rack stroke mm (in) | 160 {6.30} |
| Steering column and Shaft | Shaft type | Collapsible, non-tilt |
| Power assist system | | Engine speed sensing |
| D | Туре | Dexron® II or M-III |
| Power steering fluid | Fluid capacity L {US qt, Imp qt} | 0.96 {0.25, 0.21} |

37U0NX-504



BRAKING SYSTEM

| | _ | _ |
|--------------------------------|----------|-----|
| OUTLINE | P- | 2 |
| OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION | | |
| FEATURES | P- | 2 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | | |
| FRONT BRAKE | | |
| CALIPER | | |
| DISC PLATE | | |
| AIR BYPASS SYSTEM | | |
| REAR BRAKE | | |
| CALIPER | | |
| DISC PLATE | P- | 8 |
| PARKING BRAKE AUTOMATIC | | |
| ADJUSTER | P- | 8 |
| POWER BRAKE UNIT | P | 9 |
| MASTER CYLINDER | P- | 9 |
| PROPORTIONING BYPASS VALVE | | |
| BRAKE PEDAL | P-1 | 10 |
| ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (ABS) | P-1 | 11 |
| OUTLINE | P-1 | 11 |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | P-1 | 11 |
| SYSTEM DIAGRAM | P-1 | 2 |
| MAJOR COMPONENTS AND FUNCTIONS | P-1 | 13 |
| ADVANTAGES OF ANTI-LOCK BRAKE | | |
| SYSTEM | P-1 | 14 |
| PRINCIPLES OF ANTI-LOCK BRAKE | | |
| SYSTEM | P-1 | 15 |
| PORT-LESS MASTER CYLINDER | P-1 | 18 |
| DAMPING UNIT | P-1 | 19 |
| ABS WHEEL SPEED SENSOR | | |
| HYDRAULIC UNIT | P-2 | 22 |
| ABS CONTROL UNIT | P-3 | 31 |
| VALVE RELAY AND MOTOR RELAY | P-3 | 36 |
| STOPLIGHT SWITCH | | |
| ABS WARNING LAMP | P-3 | 38 |
| OPERATION OF ABS | P_: | 39 |
| TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE | P_/ | 44 |
| THOODELOHOOTHA GOIDE | - | - • |

37U0PX-501

OUTLINE

OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION

- Large-diameter ventilated front and rear disc brakes are used.
- Every other cooling fin of the disc plate is split, adding increased disc surface area and reducing weight.
- Conventional fixed-type aluminum alloy calipers with four opposed pistons have been adopted for improved brake performance.
- Floating-type calipers function both in the rear brakes and parking brake have been adopted.
- The parking brake has an automatic adjuster function.
- A center-lever-type parking brake lever is used. Optimized lever position improves operability.
- The brake pedal is composed of high-rigidity aluminum alloy, reducing vehicle weight.
- The vacuum servo type power brake unit is used for high reliability. Also, diaphragms tandem type (8 + 8 inches) ensure sufficient brake power with less pedal pressure.
- A portless master cylinder is used for its high compatibility with the four-wheel anti-lock brake system (4ABS).
- A flush-mounted master cylinder is used, reducing the overall length of the assembly with the power brake unit.
- A proportioning bypass valve has been added to prevent premature locking of the rear wheels, resulting in improved safety.
- A four-wheel anti-lock brake system (4ABS) is now standard equipment in all vehicles, resulting in improved safety.

R1 vehicle

FEATURES

The front facia have independent brake cooling ports and air ducts, and the dust covers have air
intake boards, all of which increase brake cooling efficiency. Further, to prevent hot air that has
passed through the oil cooler from being sent to the brakes, an air bypass system has been designed
in which hot air is bypassed through a duct in the fender, where it escapes through a rear air outlet.

37U0PX-502

37U0PX-503

Adoption of caliper with four opposed pistons (front) P- 4 Use of tandem power brake unit P-10 Addition of disc plates with split cooling fins P- 5, 8 Use of air bypass system (R1 vehicle) P- 6 Installation of proportioning bypass valve P-11 Adoption of four-wheel anti-lock brake system (4ABS) P-12

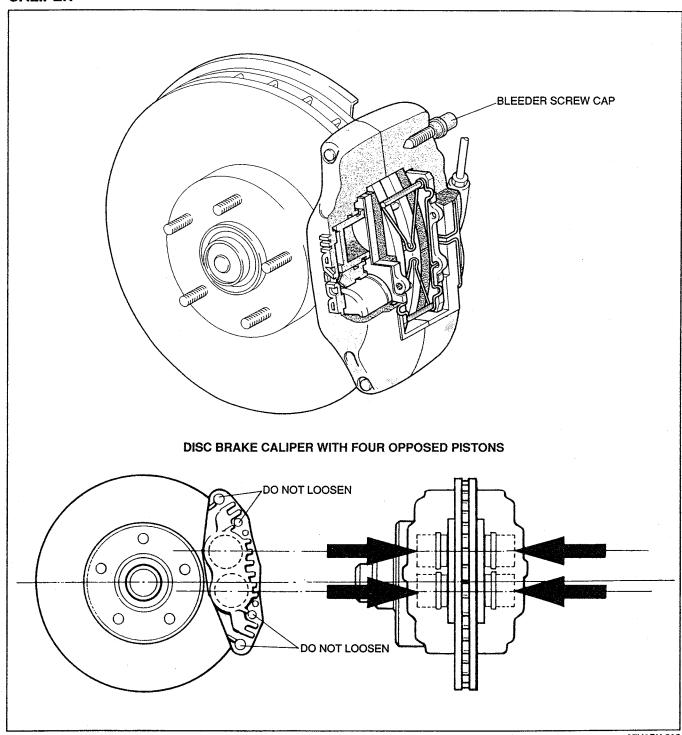
SPECIFICATIONS

| item | | | Specifications | |
|---|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|
| Brake pedal | | | | |
| Туре | | | Suspended | |
| Lever ratio | | | 4.1 | |
| Maximum stroke mm {in} | | | 135 {5.31} | |
| Master cylinder | | | | |
| Туре | | | Tandem (with level sensor) | |
| | | | Portless & recessed type | |
| Bore mm (in) | | | 23.8 (0.94) | |
| Front brake | | | | |
| Туре | | | Disc (ventilated) | |
| Cylinder bore | | mm (in) | 36.1 {1.42} | |
| Pad dimension (area × thickness) | $mm^2 \times mm$ | Outer | $4,500 \times 10.3 \{6.97 \times 0.41\}$ | |
| | {in² × in} | Inner | $4,500 \times 9.3 \{6.97 \times 0.37\}$ | |
| Disc plate dimension (outer diameter × thickness) | | $mm \times mm$ {in \times in} | 294.0 × 22.0 {11.570 × 0.87} | |
| Rear brake | | | | |
| Туре | | | Disc (ventilated) | |
| Cylinder bore | mm {in} | | 34.9 {1.37} | |
| Pad dimension | mm² × mm | | 3210 × 8.0 | |
| (area × thickness) | {in² × in} | | {4.98 × 0.31} | |
| Disc plate dimension (outer diameter × thickness) | mm×mm {in×in} | | 294.0 × 20.0 {11.57 × 0.79} | |
| Power brake unit | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | | |
| Туре | | | Vacuum multiplier | |
| Size | mm {in} | | 209.5 + 215.2 {8 + 8} | |
| Rear wheel hydraulic control | system | | | |
| Туре | | | Proportioning bypass valve | |
| Switching point (Master cylinder pressure) | kPa {kgf/cm², psi} | | 3,920 {40.0, 570} | |
| Parking brake | | | | |
| Туре | | | Mechanical two-rear-wheel control | |
| Operation system | | | Hand lever | |
| Brake fluid | | | | |
| Туре | | | FMVSS 116 DOT-3 | |

37U0PX-504

FRONT BRAKE

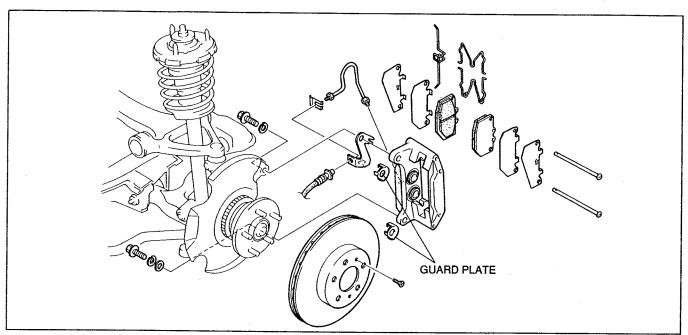
CALIPER



- 37U0PX-505
- Fixed-type aluminum alloy calipers with four opposed pistons have been adopted. These calipers increase the effective braking radius and ensure uniform pad pressure, improving brake performance.
- A bleeder screw cap that covers the entire bleeder screw is used.
 This is to prevent electrolytic corrosion that could occur with the presence of moisture at the contact surfaces between the aluminum alloy calipers and the iron bleeder screws. Make sure that the bleeder screw cap securely covers the bleeder screw.

Note

• Because the caliper can not be disassembled, do not loosen the four bolts.



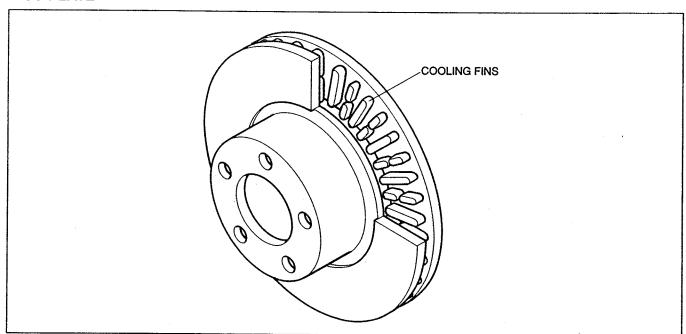
37U0PX-506

- To prevent electrolytic corrosion, a guard plate is inserted between the caliper and knuckle, and a zinc-chromate coating washer is used.
- A wear indicator has been added that sounds an alarm when the life of a pad is near expiration. A
 warning sounds when 2mm {0.079 inch} of padding remains.

Note

• Assemble the noise-dampening shim (outer side is made of stainless steel) so that the () direction corresponds to the rotating direction of the disc plate.

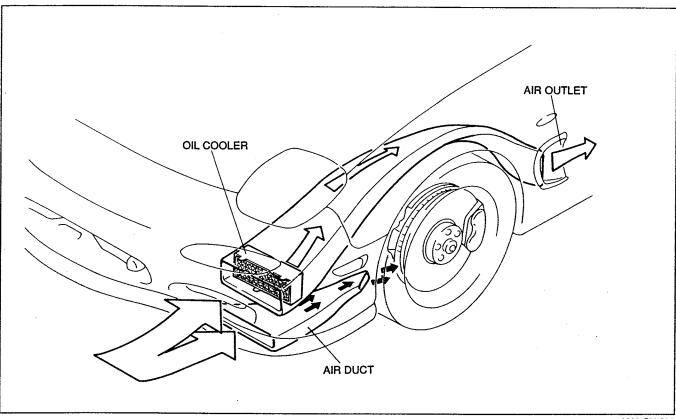
DISC PLATE



37U0PX-507

- The disc plate is fastened to the wheel with a wheel nut, and is attached on the outside of the wheel hub. This makes removal easy, improving serviceability.
- To prevent rust from forming on the surface during early usage, zinc-chromate coating have been applied.
- Every other cooling fin of the disc plate is split, adding increased disc surface area and reducing weight.

AIR BYPASS SYSTEM R1 vehicle

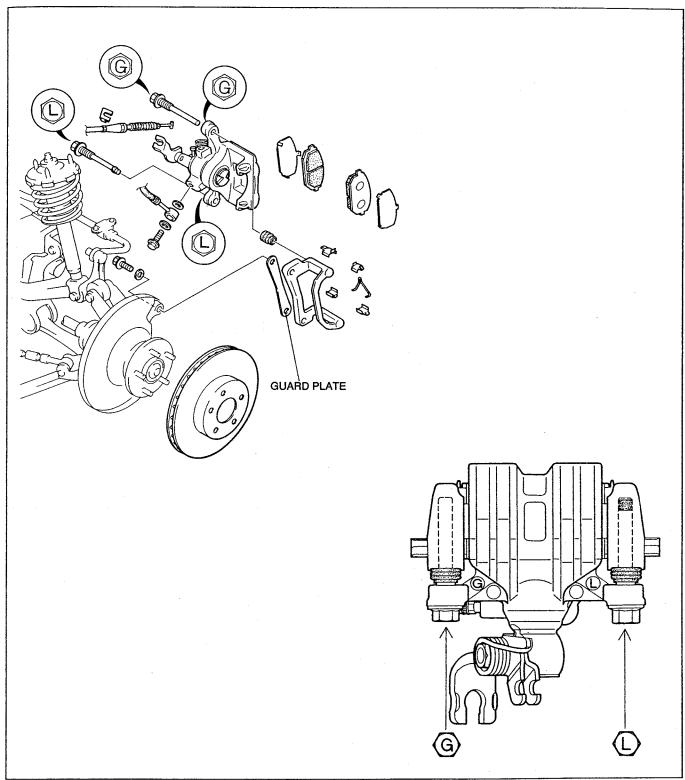


37U0PX-508

• The front facia have an independent brake cooling ports and air ducts, and the dust covers have air intake board, all of which increase brake cooling efficiency. Further, to prevent hot air that has passed through the oil cooler from being sent to the brakes, an air bypass system has been designed in which hot air is bypassed through a duct in the fender, where it escapes through a rear air outlet.

REAR BRAKE

CALIPER



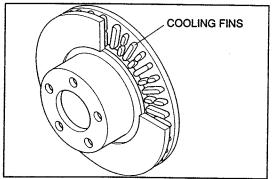
37U0PX-509

• A floating-type caliper has been adopted.

The parking brake is equipped with an automatic adjuster.

To prevent electrolytic corrosion, a guard plate is inserted between the mounting support and rear hub support, and a zinc-chromate coating washer is used.

• Before installation, confirm that the character written on the head of the caliper mounting bolt matches that of the caliper body.

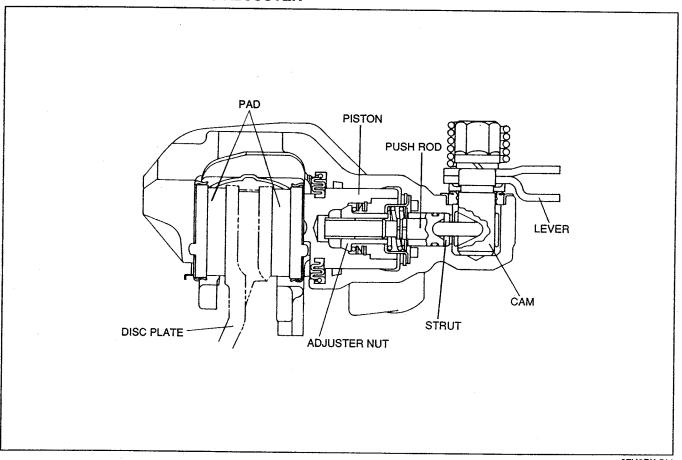


37U0PX-510

DISC PLATE

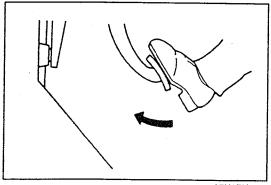
- The same zinc-chromate coating as those applied to the front brakes have been applied to prevent rust from forming on the surface during early usage.
- · Every other cooling fin of the disc plate is split as in the front brakes, adding increased disc surface area and reducing weight.

PARKING BRAKE AUTOMATIC ADJUSTER



37U0PX-511

- When the parking brake lever is pulled, the lever turns through the parking brake cable. The strut is pushed by the cam connected to this lever. The force applied to the strut is transmitted to the push rod, adjuster nut and piston, in that order.
 - The piston then forces the pad against the disc plate, braking the rear wheels.

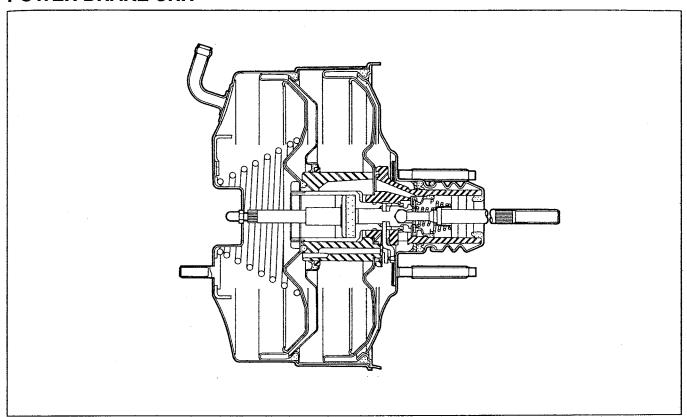


37U0PX-516

Caution

 When replacing the pad or disassembling the caliper, depress the foot brake 2-3 times before adjusting the stroke of the parking brake lever.

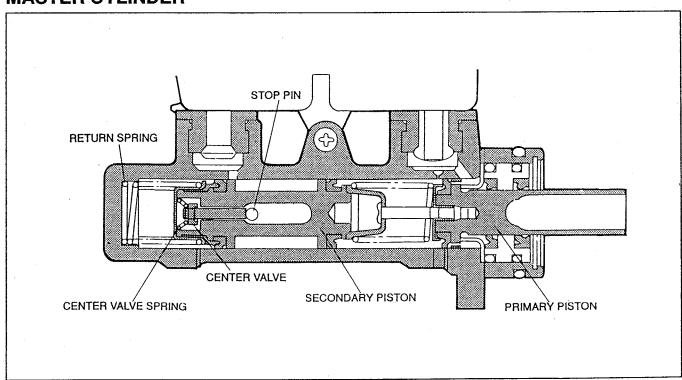
POWER BRAKE UNIT



37U0PX-517

• A flush-mounted, tandem type (8+8 inches) power brake unit is used.

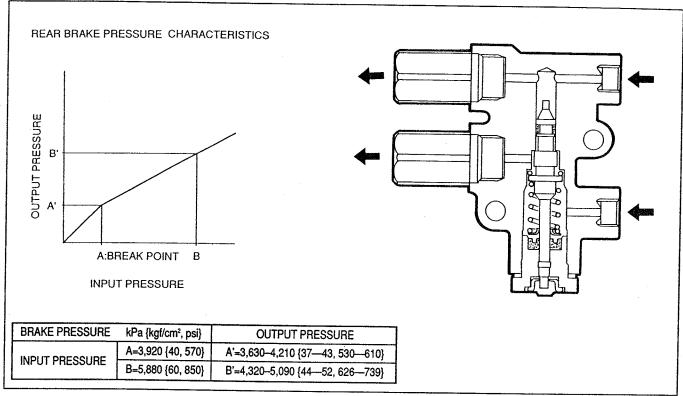
MASTER CYLINDER



37U0PX-518

• A portless, tandem master cylinder (inside diameter (23.8mm/0.94 in)) is employed. (For operation, refer to page P-18.)

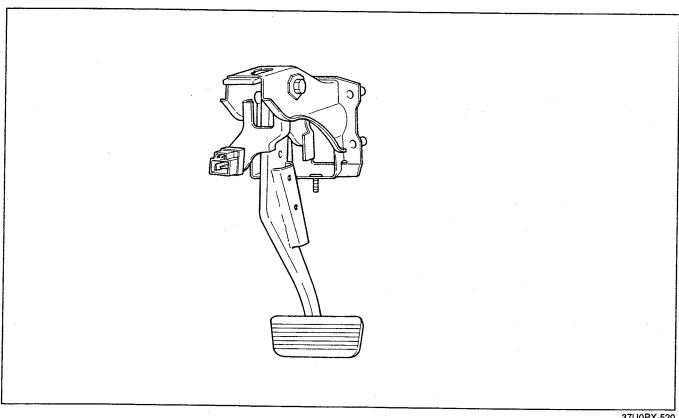
PROPORTIONING BYPASS VALVE



37U0PX-519

• A proportioning bypass valve is used to control the rear wheel hydraulic pressure.

BRAKE PEDAL



37U0PX-520

• The brake pedal is made of aluminum alloy.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (ABS)

OUTLINE

The ABS is an electronically controlled brake system which controls brake application to maintain directional stability and steerability of the vehicle during braking.

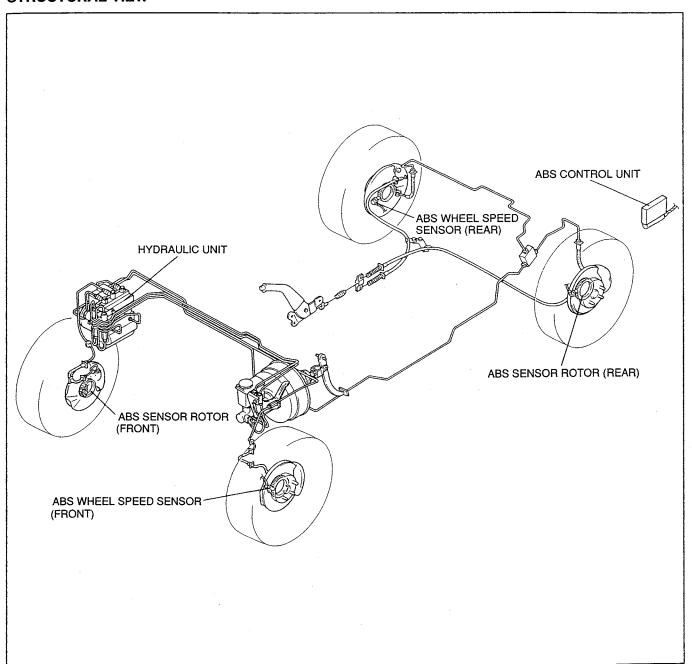
The ABS does this by determining the amount of wheel slippage during sudden braking or during braking on snow-covered or otherwise slippery road surfaces. Signals are then relayed and acted upon through a computerized ABS control unit. The ABS is an independent front wheel control, rear axle control (select low control), four-sensor, 3-channel system. Its basic components are the hydraulic unit, the control unit, and the four wheel speed sensors.

Note

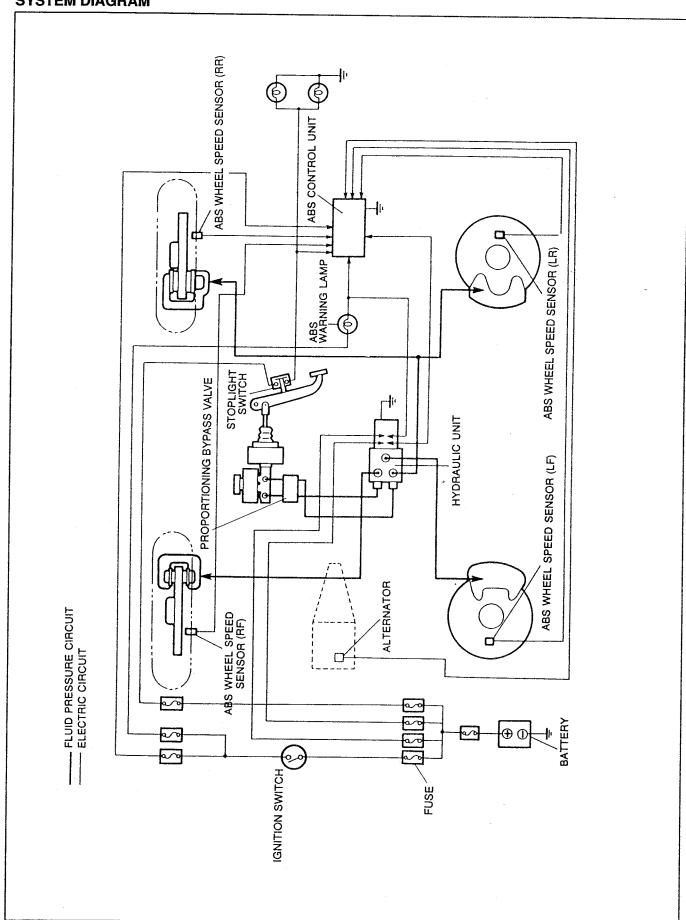
• Select low control is a method that controls the brake hydraulic pressure of both the right and left rear wheels by comparing wheel speeds and then controlling the hydraulic pressure in relation to the side which is in greater danger of the brake locking.

05E0PX-004

STRUCTURAL VIEW



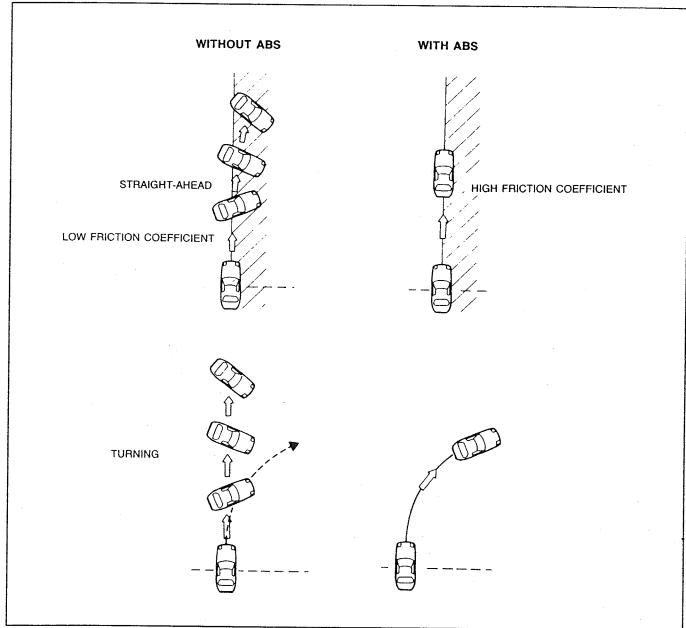
05E0PX-005



MAJOR COMPONENTS AND FUNCTION

| Part | Function | | | | | |
|---------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Wheel speed sensors | The speed sensors detect the rotational speed of the wheels and relay this data as electrical signals to the ABS control unit. | | | | | |
| ABS control unit | The ABS control unit receives and computes the signals from the speed sensors, then judges the situation of the wheels and relays signals to the hydraulic unit for control of the hydraulic fluid pressure to prevent wheel lock up during braking. The basic circuits of the control unit are: Operation circuit Control circuit Fail-safe circuit In the event of an electrical malfunction of the ABS, the fail-safe function allows the usual braking operations and causes the ABS warning lamp to illuminate. | | | | | |
| Hydraulic unit | The hydraulic unit controls the hydraulic pressure applied to each brake caliper in accordance with signals from the control unit. There are four pressure control operations: 1) Normal 2) Pressure increase 3) Pressure retention 4) Pressure reduction | | | | | |

05E0PX-007



05E0PX-008

During straight-ahead travel with slippery road surface (low friction coefficient) on one side Without ABS

When the brakes are applied during straight-ahead travel, the wheels on the slippery surface lock, and the front of the vehicle veers toward the side of the road with the highest friction coefficient, thus causing a spin.

With ABS

Because the braking force is controlled in such a way that the wheels will not lock when the brakes are applied, the vehicle does not spin during braking and, as an added benefit, the braking distance is usually shortened.

During a turn on a slippery road surface (low friction coefficient) Without ABS

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the wheels lock and the vehicle veers in the direction of the turn, thus resulting in a spin.

With ABS

Because the braking force is controlled in such a way that the wheels do not lock, the steering performance is maintained and the vehicle can be driven around the turn.

PRINCIPLES OF ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM

The ABS controls braking force by controlling the brake system hydraulic pressure so that the wheels do not lock during braking. The braking force is controlled based on the slippage ratio determined from the friction coefficient (road surface condition), the wheel speed, and the vehicle speed so that the most effective braking is provided at all times.

Friction coefficient (road surface condition)

When comparing an asphalt road to a snow-covered road surface, the frictional force between the tires and the road is much lower for a snow-covered road than for an asphalt road. The tires, therefore, slip much easier on the snow-covered road surface.

This frictional force condition is expressed as the friction coefficient.

Wheel speed

When the brakes are applied, the wheel rotational speed is reduced as a result of the friction between the tires and the road surface. This actual rotation speed of the wheel is expressed as the wheel speed.

Vehicle speed

When the brakes are applied, the speed of the vehicle is reduced as the wheel speed is reduced. Despite this reduction of wheel speed, however, the vehicle tries to continue moving in the same direction due to its inertial force. This actual vehicle movement is expressed as the vehicle speed. The control unit therefore uses the wheel speed, not the vehicle speed, as the basic of calculations to control braking.

Slippage ratio

When the brakes are applied, the difference that occurs between the wheel speed and the vehicle speed is called slippage.

This is expressed as the slippage ratio, and is defined by the following formula.

Example:

A vehicle is running on ice at a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph), the brakes are fully applied, and the wheels lock;

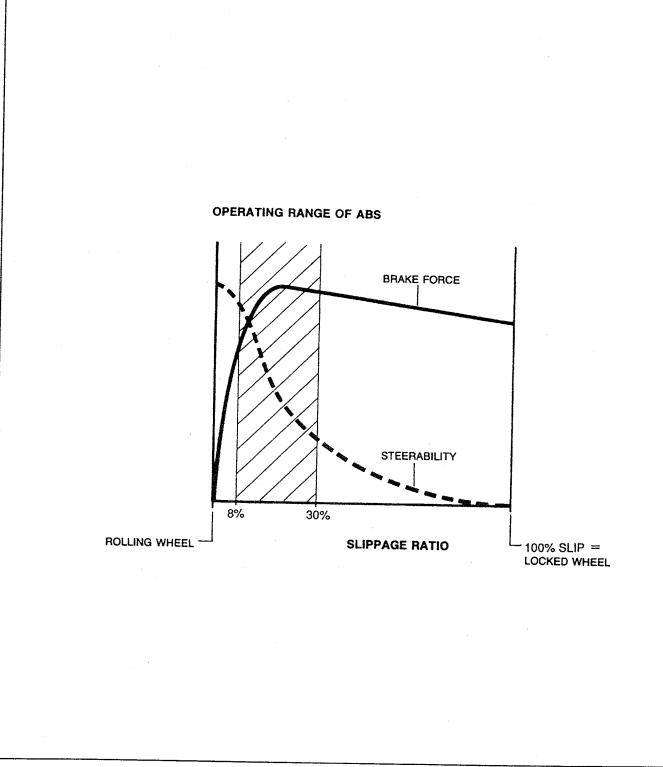
The wheels' speed = 0 km/h (0 mph)

Slippage ratio =
$$\frac{10 (6) - 0}{10 (6)} \times 100 = 100 (\%)$$

Slippage between tires and road surface is 100%

05E0PX-009

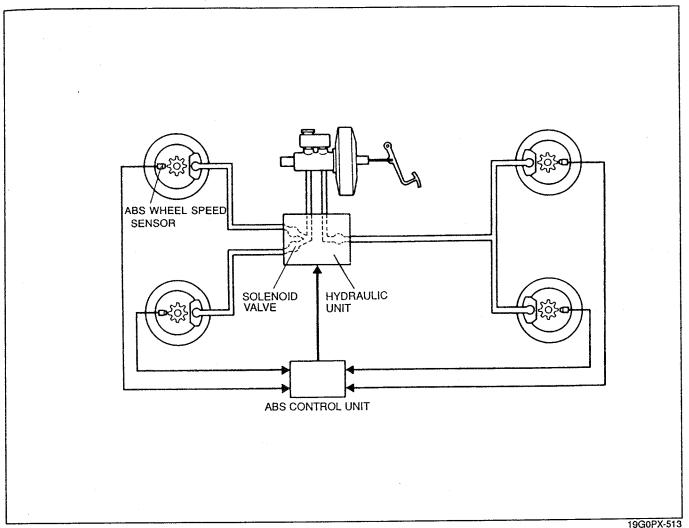




05E0PX-010

When the brakes are applied, the braking force applied to the road surface increases sharply, reaching a maximum point, after which it decreases. When the brakes are applied, the wheel speed also decreases. The wheel speed is less than the vehicle speed, and this causes slippage between the road surface and the tire. Braking forces depends upon the coefficient of slippage between a tire and the road surface. Braking forces can effectively slow a vehicle when the slippage ratio is in the range of 8%—30%. Within this range steerability is sufficient to steer the vehicle during full braking application because the tires are still gripping the road surface.

Outline of Anti-Lock Brake Operation



The wheel speed sensors relay continues wheel speed signals to the ABS control unit.

The control unit processes these signals into pressure change commands for the solenoid valves in the hydraulic unit. When the control unit recognizes that a particular wheel is about to lock, it brings about an adjustment of the hydraulic pressure.

The hydraulic pressure to the front wheels is adjusted individually. The pressure to both rear wheels, however, is adjusted simultaneously. This adjustment of the rear wheels is determined from the particular wheel which is about to lock. In this way, the other rear wheel is able to transmit more lateral driving

This is the 3-channel control system; individual control for the front wheels and dual control for the rear wheels.

By means of the solenoid valves in the hydraulic unit, the hydraulic pressure in the brake circuits can be reduced, retained or increased. Due to this continual control, the hydraulic pressure is precisely adjusted.

The fail-safe circuit in the control unit switches back to normal braking operation (no ABS) if malfunction occurs in the electrical system.

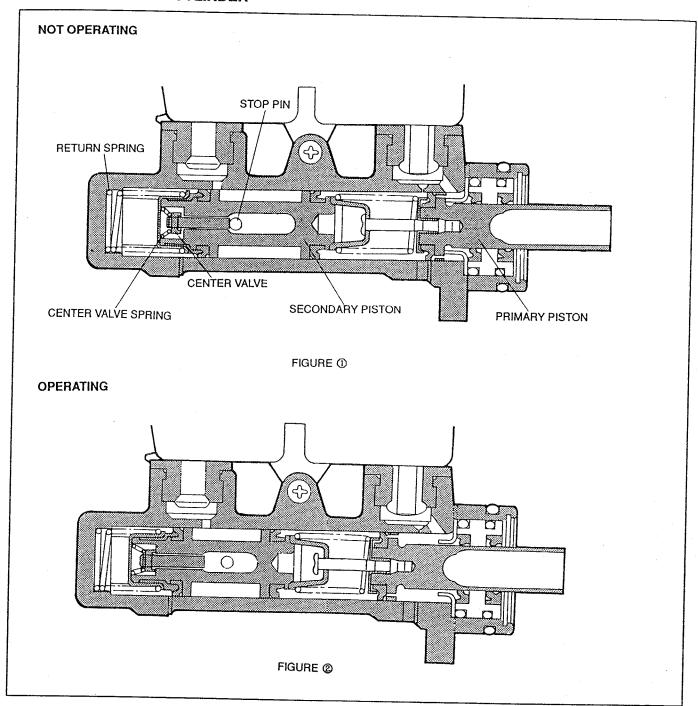
Note

• When vehicles equipped with ABS are compared to vehicles that do not have ABS, the following distinctive characteristics will be found. The distinctive characteristics in no way indicate an abnormality.

When the brakes are applied forcefully or on a slippery road surface:

- The ABS will activate.
- The brake pedal will pulsate and the vehicle and the steering wheel will vibrate slightly.

PORT-LESS MASTER CYLINDER



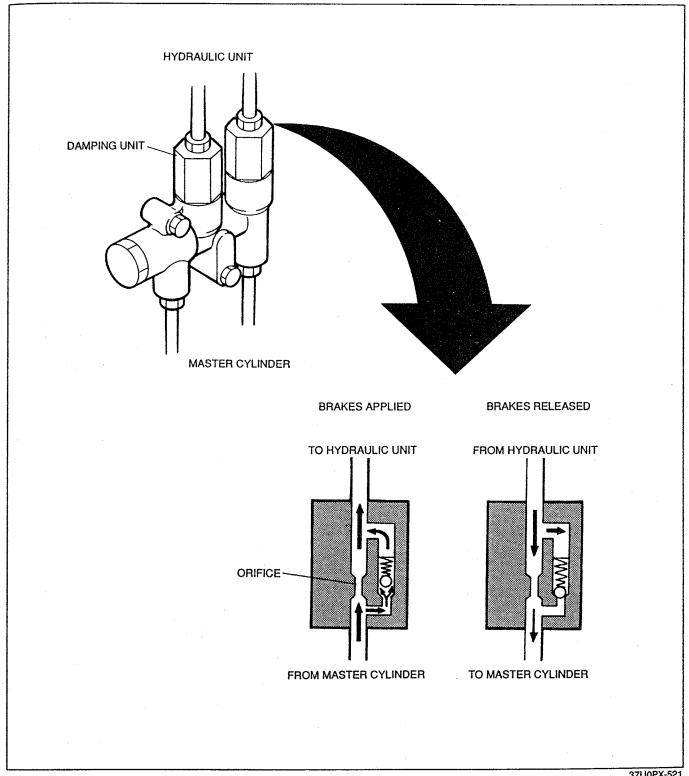
19G0PX-518

It has been found, that when the ABS is operated, the brake fluid pressure causes undue wear to the primary cup of the secondary piston. To avoid this problem, the relief port is abolished, and a center valve with a center port is provided in the secondary piston.

When the brake pedal is not pressed, the secondary piston is pressed toward the stop pin by the return spring as shown in Figure 1. At the same time, the center valve within the secondary piston is pressed open by the stop pin, providing a return path to the brake fluid reservoir.

When the brake pedal is pressed, the secondary piston is moved away from the stop pin as shown in Figure ②. The center valve spring presses the center valve against the secondary piston, closing the return path and allowing brake fluid pressure to be generated.

Operation of the primary piston is unchanged.



37U0PX-521

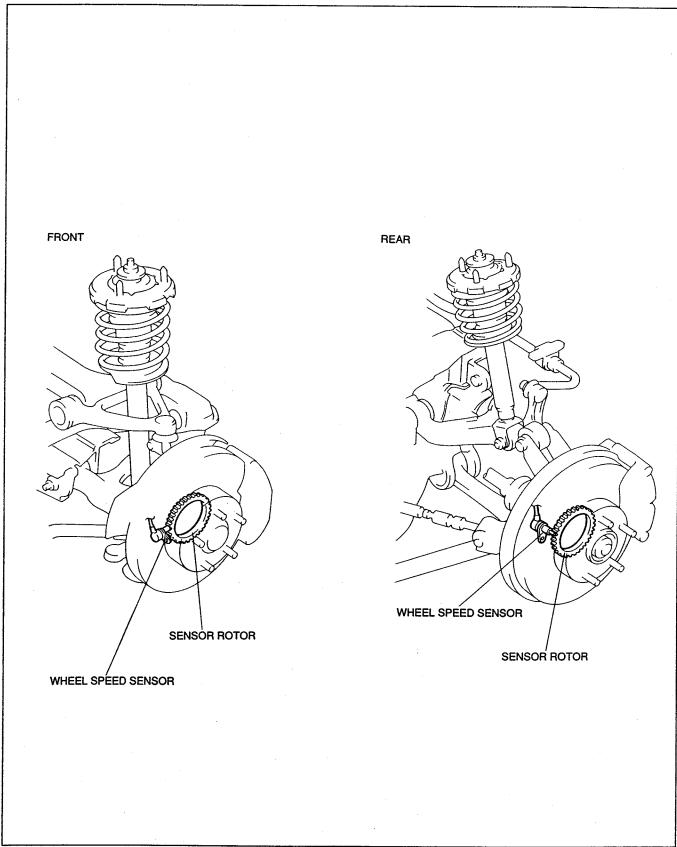
The damping units are installed on the proportioning bypass valve.

When the brakes are applied, the hydraulic pressure from the master cylinder passes through the orifice and check valve, allowing smooth build-up of brake fluid pressure.

When the brakes are released, the hydraulic fluid from the hydraulic unit acts upon the orifice and the check valve, but because the passage of the check valve is closed by the ball, the fluid returns through the orifice only to the master cylinder. Thus, kick back (pulsation) of the brake pedal is limited.

Do not remove the damping unit from the proportioning bypass valve. When replacing, remove the proportioning bypass valve as an assembly.

ABS WHEEL SPEED SENSOR

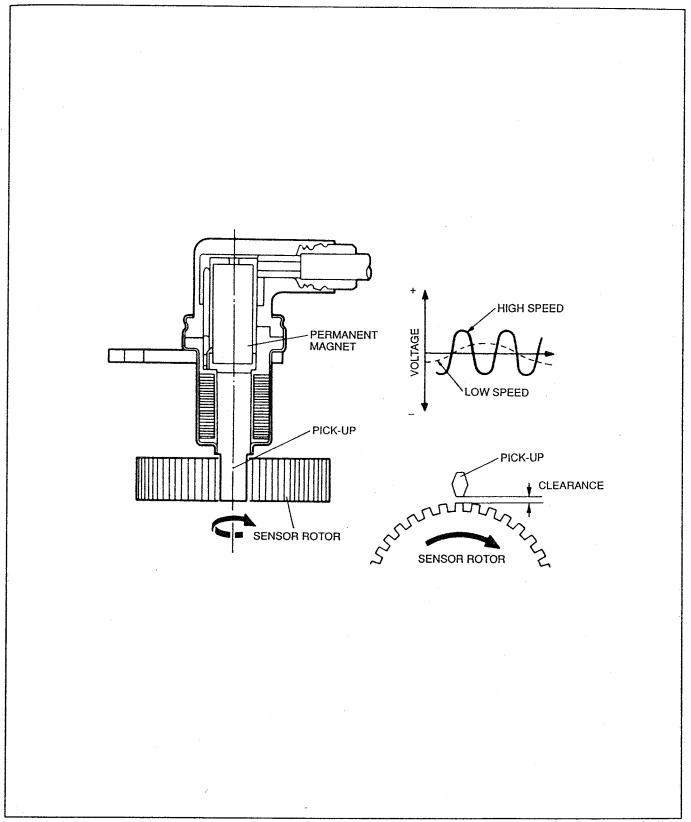


05E0PX-014

Structure

The wheel speed sensors are installed on the knuckles. These produce electrical pulses via rotation of the sensor rotor installed on the wheel hub or the drive shafts.

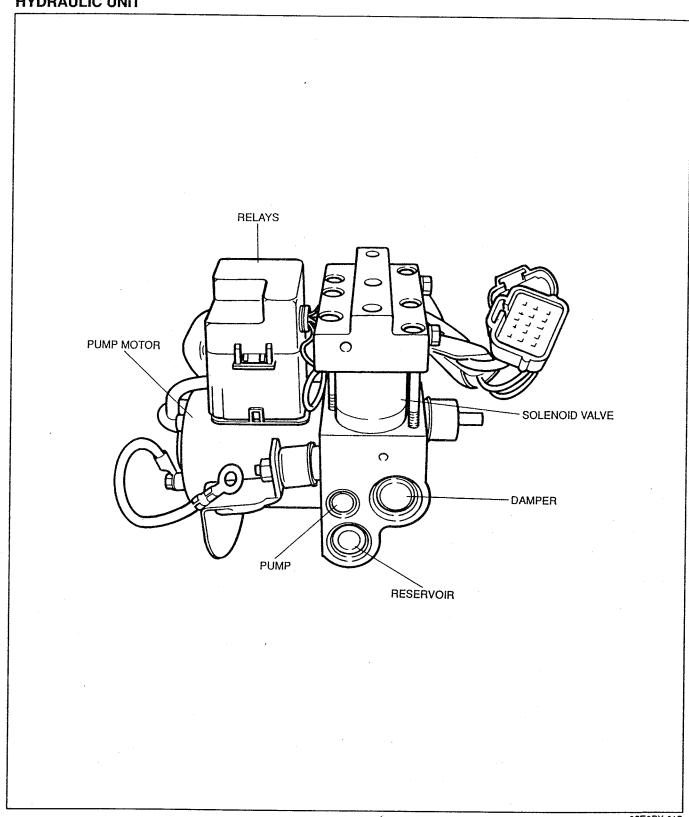
Function



67G11X-511

The sensor rotor on the wheel hub interrupts the magnetic fields of the wheel speed sensor. This produces an AC voltage which changes as the wheel speed changes. Voltage waves are sent to the control unit as wheel speed signals.

The sensor is mounted so that there is a small clearance between the speed sensor pick-up and the sensor rotor.



Based on the commands from the ABS control unit, the hydraulic unit controls the hydraulic pressure to the wheels by activating the solenoid valves.

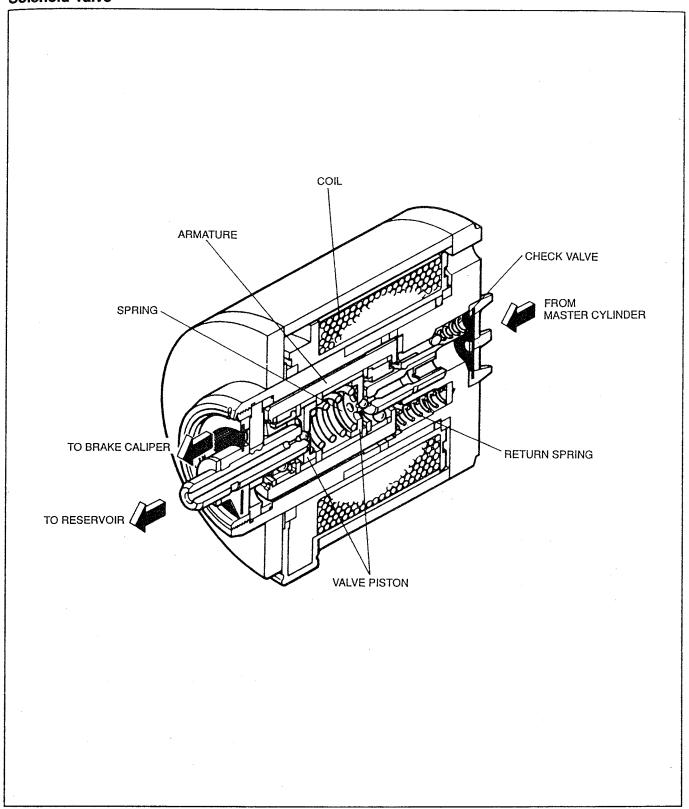
The hydraulic unit has three solenoid valves which operate the 3-channel system.

Two of these valves are for individual front wheel control and the other valve is for pressure regulation

of the rear brake circuit.

The hydraulic unit is installed within the engine compartment.

Solenoid Valve



05E0PX-016

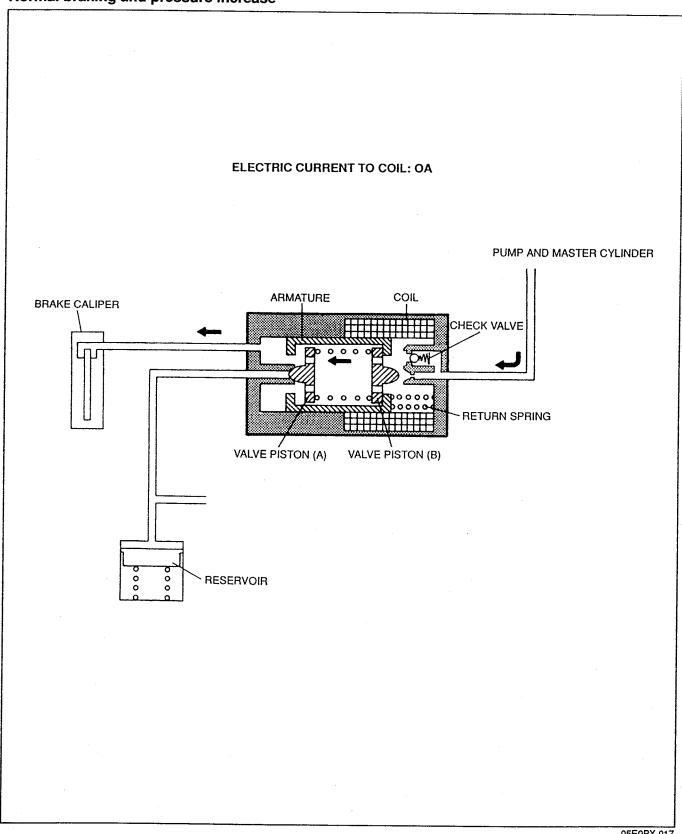
Structure

The main parts of the solenoid valve are the armature, the coil, two valve pistons, the check valve, and the return spring.

The valve pistons within the armature are held outward by the spring.

During ABS operation the valve pistons open or close the fluid passages from the master cylinder or to the reservoir.

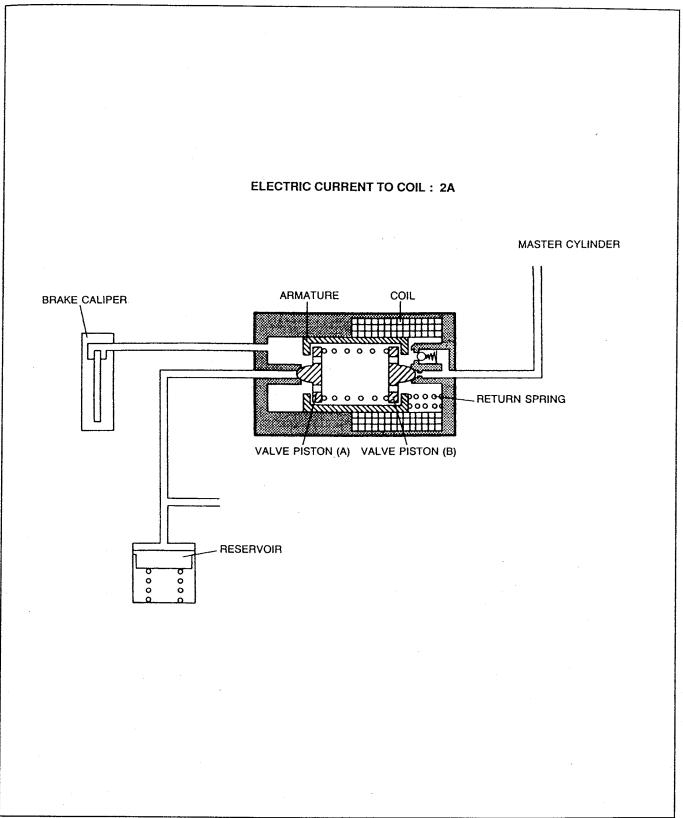
Function Normal braking and pressure increase



During normal braking and pressure increase, there is no current flow in the coil and the armature is held to the left by the return spring.

Because the passage to the reservoir is closed by valve piston (A), the hydraulic pressure from the master cylinder acts upon the brake caliper only.

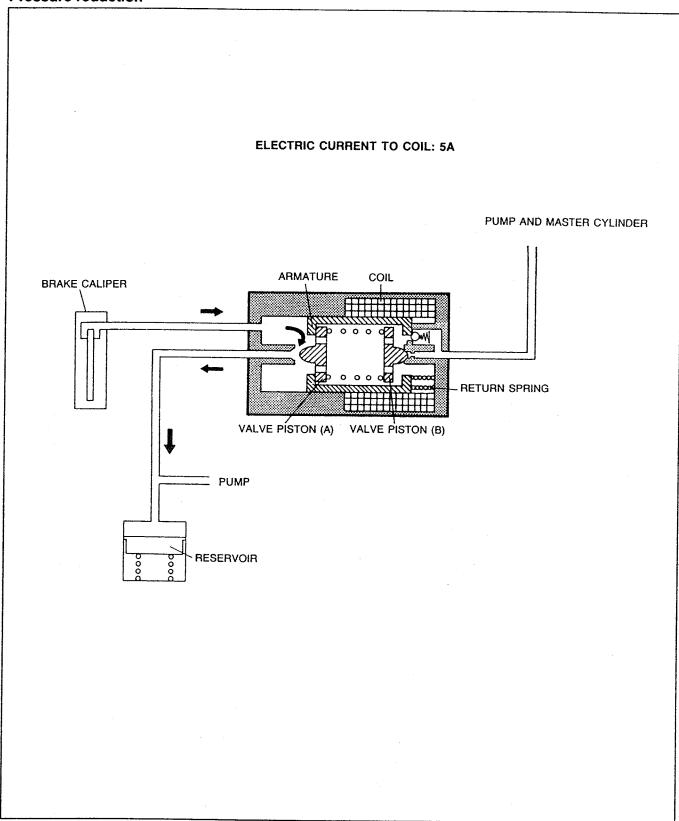
Pressure retention



05E0PX-018

To retain the pressure, a current of 2A flows to the coil and attracts the armature. This overcomes the force of the return spring, and the armature moves toward the right, stopping at the center of the solenoid valve. The passage to the reservoir remains closed by valve piston (A), and the passage from the master cylinder is closed by valve piston (B). At this time the hydraulic pressure within the brake caliper is retained.

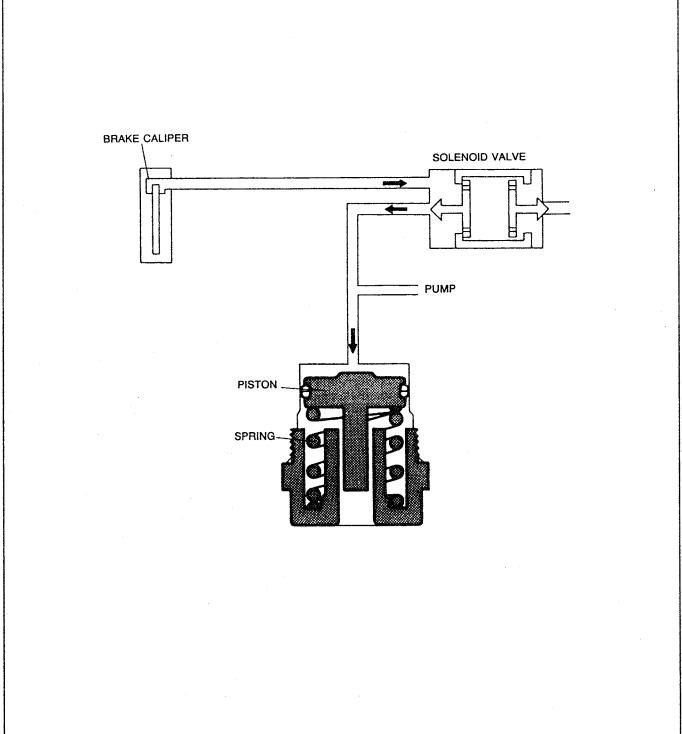
Pressure reduction



05E0PX-019

During pressure reduction, a current of 5A flows to the coil and further attracts the armature. This overcomes more of the force of the return spring, and the armature moves farther to the right than during pressure retention. Valve piston (B) closes and no hydraulic pressure flows from the master cylinder. Valve piston (A) opens, allowing the hydraulic pressure to escape from the brake caliper to the reservoir.

Reservoir



05E0PX-020

Structure

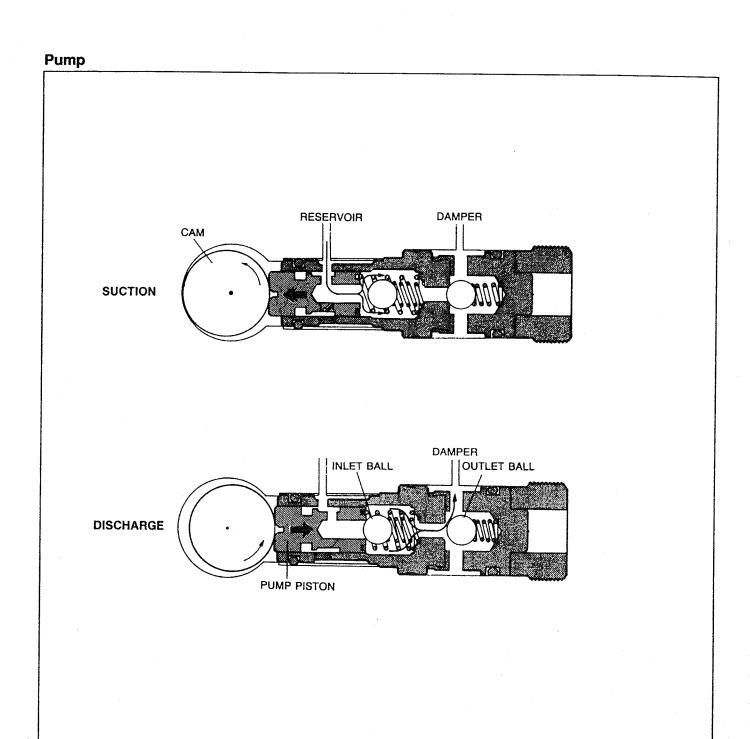
The two main components of the reservoir are the piston and the spring.

The hydraulic pressure within the reservoir when it is filled is approx. 294 kPa {3.0 kgf/cm², 43 psi}.

There are two reservoirs within the hydraulic unit.

Function

The reservoirs temporarily stores the hydraulic pressure which flows from the brake caliper though the solenoid valve during pressure reduction.



05E0PX-021

Structure

The main components of the pump are the cam, pump piston, inlet and outlet balls, and springs. The pump piston is driven by the pump motor cam.

Function

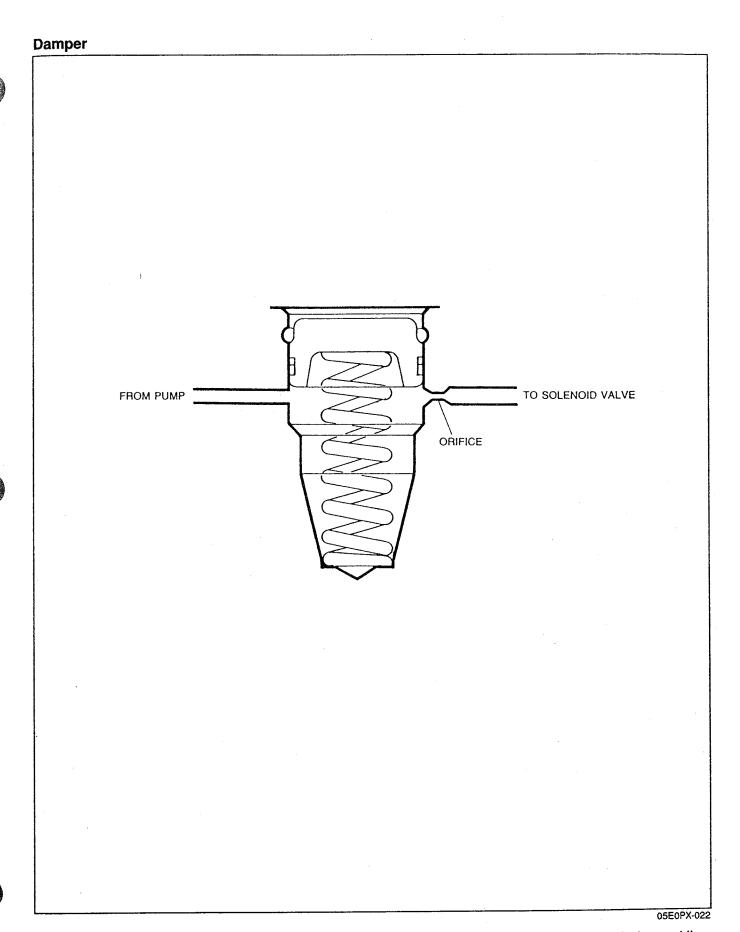
Suction

As the pump motor rotates the cam, it releases the pressure against the pump piston and the spring moves the piston toward the left.

As this happens, the volume of the inlet chamber increases and hydraulic pressure flows in from the reservoir, opening the inlet ball.

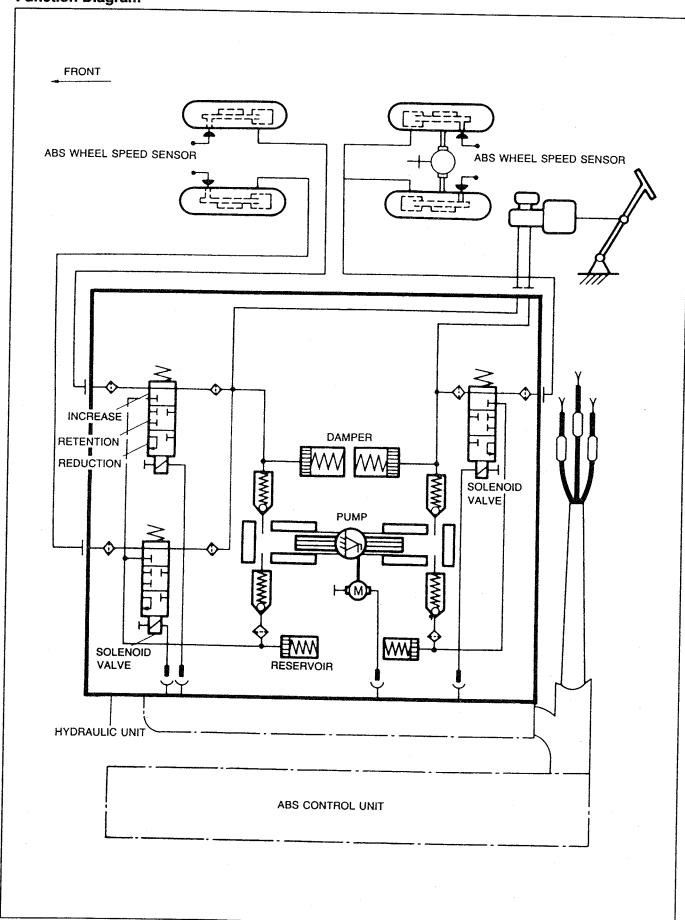
Discharge

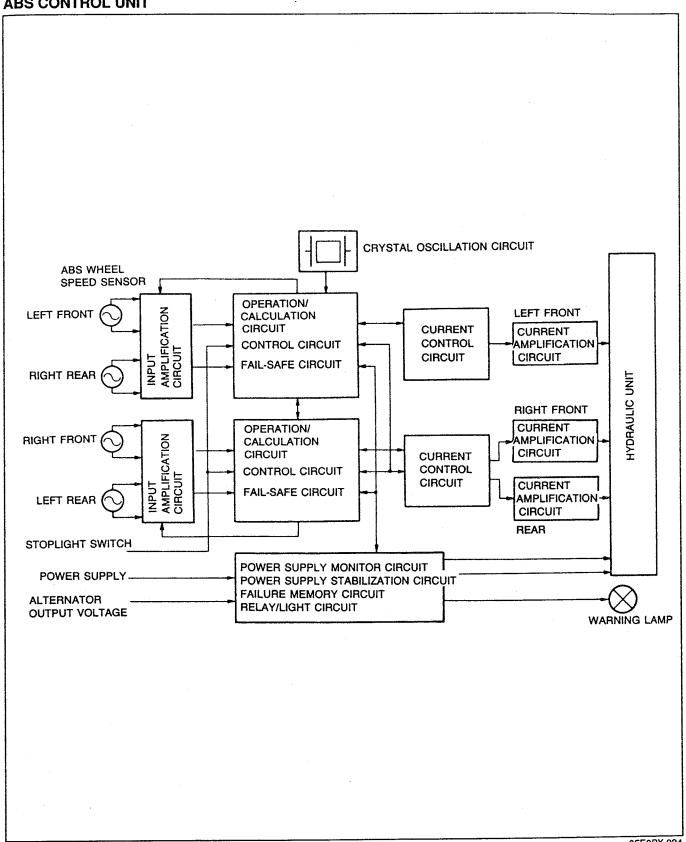
As the cam presses the pump piton toward the right, the volume of the inlet chamber decreases and the hydraulic pressure in the inlet chamber pushes open the outlet ball and flows to the damper.



The damper prevents transfer of hydraulic pressure from the pump back to the master cylinder and limits pulsation of the brake pedal caused by pressure fluctuations.

Function Diagram





The ABS control unit detects wheel speeds and evaluates the situation of the wheels based on the signals from the speed sensors.

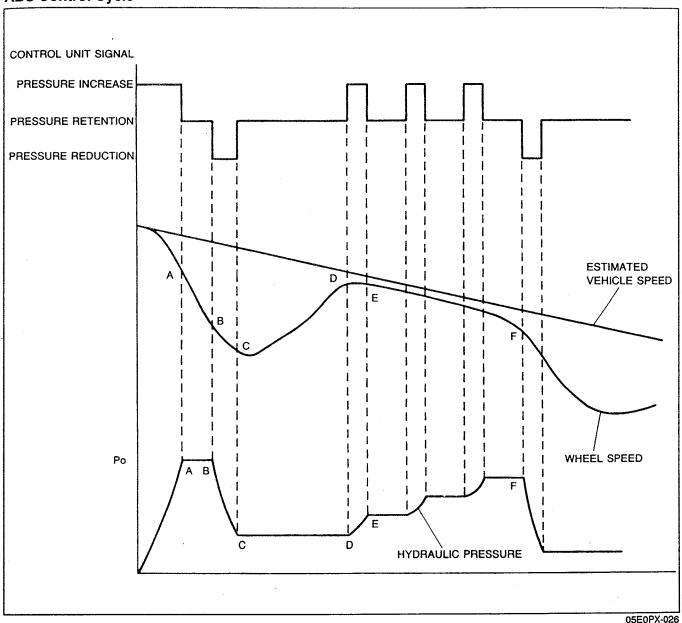
Based on the program within the control unit, the control unit then relays signals to the solenoid valves and the pump motor within the hydraulic unit to control wheel lock-up.

Circuits and functions

| Input amplification | Converts AC voltage from wheel speed sensors to square waves (sine waves) for ABS control unit. | | | | |
|----------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Operation/calculation | Detects wheel speeds from input sine waves and generates wheel increase/decrease speed signals and slippage signals. | | | | |
| Control | Receives signals produced by operation/calculation circuit and generates signals to operate solenoid valves. | | | | |
| Fail-safe | Monitors operation of system. If failure is detected, circuit generates failure-memory, valve relay cut, and warning lamp illumination signals. | | | | |
| Power supply monitor | Monitors battery voltage and power supply stabilization circuit. | | | | |
| Power supply stabilization | Provides stable power supply for ABS control unit. | | | | |
| Failure memory | Memorizes failure conditions if failure is detected. | | | | |
| Relay/light | Acting on signals from fail-safe circuit, stops operation of valve relay, causes warning lamp to illuminate, and shuts off power supply stabilization circuit, thus shutting down entire system. | | | | |
| Current control | Acting on signals from ABS control circuit, selects current signals to be sent to solenoid valves. | | | | |
| Current amplification | Acting on signals from current control circuit, relays correct current to solenoid valves. | | | | |

05E0PX-025

ABS Control Cycle



The control unit computes the rotational speed of each individual wheel, based upon signals received from the four wheel speed sensors, and also computes the wheels' deceleration and acceleration, and thereafter projects an estimate of the vehicle speed.

The control logic is explained in a simple manner based on the illustration above.

When the brake pedal is firmly depressed, the speed of the wheel begins to decrease, which is subsequently followed by a tendency toward locking up (point A).

At that point, the ABS control unit, in order to check for wheel lockup, computes the wheel slippage ratio, (the difference between the projected estimate of vehicle speed and the wheel speed) and compares the results with the preset formula for determination of lockup.

If it exceeds the preset value, the control unit sends a pressure retention command to stabilize the brake hydraulic pressure. Then, when the hydraulic pressure is reduced, the speed of the wheel begins to increase (point C), the control unit concludes that the wheel may recover its speed.

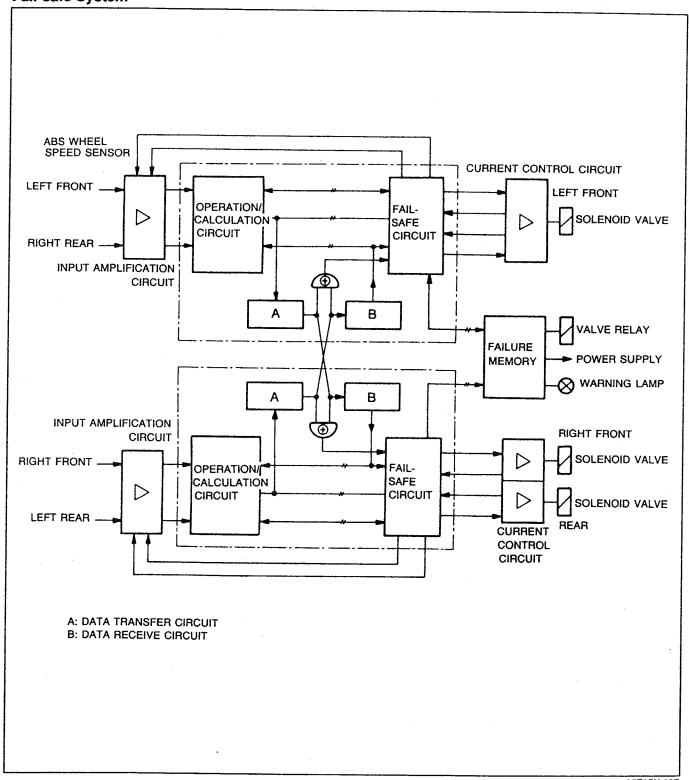
It therefore sends a pressure retention command to hold the current hydraulic pressure.

When the wheel speed reaches point D, the control unit concludes that the wheel is no longer in danger of locking up, and sends a command for increasing braking pressure.

The hydraulic pressure is then increased by repetition of increase and retention commands to regulate the braking force (point D-F).

If the wheel tends to lock again (point F), the cycle begins again to control wheel speed.





05F0PX-027

The ABS control unit incorporates two circuits which perform the same function so that they can check each other and check for an abnormal conditions in the system.

After the voltage from the speed sensors is converted to sine waves and the wheel speeds are calculated, control signals are output.

These control signals are input to their respective fail-safe circuit, then pass through the data transfer and the data receive circuits, and are input to the other fail-safe circuit. The data from each are then compared. If this comparison indicates an abnormal condition, signals are input to the failure memory circuit from the fail-safe circuit, thus activating the fail-safe system.

Self-diagnosis

The ABS control unit includes a self-diagnosis function which checks for normal operation of the ABS.

| Main self-diagnosis | Diagnosis period | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------|---|---|---|---|---------------------|
| | Α | В | С | D | Reaction to malfunction | Result |
| Fail-safe circuit | 0 | | | | System shut-down Warning lamp illuminated | Normal braking |
| Power supply stabilization circuit | | | | 0 | System shut-down Warning lamp illuminated | Normal braking |
| Input amplification circuit | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | System shut-down Warning lamp illuminated | Normal braking |
| Operation/calculation circuit | | 0 | 0 | | System shut-down Warning lamp illuminated | Normal braking |
| Control circuit | | 0 | 0 | | System shut-down Warning lamp illuminated | Normal braking |
| Solenoid valves | | 0 | | 0 | System shut-down Warning lamp illuminated | Normal braking |
| Pump motor | | 0 | | 0 | System shut-down Warning lamp illuminated | Normal braking |
| Valve relay | 0 | 0 | | 0 | System shut-down Warning lamp illuminated | Normal braking |
| Wheel speed sensors | | 0 | 0 | 0 | System shut-down if failure occurs during normal (no ABS operation) driving. Warning lamp illuminated | *Partial control |
| Battery | | | | 0 | System shut-down Warning lamp illuminated | Normal braking |
| Alternator | | | | 0 | Warning lamp illuminated | ABS available |

05E0PX-028

*Partial control:

If failure of a sensor occurs during ABS operation, the system is controlled by the remaining sensors until the ABS cycle is completed, then the system is shut-down.

Note

• The pump motor operates briefly after the vehicle speed reaches approx. 6 km/h {4 MPH} for self-diagnosis of the pump motor. The operating sound is heard only momentarily.

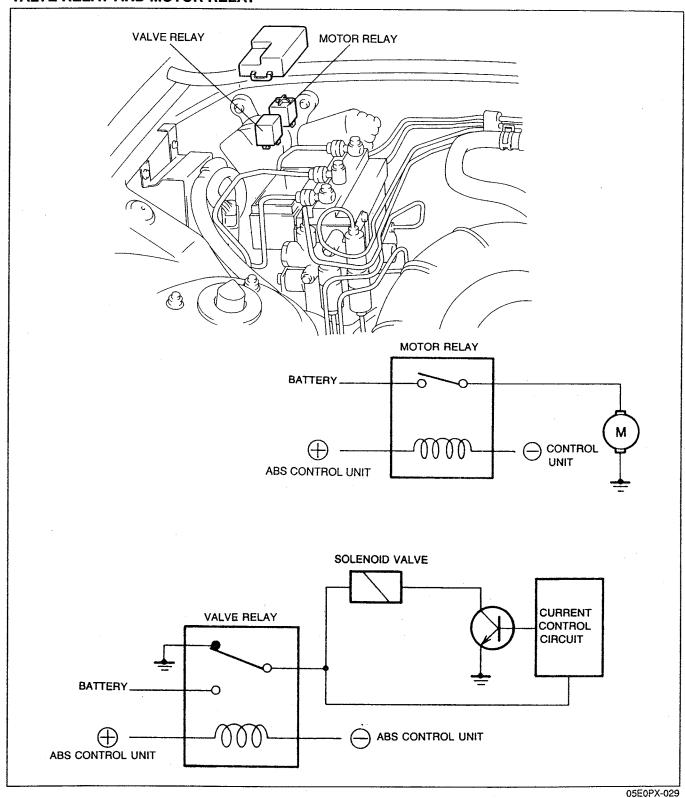
A Just after starting engine

B Ignition START position to vehicle speed of 6 km/h {4 MPH}

C Acceleration from idling to vehicle speed of 6 km/h {4 MPH}

D Driving

VALVE RELAY AND MOTOR RELAY



Valve relay

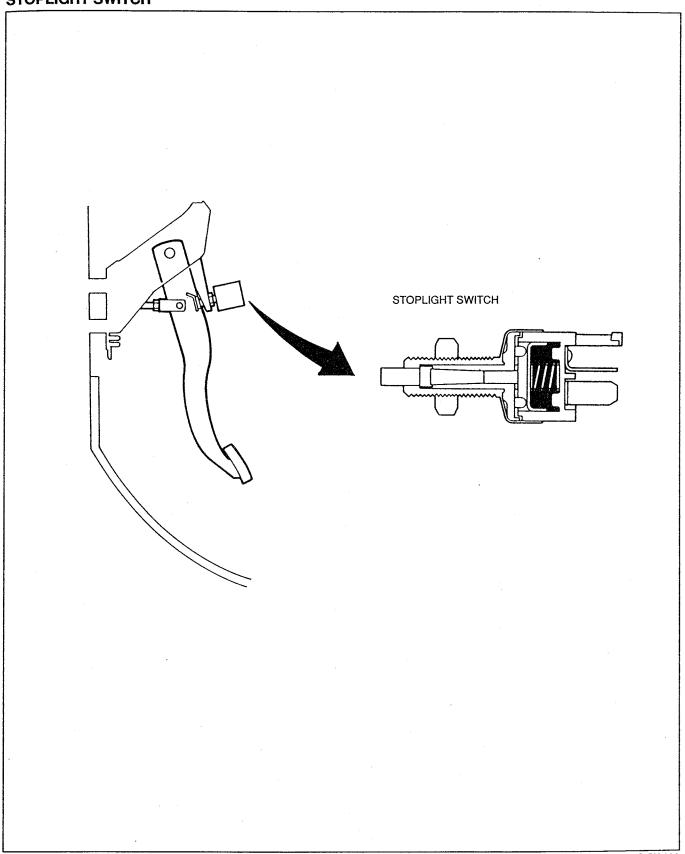
The valve relay controls voltage to the solenoid valves.

The valve relay also controls voltage to the current control circuit to switch the transistor ON when ABS is activated.

Motor Relay

The motor relay control voltage to the pump motor.

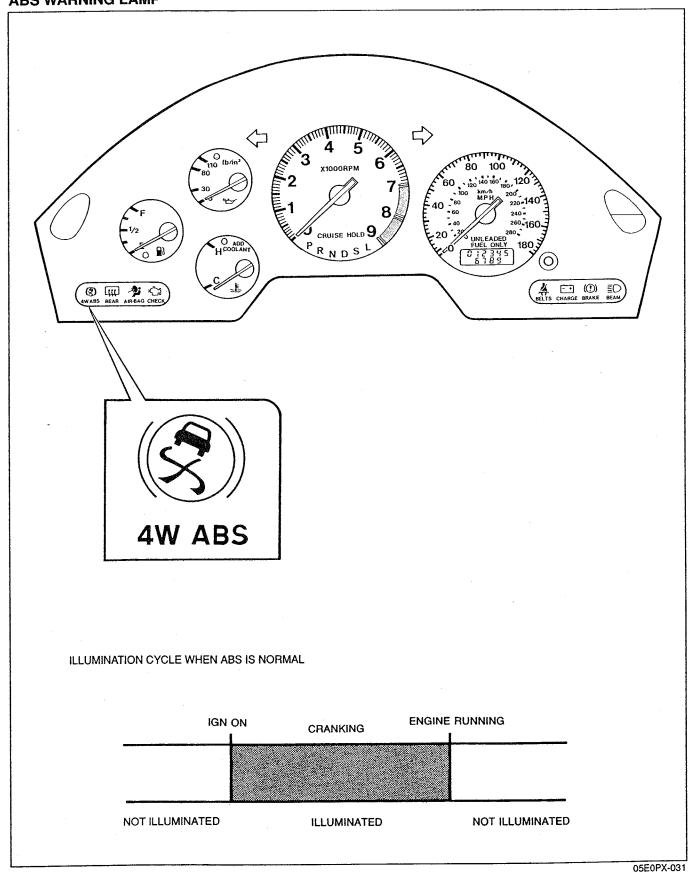
STOPLIGHT SWITCH



05E0PX-030

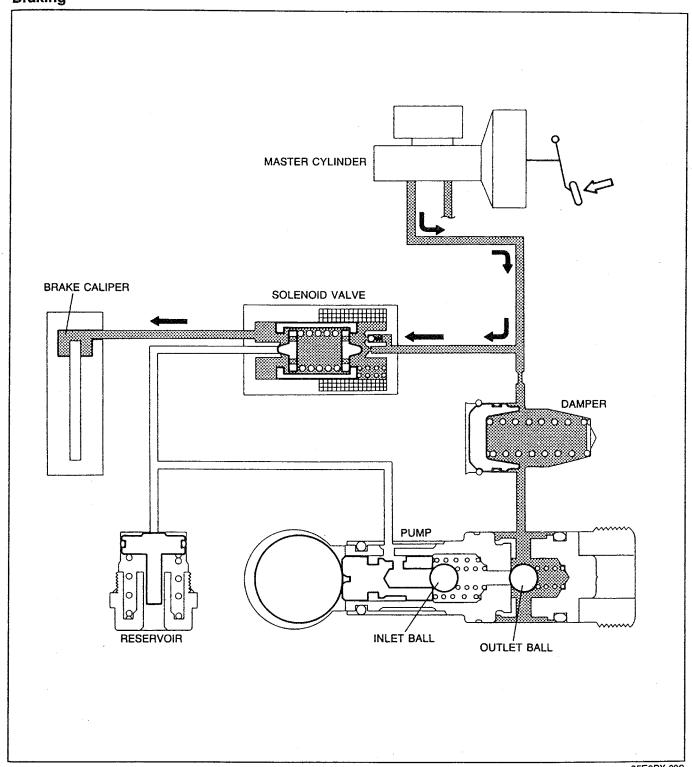
The stoplight switch sends a "brakes ON" signal to the ABS control unit when the brake pedal is depressed. This prevents unwanted operation of the ABS at times it is unnecessary, such as when a wheel has stopped due to hydroplaning.

ABS WARNING LAMP



The ABS warning lamp is located within the instrument cluster. If the warning lamp illuminates during driving, it indicates a malfunction in the ABS.

OPERATION OF ABS Normal Braking Braking

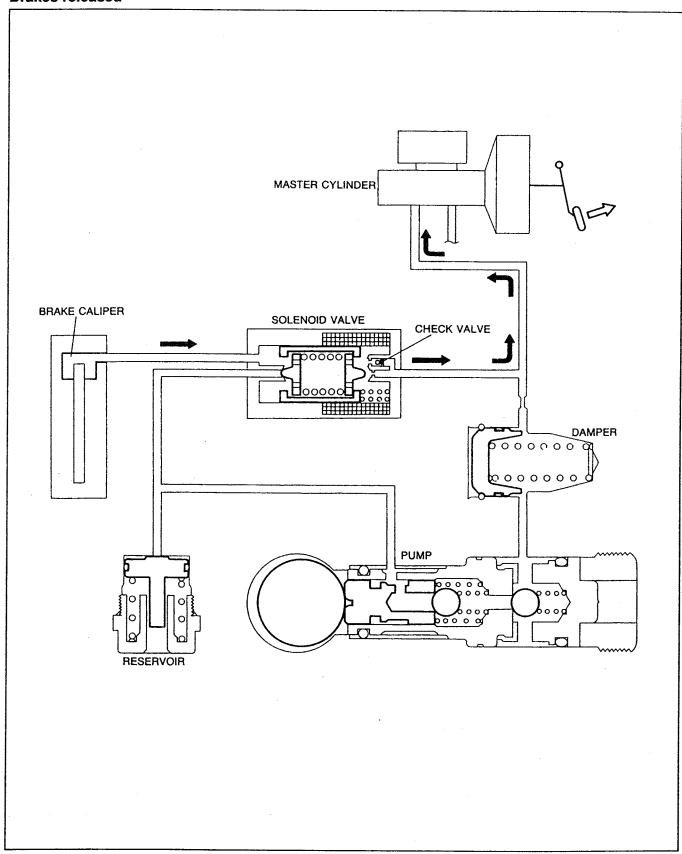


05E0PX-032

When the brake pedal is depressed, the hydraulic pressure from the master cylinder flows to the solenoid valve. During normal braking, because there is no current flow to the solenoid valve, the passage from the master cylinder to the brake caliper is open (the same condition as pressure increase), and the brakes are activated.

The hydraulic pressure which has passed through the damper also reaches the pump but is prevented from flowing through it by the outlet ball.

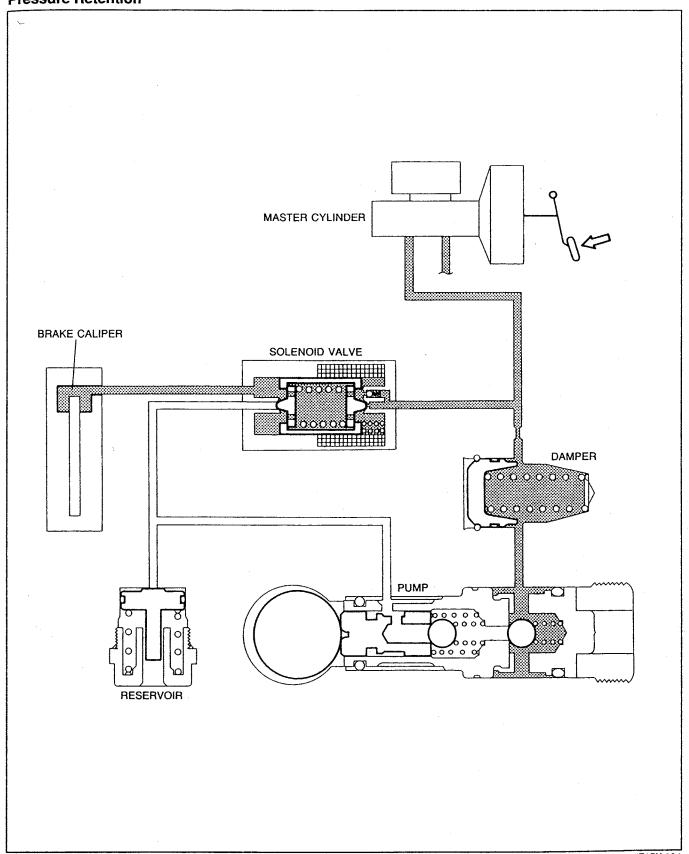
Brakes released



05E0PX-033

When the brake pedal is released, the master cylinder's hydraulic pressure decreases, and the hydraulic pressure from the brake caliper presses the ball of the check valve off its seat and returns to the master cylinder.

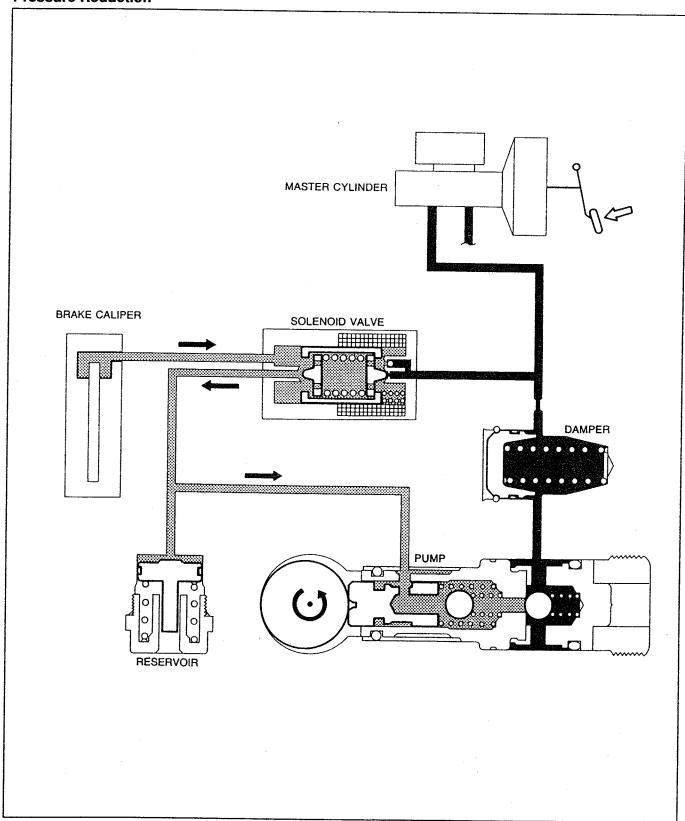
Pressure Retention



05E0PX-034

When a pressure retention signal is relayed from the ABS control unit to the solenoid valve, the solenoid valve closes the passage to the master cylinder reservoir, thereby retaining hydraulic pressure within the brake caliper.

Pressure Reduction



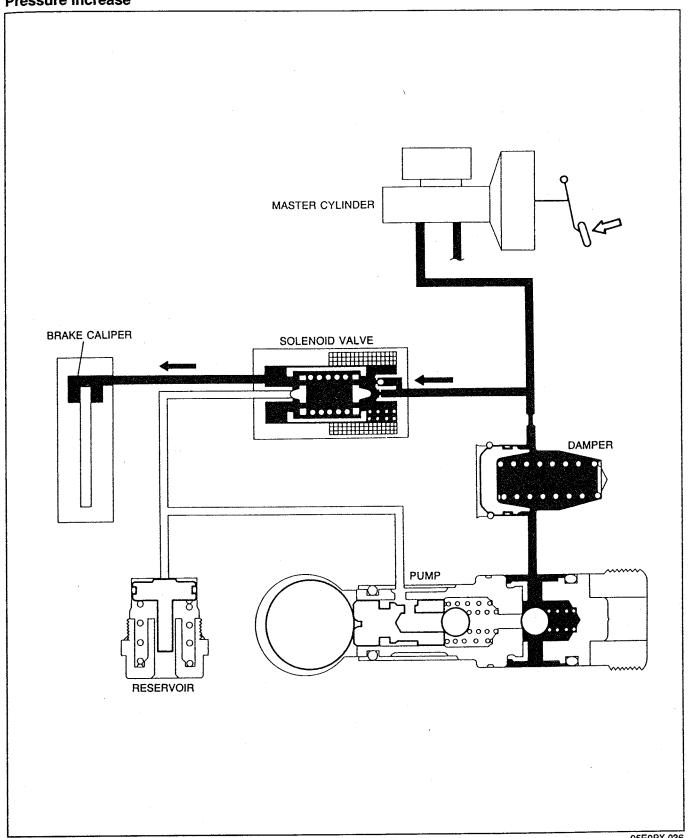
05E0PX-035

When a pressure reduction signal is relayed from the ABS control unit to the solenoid valve, the solenoid valve stops the hydraulic pressure from the master cylinder, and hydraulic pressure is allowed to flow from the brake caliper to the reservoir.

The pressure reduction signal also cause the pump to operate, transferring the hydraulic fluid within the

reservoir to the damper.

Pressure Increase



05E0PX-036

When a pressure increase signal is relayed from the ABS control unit, cutting current to the solenoid valve, the solenoid valve opens the passage from the master cylinder to the brake caliper.

When this happens, pressurized hydraulic fluid is sent to the brake caliper, thus again raising the hydraulic pressure in the brake caliper.

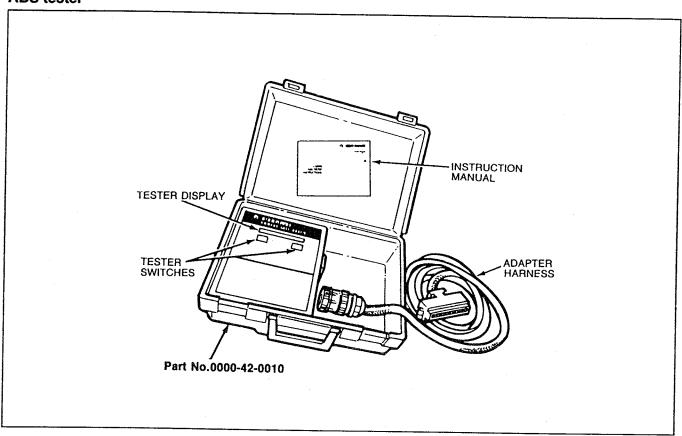
TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

Outline

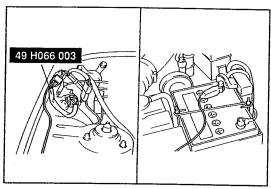
The ABS tester is used to locate the cause of a problem within the anti-lock brake system by retaining and reducing the hydraulic fluid pressure in the hydraulic unit.

Because there is no way to check the ABS control unit itself, replace the control unit assembly only after first confirming that the other electrical parts are not faulty.

ABS tester

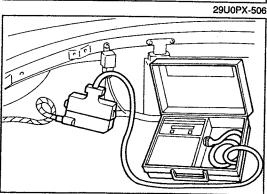


29U0PX-505



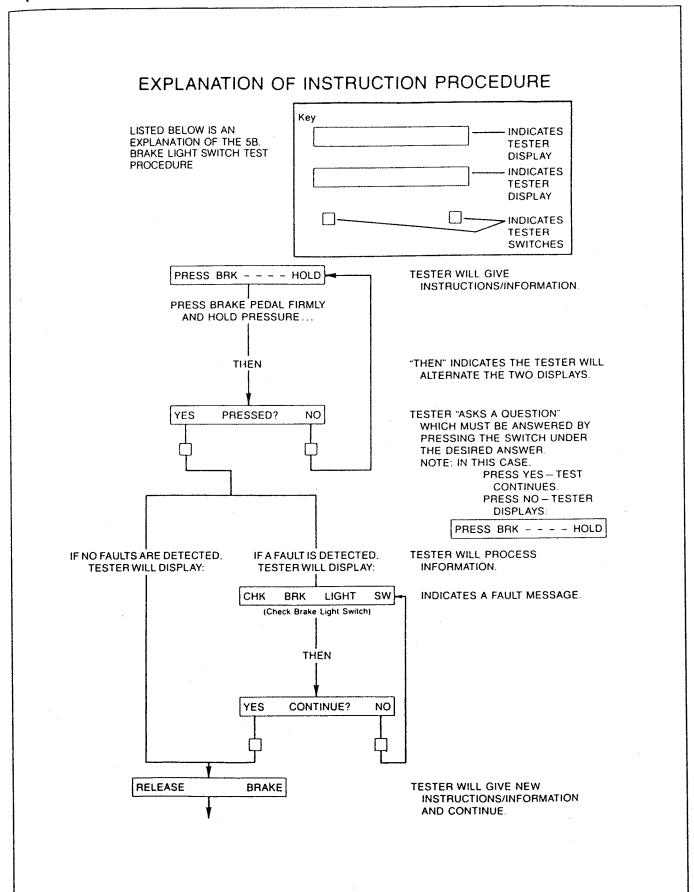
Connecting the ABS tester

- 1. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 2. Connect the **SST** to the hydraulic unit harness connector and the positive battery terminal.

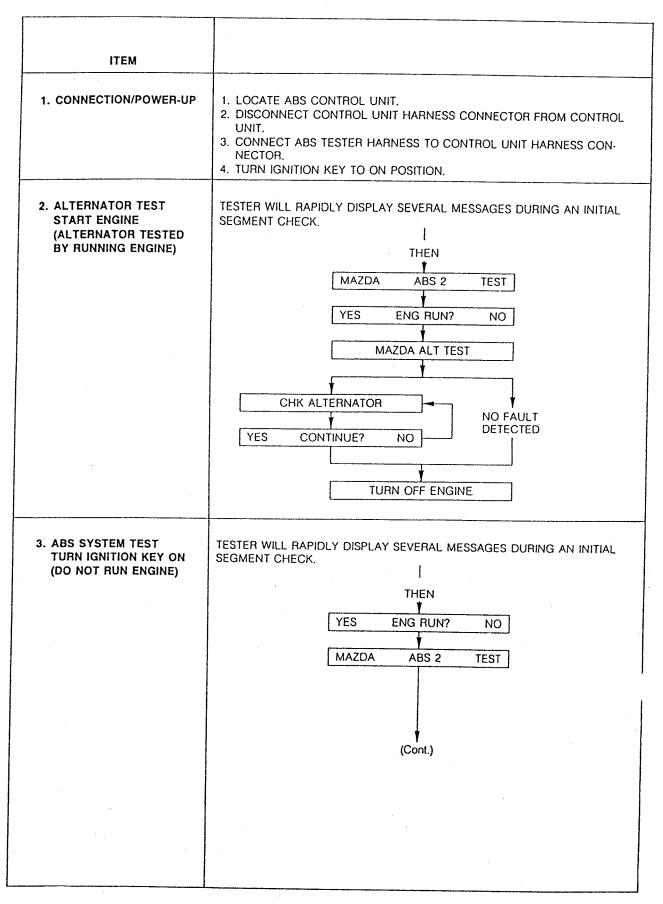


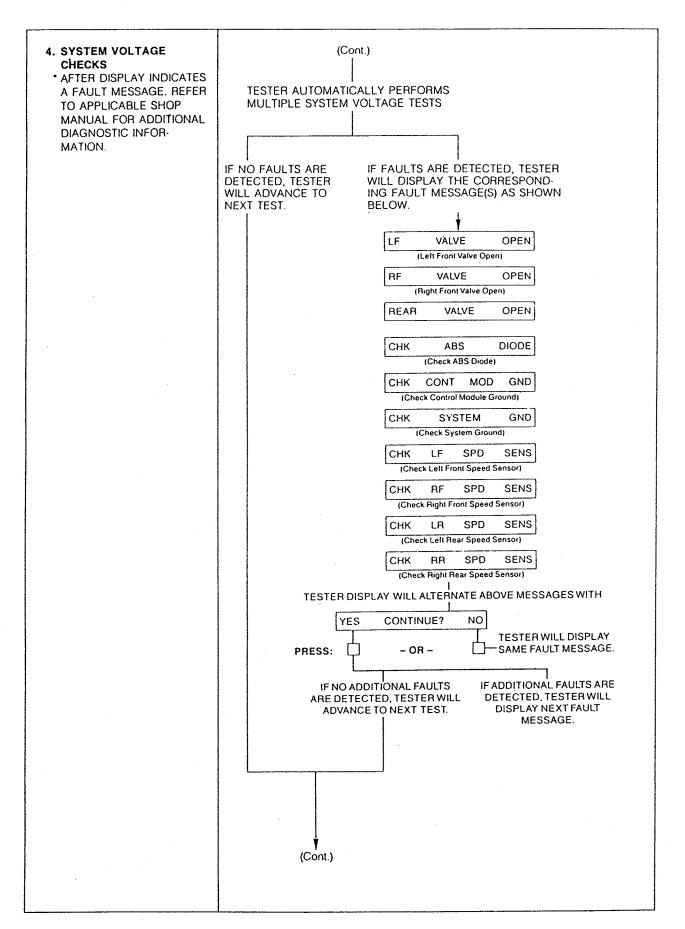
- 3. Remove the trunk side trim.
- 4. Remove the ABS control unit.
- Disconnect the control unit connector and connect the ABS tester to the control unit connector at the harness side.

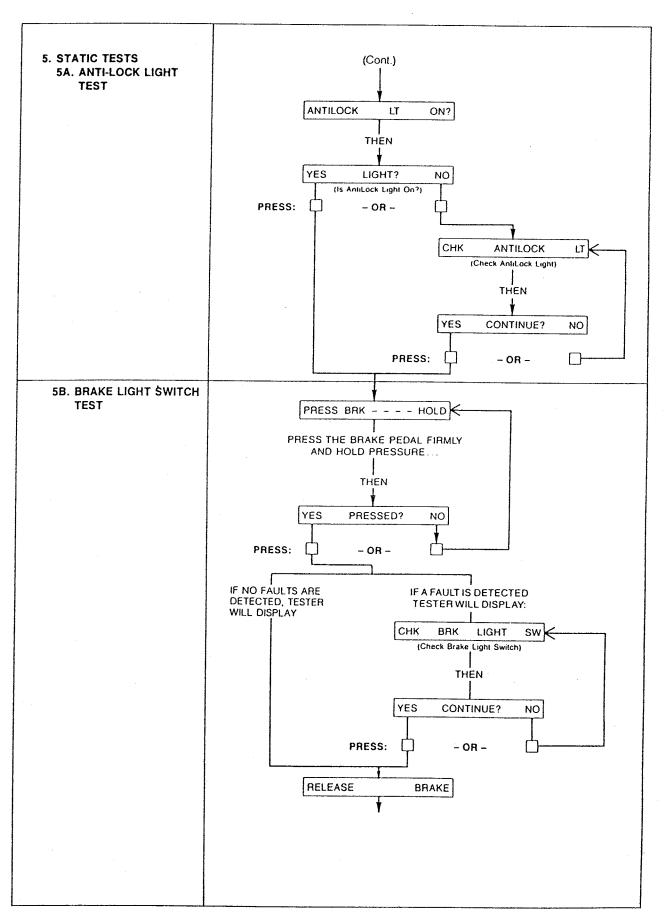
37U0PX-522

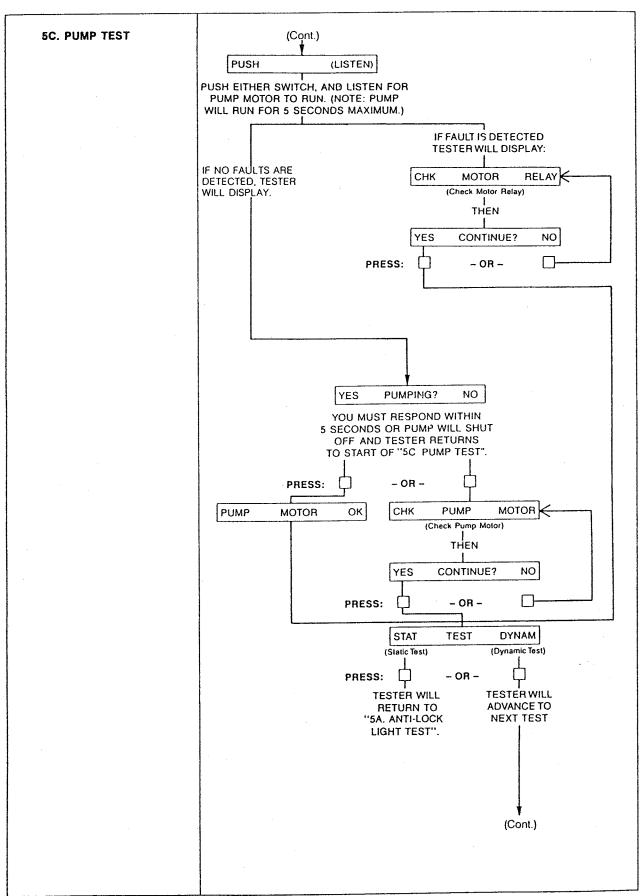


Troubleshooting procedure









6. DYNAMIC TESTS 6A. WHEEL SELECTION OR EXIT

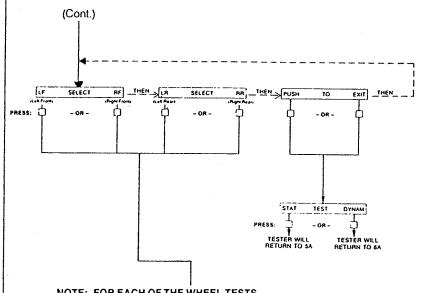
THESE THREE MESSAGES WILL ALTERNATE ON THE DISPLAY SCREEN AT 3 1/2 SECOND INTERVALS. NOW, SELECT ONE OF THE FOUR WHEELS TO BEGIN THE DYNAMIC TEST SEQUENCE.

OR

PRESS EITHER SWITCH UNDER "PUSH TO EXIT" DISPLAY TO RETURN TO "STAT TEST DYNAM" SELECTION.

IMPORTANT:

WHEN ENTERING THE DYNAMIC TEST SEQUENCE, YOU
WILL SELECT ONE OF FOUR
WHEELS TO BEGIN. WHEN
YOU HAVE FINISHED WITH
THAT WHEEL TEST, YOU
SHOULD RETURN TO 6A
"WHEEL SELECTION", TO
SELECT ANOTHER WHEEL,
AND REPEAT THESE TEST
PROCEDURES FOR ALL FOUR
WHEELS.



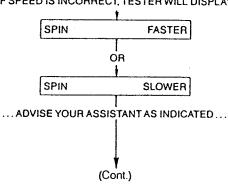
NOTE: FOR EACH OF THE WHEEL TESTS,
IT IS NECESSARY TO RAISE THE WHEEL(S)
BEING TESTED OFF THE FLOOR.
(WHEN TESTING REAR WHEELS, BOTH WHEELS
MUST BE RAISED OFF THE FLOOR.)
AN ASSISTANT WILL BE REQUIRED TO
SPIN THE WHEELS.

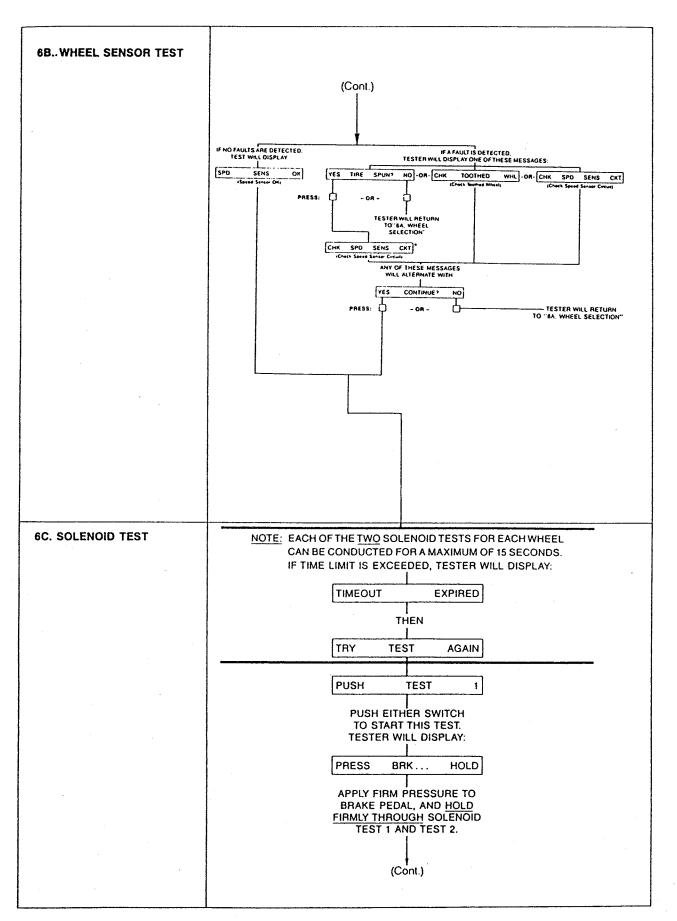
6B. WHEEL SENSOR TEST

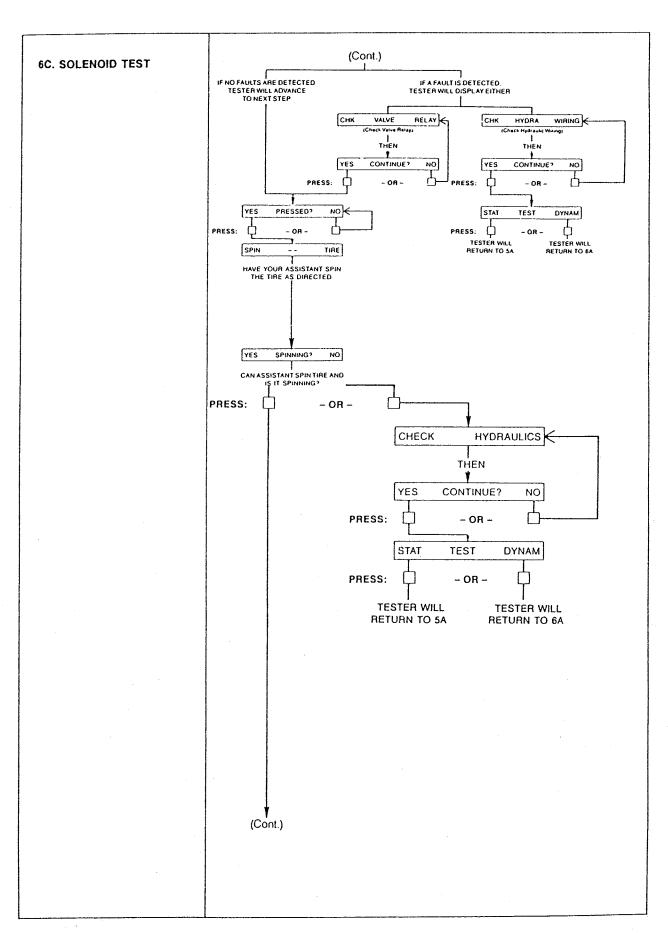
SPIN ___ TIRE

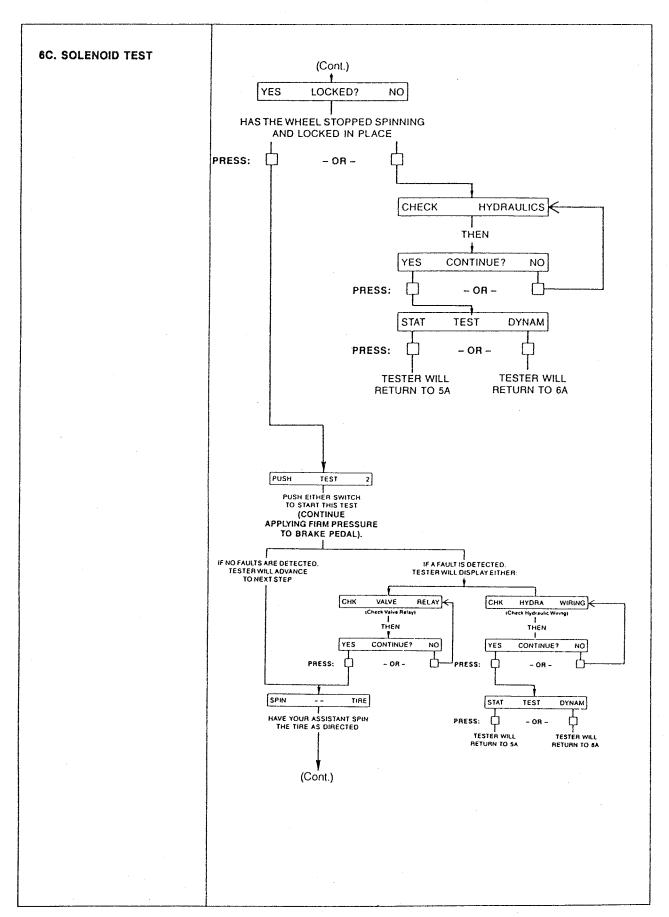
DISPLAY WILL SHOW THE
WHEEL WHICH YOU SELECTED
IN TEST 6A

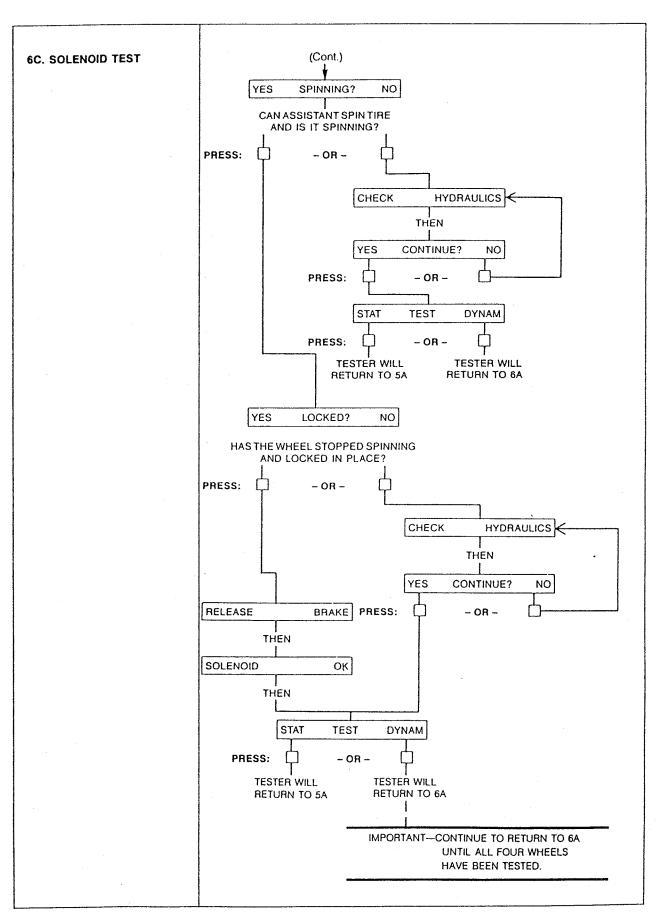
HAVE YOUR ASSISTANT SPIN THE WHEEL INDICATED WHILE YOU WATCH THE TESTER. IF SPEED IS INCORRECT, TESTER WILL DISPLAY:











WHEELS AND TIRES

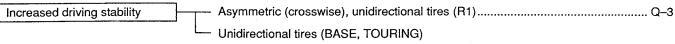
| OUTLINE | Q-2 |
|-------------------------|------------|
| OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION | |
| FEATURES | Q-2 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | Q-2 |
| TIRE | |
| | 37H00X-501 |

OUTLINE

OUTLINE OF CONSTRUCTION

• Tires that match the vehicle's characteristics are used to improve driving stability and increase marketability.

FEATURES

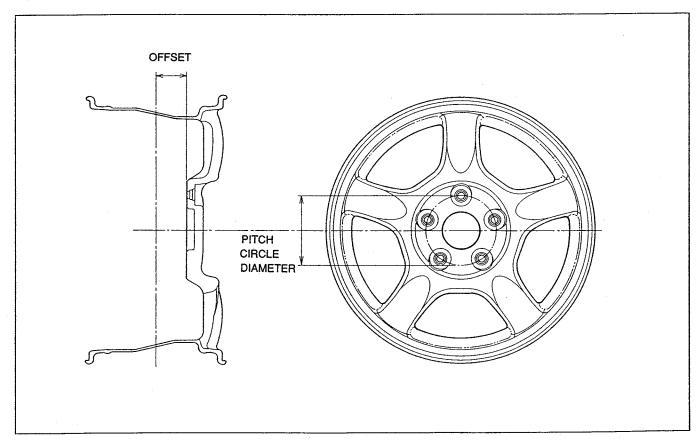


37U0QX-502

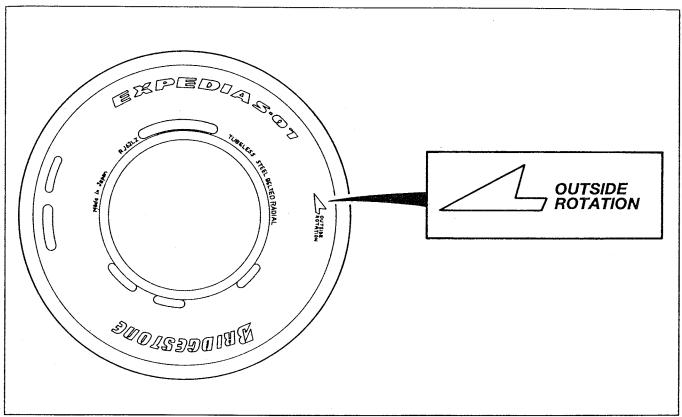
SPECIFICATIONS

| Item | | | Specifications | | |
|----------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|
| Standard | tire | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | | |
| Tires | Size | | P225/50R16 91V P225/50 ZR 16 | | |
| | Air pressure | kPa {kgf/cm², psi} | 220 {2.2, 32} | | |
| | Size | | 16 × 8JJ | | |
| | Material | | Aluminum alloy | | |
| Wheels | Offset | mm {in} | 50 {1.97} | | |
| | Pitch circle diameter | mm (in) | 114.3 {4.50} | | |
| Temporar | y spare tire | | | | |
| | Size | | T135/70D16 | | |
| Tires | Air pressure | kPa {kgf/cm²,psi} | 415 {4.2, 60} | | |
| Wheels | Size | | 16×4T | | |
| | Material | | Aluminum alloy | | |
| | Offset | mm (in) | 40 {1.57} | | |
| | Pitch circle diameter | mm {in} | 114.3 {4.50} | | |

37U0QX-503



TIRE



37U0QX-504

• R1 vehicles use asymmetric (crosswise), unidirectional tires.

Caution

- When mounting the tires, match the rotation mark with the direction of tire rotation and attach the tires so that the OUTSIDE mark faces away from the vehicle.
- BASE and TOURING vehicles use unidirectional tires.

| 14.14 | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|------|---|-----|---|--|---|---|--|
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | • | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| M | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| 444 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | • | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | : | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | • 1 | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | 64 | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | M | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | • | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | • | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | ij. | | | | | | | |
| | M. | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | , | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| BEHENDED. | 7 (5 | | | | | | | |

SUSPENSION

| OUTLINE | R- 2 |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| FEATURES | |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | |
| SUSPENSION BUSHINGS | |
| SPECIFICATIONS | R- 5 |
| FRONT SUSPENSION | |
| STRUCTURE | R- 6 |
| TOE CONTROL OPERATION | |
| REAR SUSPENSION | R–14 |
| STRUCTURE | R–14 |
| TOE CONTROL OPERATION | R–21 |
| | 271 IODV E01 |

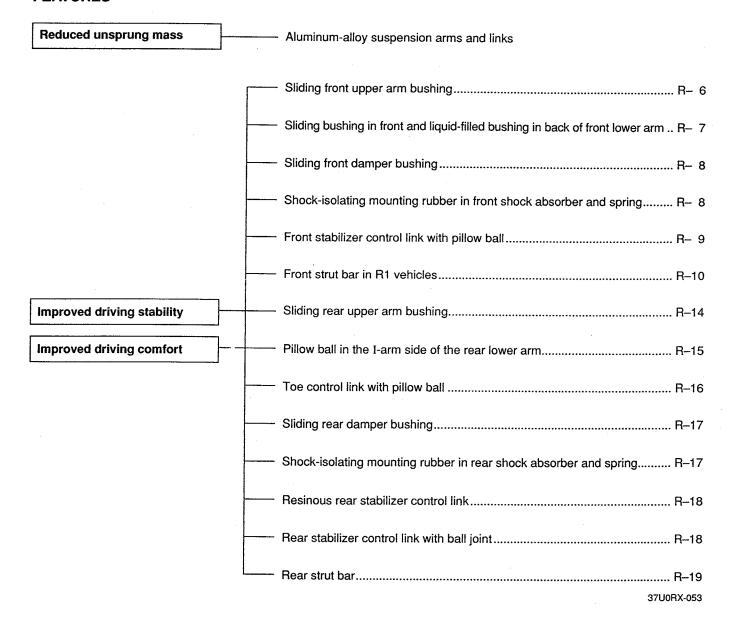
OUTLINE

• Double-wishbone front suspension is used. Aluminum-alloy A-upper arms and L-lower arms reduce unsprung mass to improve suspension grounding.

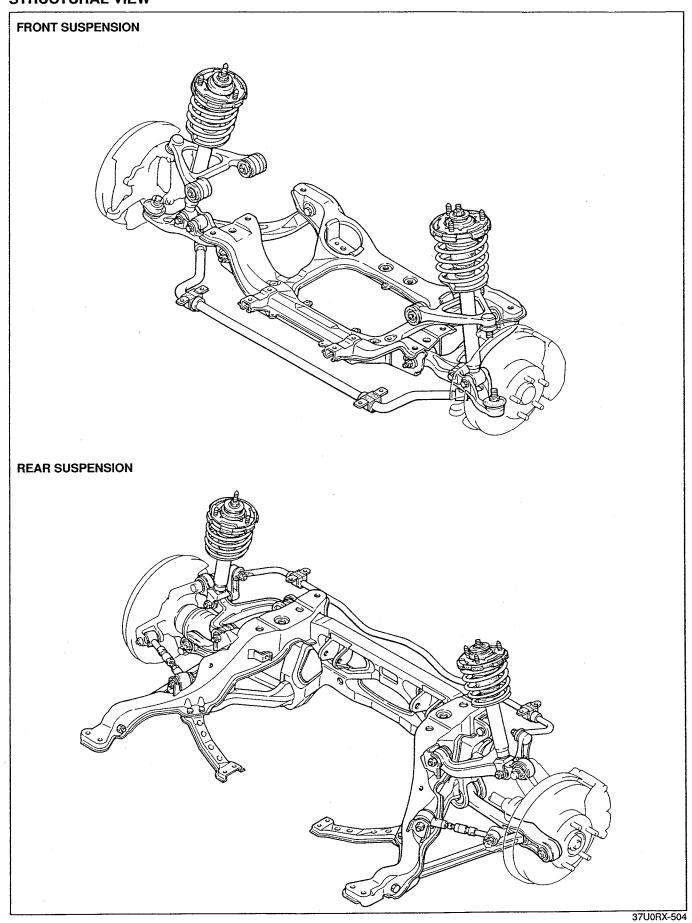
• Double-wishbone rear suspension that contains an aluminum-alloy Y-upper arm and a lower arm equipped with toe-control links is used. The lower arm consists of an I-arm and trailing link.

37U0RX-502

FEATURES



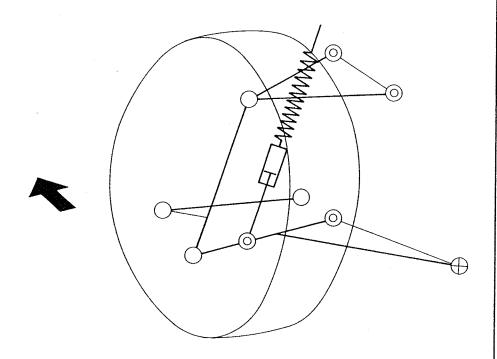
STRUCTURAL VIEW



SUSPENSION BUSHINGS

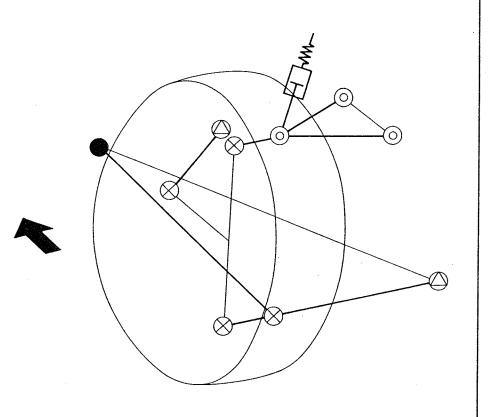
FRONT

- $\bigcirc \ \ \mathsf{BALL} \ \mathsf{JOINT}$
- ⊕ LIQUID-FILLED BUSHING



REAR

- (O) SLIDE BUSHING
- RUBBER BUSHING
- PILLOW BUSHING
- \otimes PILLOW BALL



37U0RX-505

SPECIFICATIONS

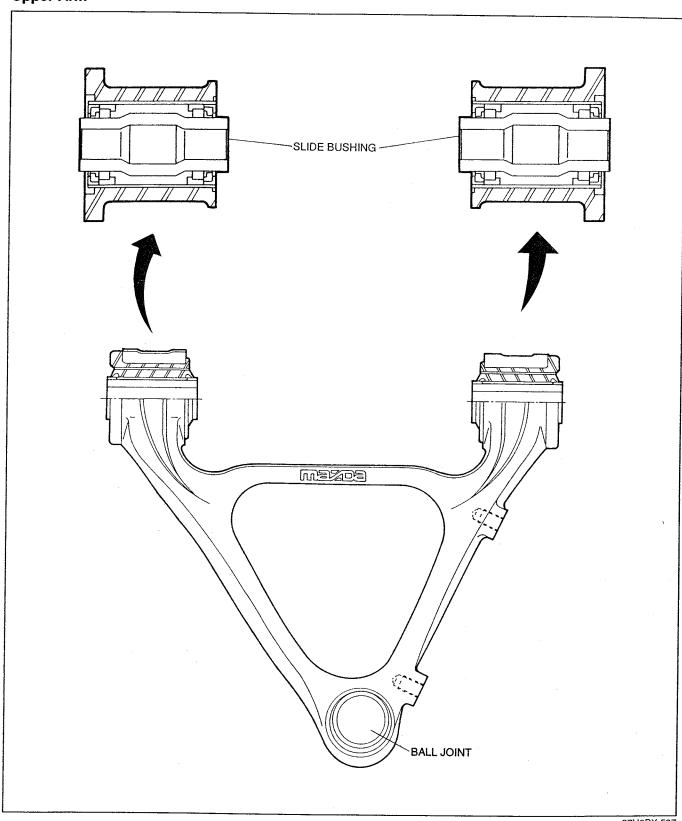
| Item | | Grade | BASE, TOURING | R1 | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---------|--|------------|--|
| Front susper | nsion | | | <u> </u> | |
| Suspension t | | 1 | Double- | wishbone | |
| | Identification mark color | | Blue | | |
| Coil spring | Wire diameter | mm (in) | 12.4 {0.49} | | |
| | Coil center diameter mm {in} | | 104.9 {4.130} | | |
| | Free length | mm (in) | 272.9 {10.74} | | |
| | Active coil number | | 4.27 | | |
| Shock absorb | per type | | Cylindrical, double-acting, low-pressure gas-charged | | |
| 0. 1.00 | Туре | | Torsion bar, hollow | | |
| Stabilizer | Diameter mm {in} | | 28.6 {1.13} | | |
| | Total toe-in | mm {in} | 1 ± 3 {0.0 | 04 ± 0.11} | |
| | Toe-in (per side) | degree | 0°03' ± 08'*3 | | |
| Front wheel | Maximum steering angle | Inner | 36° ± 2° | | |
| Alignment | degree Outer | | 32° ± 2° | | |
| (Unladen*1) | Camber angle*2 | degree | 0°05' ± 45' | | |
| · | Caster angle*2 | degree | 6°05′ ± 1° | | |
| | Kingpin angle | degree | 13°55' | | |
| Rear suspen | sion | | | | |
| Suspension t | ype | | Double- | wishbone | |
| | Identification mark color | | White | | |
| | Wire diameter | mm (in) | 12.2 {0.48} | | |
| Coil spring | Coil center diameter | mm (in) | 114.7 {4.516} | | |
| | Free length | mm {in} | 299.0 {11.77} | | |
| | Active coil number | | 4.21 | | |
| Shock absorber type | | | Cylindrical, double-acting, low-pressure gas-charged | | |
| 0: 1:" | Туре | | Torsion bar, hollow | | |
| Stabilizer | Diameter mm {in} | | 17.3 {0.68} | | |
| | Total toe-in mm {in} | | 2 ± 3 {0.08 ± 0.11} | | |
| Rear wheel alignment | Toe-in (per side) | degree | 0°05' ± 08'*3 | | |
| (Unladen*1) | Camber angle*2 degree | | −1°13' ± 45' | | |
| , , | Thrust angle | degree | 0° ± 06'*3 | | |

37U0RX-506

^{*}¹ Fuel tank full; radiator coolant and engine oil at specified levels; spare tire, jack, and tools in designated positions.
*² Difference between left and right must not exceed 1°.
*³ Indicates measurements made by using the 4-wheel alignment tester.

FRONT SUSPENSION

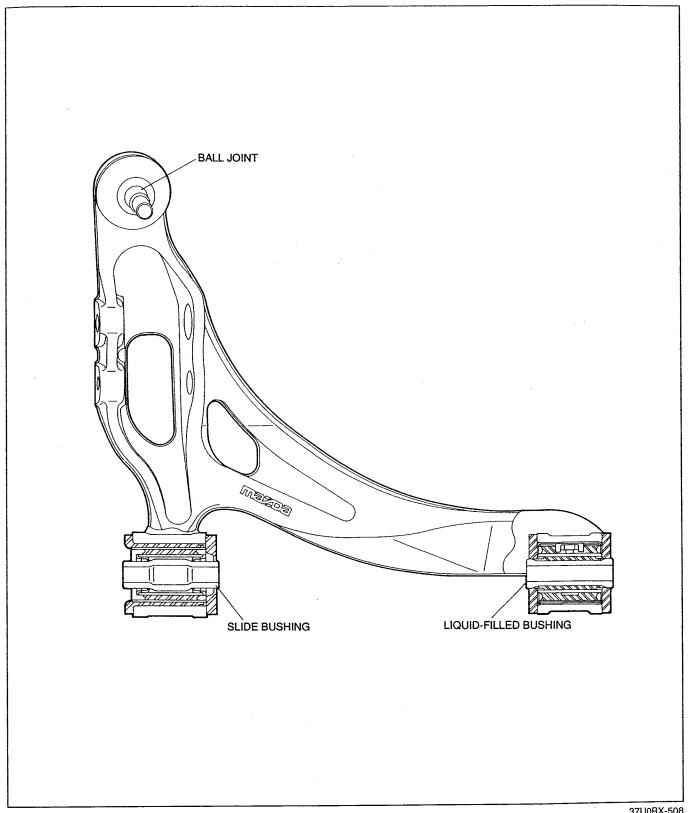
STRUCTURE Upper Arm



37U0RX-507

The aluminum-alloy upper arm reduces unsprung mass.
Sliding (free-rotation) upper arm bushings provide high camber and lateral rigidity with smooth arm movement.

Lower Arm



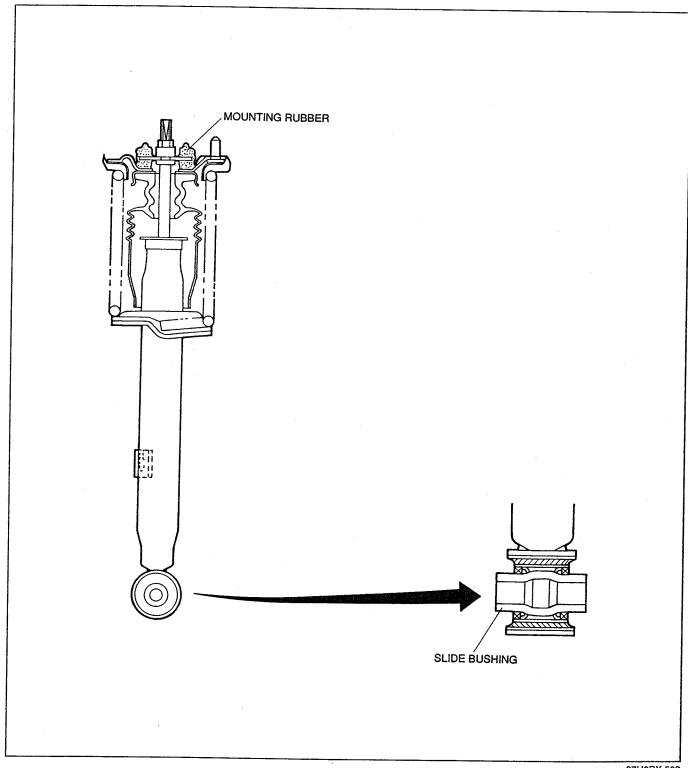
37U0RX-508

Like the upper arm, the lower arm is made of aluminum alloy to reduce unsprung mass.
Liquid-filled lower arm bushings reduce vibration and noise.

• Like the upper arm bushings, slide bushings are placed at the front portion of the lower arm to provide high camber and lateral rigidity with smooth arm movement.

• The front caster and camber can be adjusted by turning the adjusting cam bolts. (Refer to Workshop Manual.)

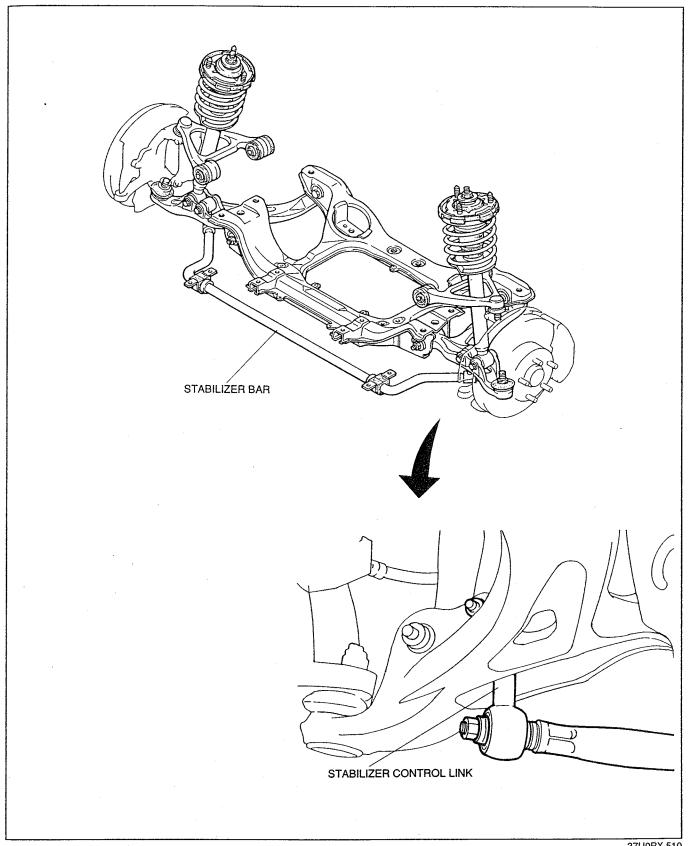
Shock Absorber and Spring



37U0RX-509

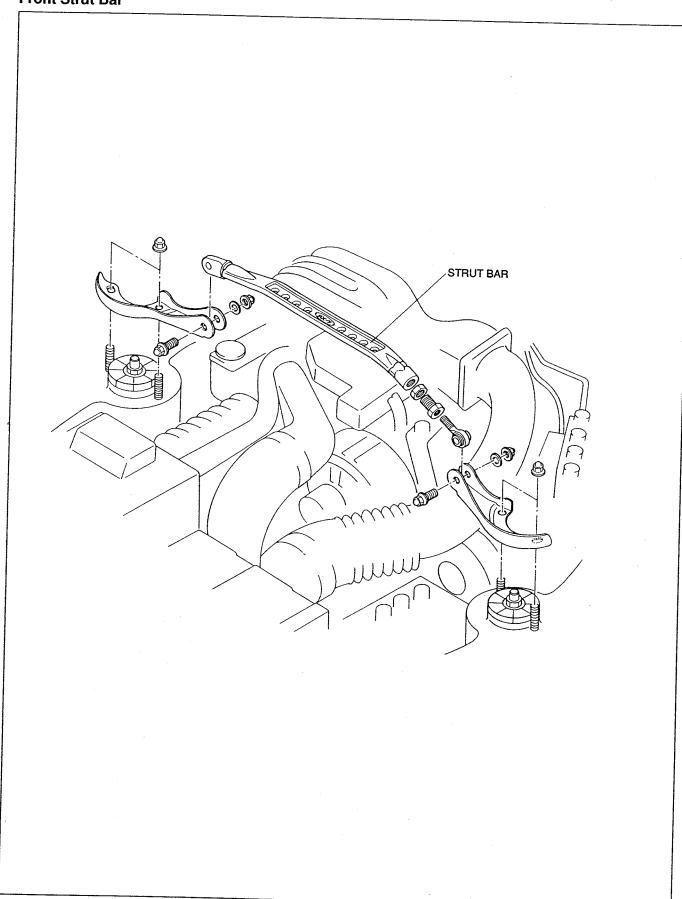
- A coil spring and low-pressure gas-charged shock absorber with double-acting cylinder were adopted. The low-pressure gas-charged shock absorber produces stable damping force without cavitation.
- The size and type of the coil spring and shock absorber vary depending on the characteristics of each model.
- Slide bushings have been adopted to slide the shock absorber smoothly.
- Shock absorbers tuned even to the lowest speed range are utilized.
- The mounting rubber absorbs shocks from the piston rods and springs separately to stifle road noise and reduce thrust shock.

Front Stabilizer



37U0RX-510

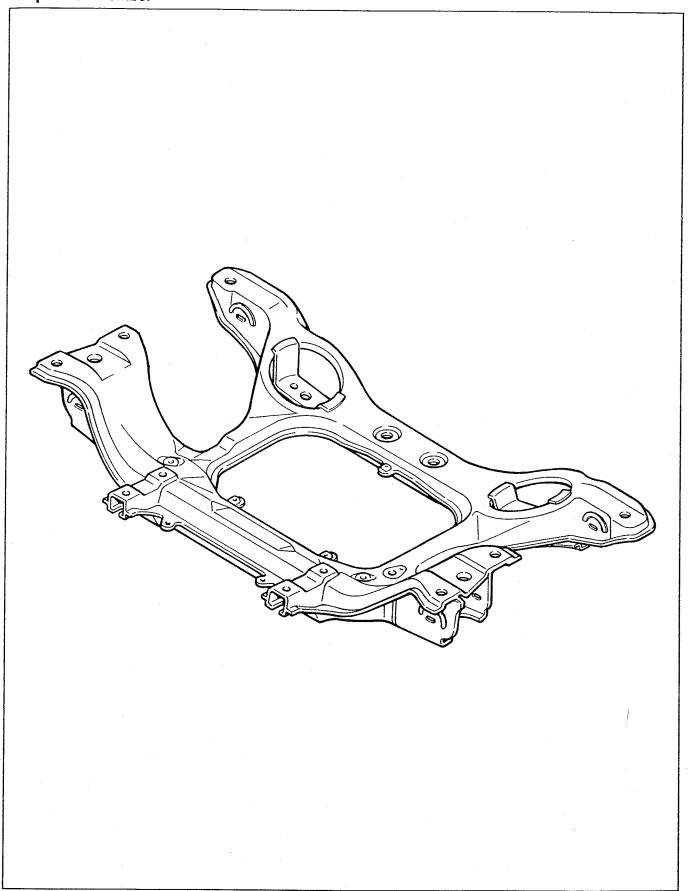
- A hollow torsion stabilizer bar has been adopted.
 The stabilizer bar is connected to lower arm with a control link.
- The control link passes through and connects the lower arm at a position giving good link efficiency. A high-rigidity pillow ball produces linear, smooth control.



37U0RX-511

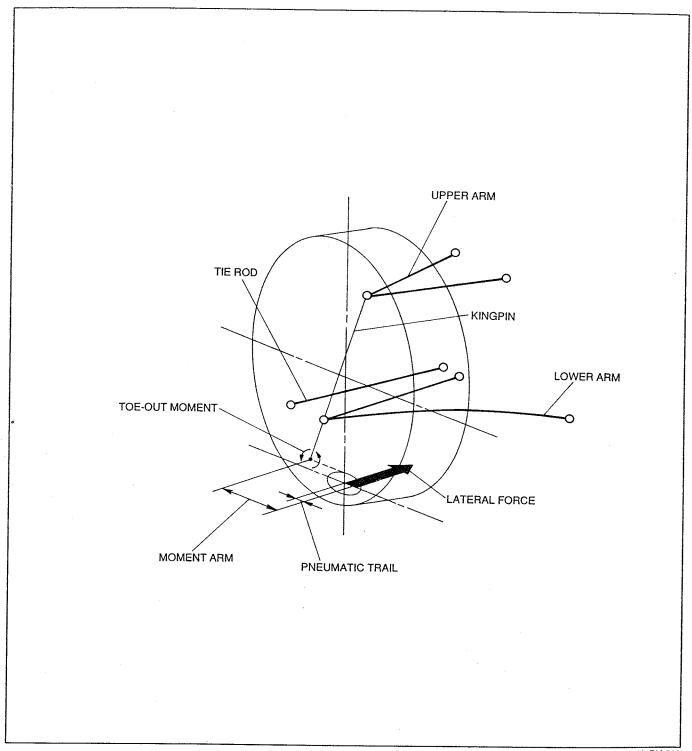
A strut bar is used in R1 vehicles to improve driving stability and merchantability.

Suspension Member



37U0RX-512

• An efficient layout that harmonizes with the vehicle frame improves rigidity and reduces weight.



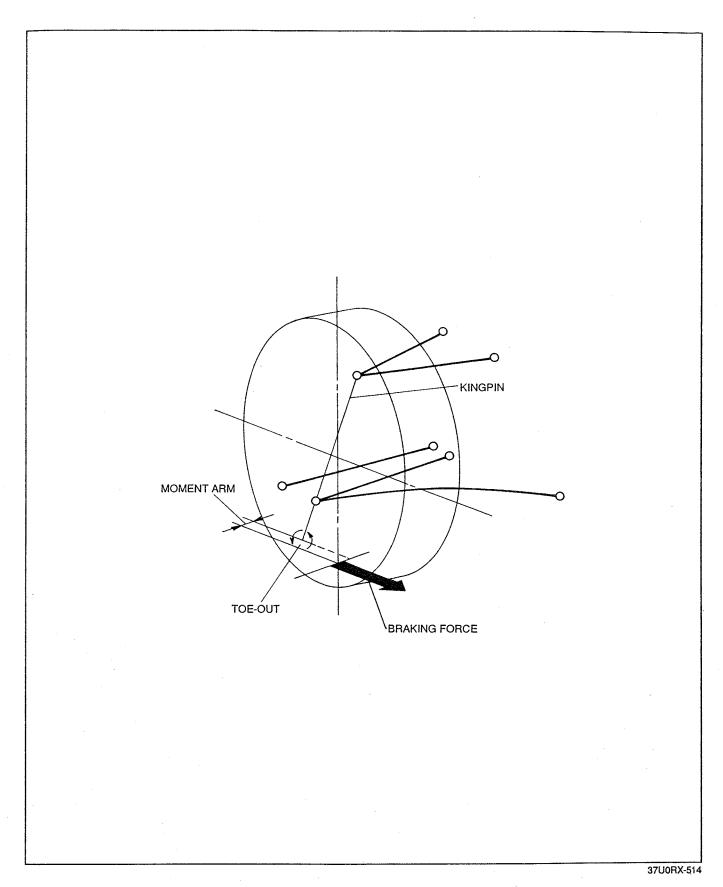
37U0RX-513

Cornering-generated lateral forces

· Lateral forces forme at a position slightly to the rear of the central point of contact between the tire and ground. This distance from the central point is called pneumatic trail. The kingpin, which is formed by the upper and lower arms, is forward of the point of lateral force. The lateral force created at the tire thus generates toe-out moment around the kingpin. An appropriate toe-out (roll steering) is generated by cornering roll after tuning the length and position of arm.

The lateral force is also transmitted from the upper and lower arms to the tie rod.

In the new RX-7, desirable toe-in steering is produced by optimizing suspension rigidity and deflection characteristics of the arm bushings. This alleviates the toe-out generated when cornering, thus adding stability for sharp driving performance.

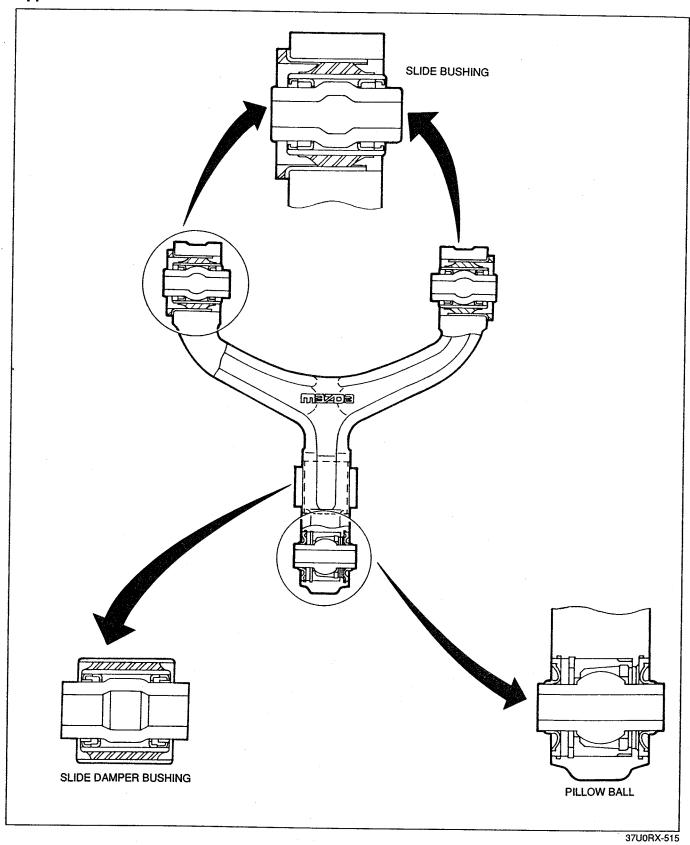


Braking force (foot brake)

Rearward braking force forms at the tire-and-ground contact point. In the new RX-7, toe-out moment
is generated during braking by setting the kingpin inside from the braking force.
The arm layout is appropriately designed so that during sudden braking with nose-dive, further toeout moment is generated. This ensures reliable stability during braking.

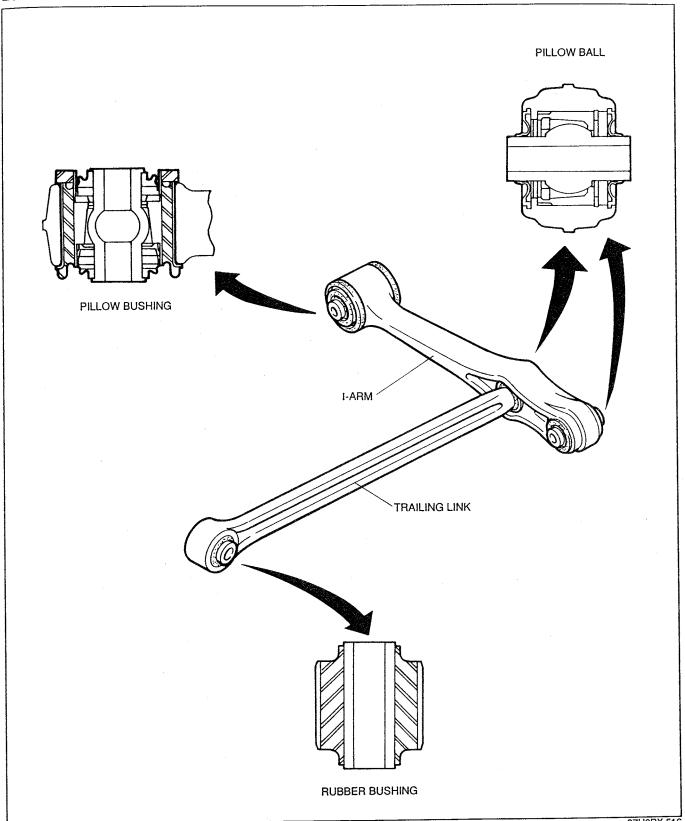
REAR SUSPENSION

STRUCTURE Upper Arm



An aluminum-alloy, Y-upper arm reduces unsprung mass.
Slide upper arm bushings give high camber rigidity and lateral rigidity with smooth arm movement.

Lower Arm

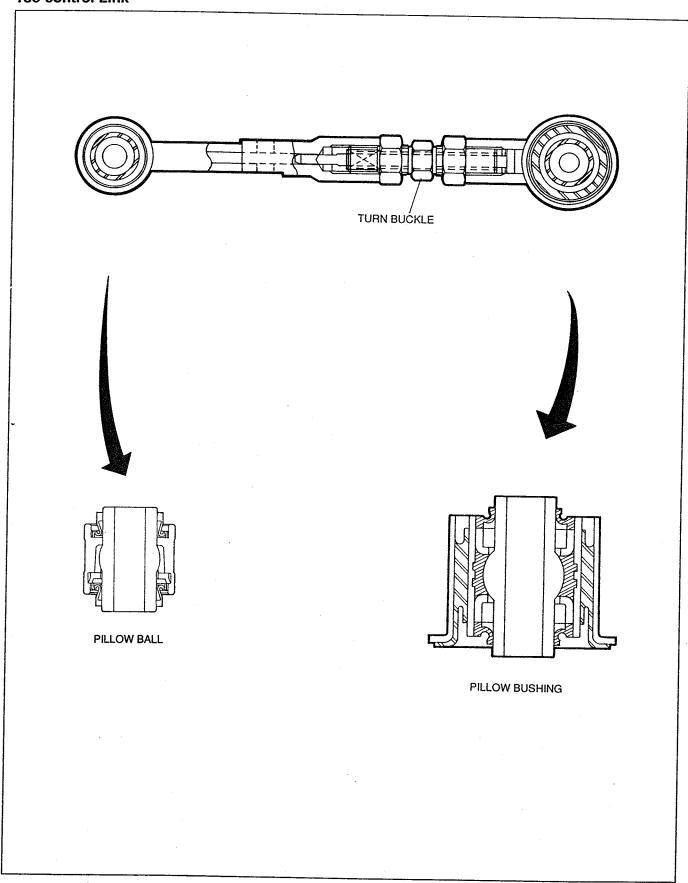


37U0RX-516

• The lower arm comprises an I-arm and trailing link.

The I-arms have pillow bushings on the members and pillow balls on the hub.

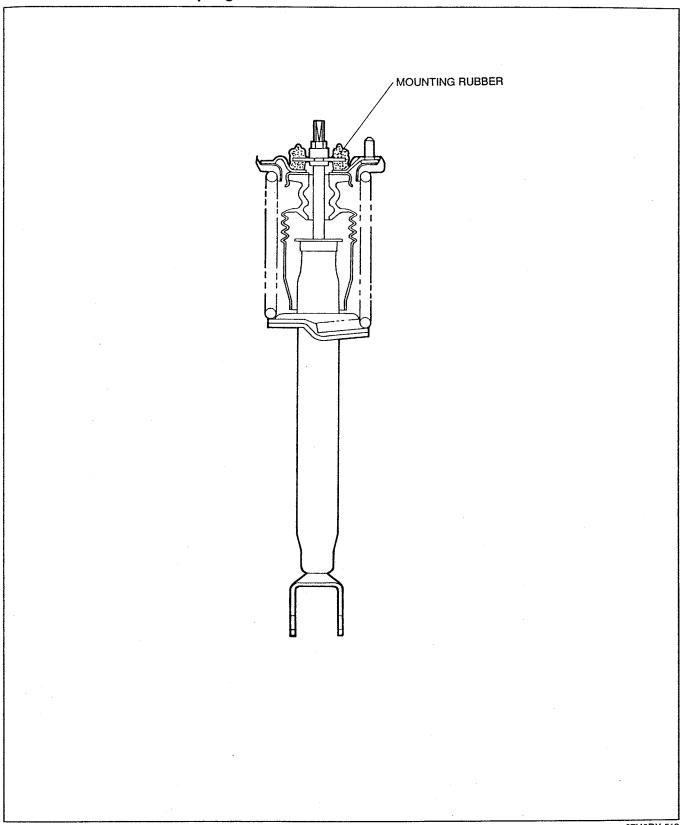
• The trailing links have pillow balls on the I-arms and rubber bushings on the members, thus optimizing compliance with driving and braking forces to improve vehicle grounding and drive comfort.



37U0RX-517

Pillow bushings and pillow balls add high lateral rigidity and toe rigidity with smooth arm movement.
The rear toe-in can be adjusted by rotating the turnbuckle.

Rear Shock Absorber and Spring



37U0RX-518

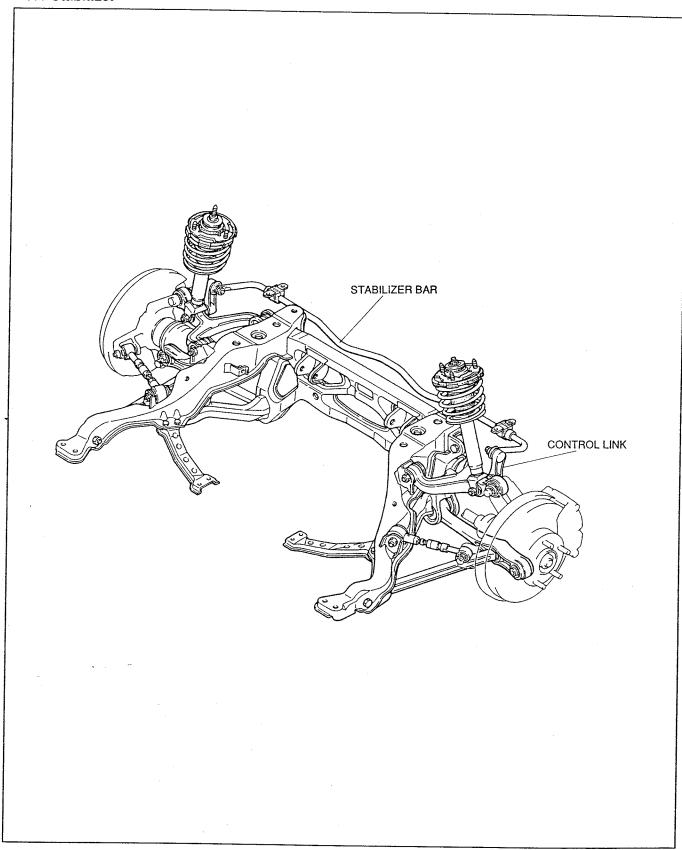
- · As in the front, coil spring and low pressure gas-charged shock absorbers with double-acting cylinders are used.

- Slide damper bushings are also used.

 The shock absorbers are tuned even to the lowest speed range.

 The mounting rubber absorbs shocks from the piston rods and springs separately.

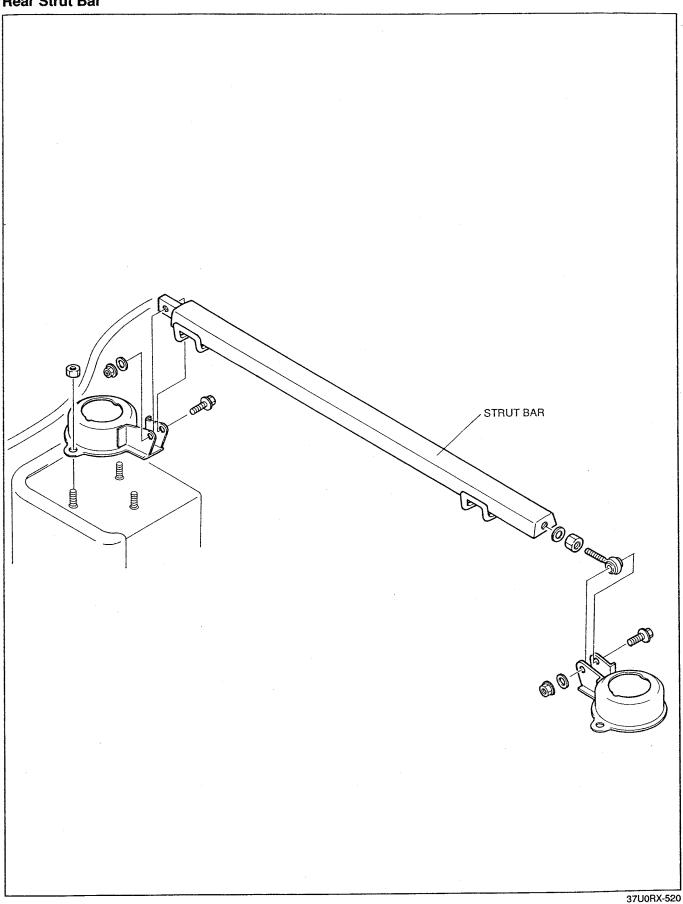
Rear Stabilizer



37U0RX-519

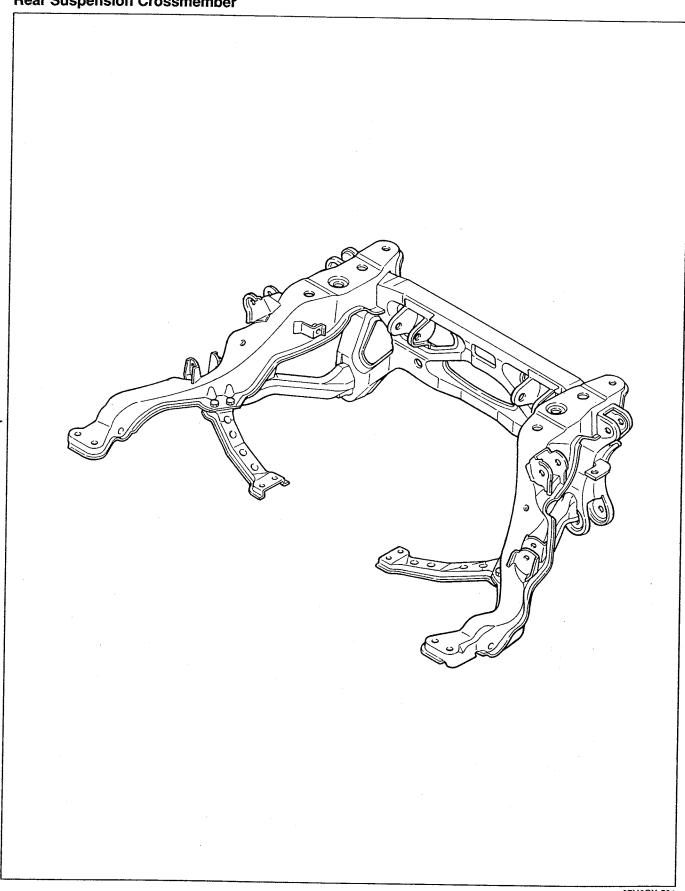
A hollow torsion stabilizer bar was adopted.
A resinous control link connects the stabilizer bar to the upper arm.
Ball joint integrated with a bolt at the damper bottom is used for the control link to ensure effective stability and reduce vehicle weight.

Rear Strut Bar



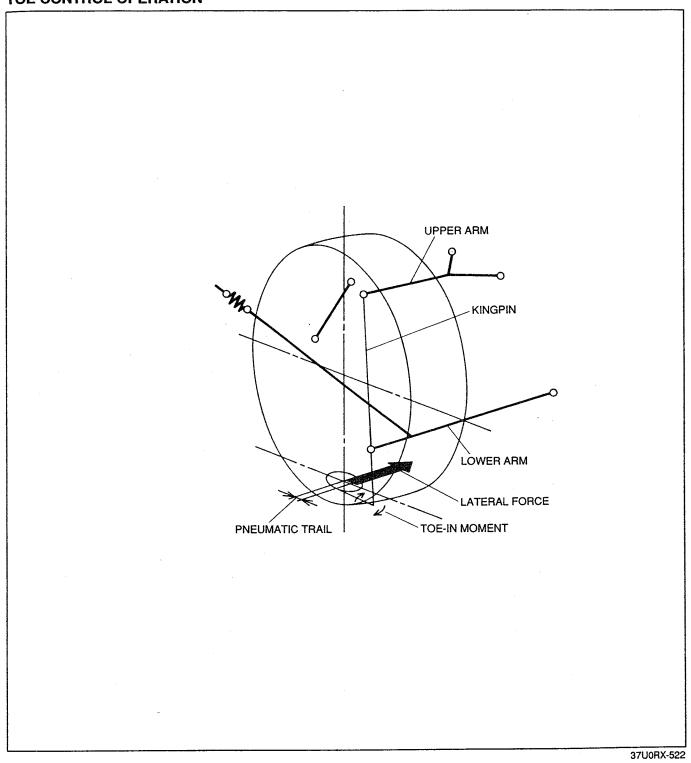
• The strut bar improves driving stability.





37U0SX-521

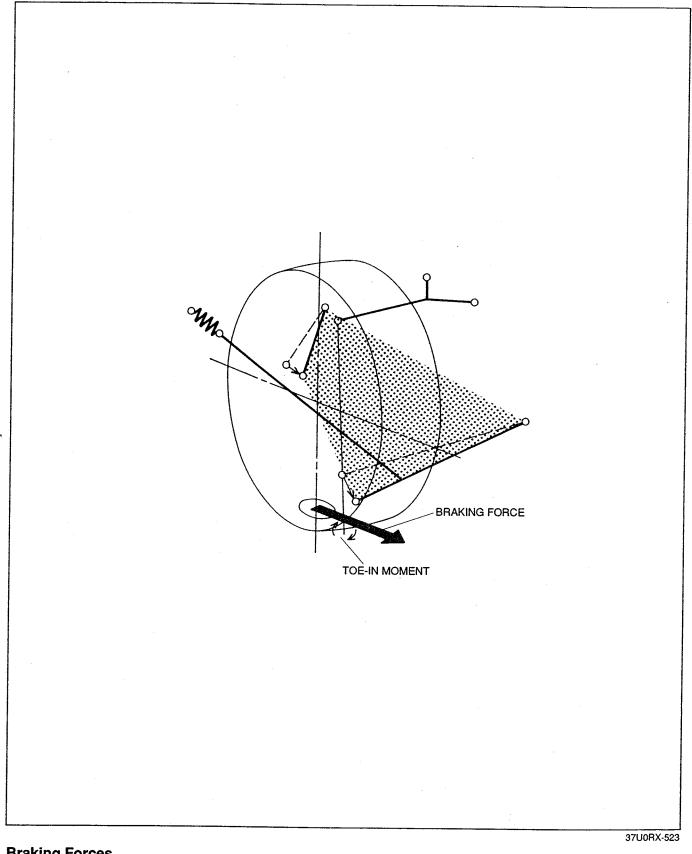
A space-frame truss rear suspension crossmember efficiently supports the monocoque body, providing high rigidity for the suspension.



Cornering-generated Lateral Forces

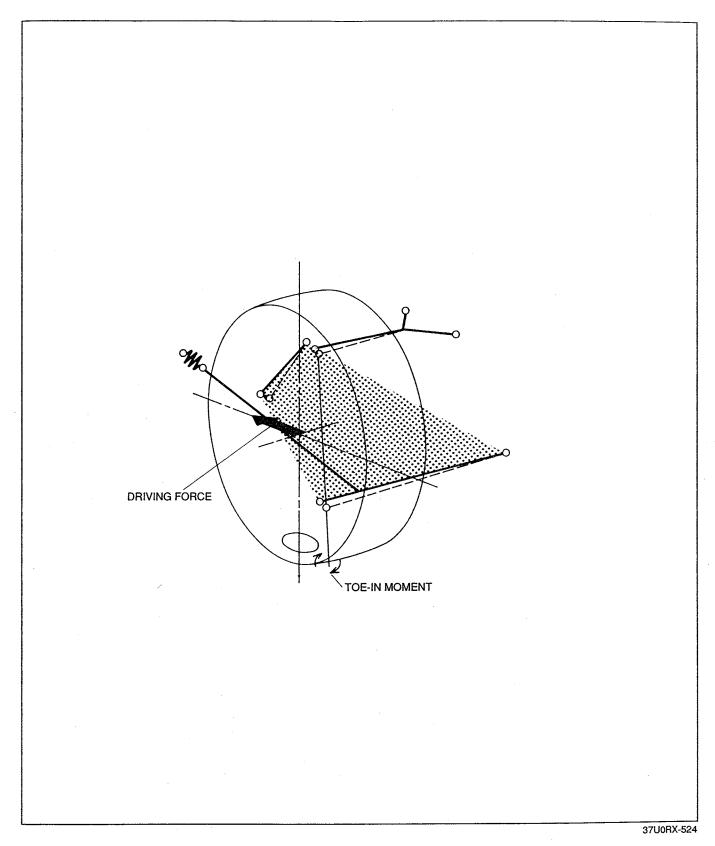
 Lateral force forms at a position slightly to the rear of the central point of contact between the tire and ground. This distance between the point of lateral force action and the point of contact between the tire and ground is called the pneumatic trail. The kingpin, which is formed by the ball joints of the upper and lower arms, is rearward of the point of lateral force. The lateral force created at the tire thus generates toe-in moment around the kingpin.

The lateral force is also transmitted from the upper and lower arms to the toe control link. In the new RX-7, desirable toe-out steering is produced by adjusting the fulcrum positioning of the arms and links and optimizing the deflection characteristics of the bushings. This alleviates the toe-in moment generated at the kingpin, thus adding cornering stability for sharp driving performance.



Braking Forces

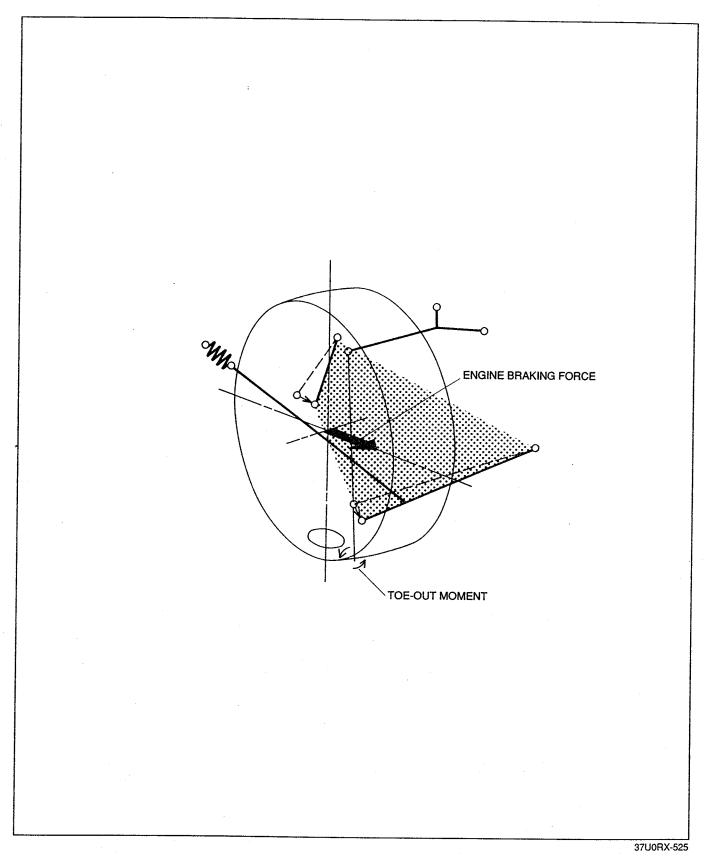
 Rearward braking force forms at the tire-and-ground contact point. In the new RX-7, toe-in moment
is generated during braking by setting the kingpin outside the point of the braking force.
The effect of the trapezoidal link formed by the lower arm and toe control link produces a toe-in steering component with a slight rearward movement of the tire during braking. This ensures reliable stability when braking.



Driving Forces

• Rearward driving forces are generated at the wheel center. In the new RX-7, toe-in moment is generated when driving by setting the kingpin inside the point of braking force.

The effect of the trapezoidal link formed by the lower arm and toe control link produces a toe-out steering component with a slight forward movement of the tire during driving. This alleviates the toe-in moment generated at the kingpin. As a result, stable performance is obtained when driving straight as well as when slightly accelerating around corners.



Engine Braking Forces

Rearward engine braking forces are generated at the wheel centers. Toe-out moment is generated around the kingpin by such component force. The trapezoidal link effect produces a toe-in steering component, the opposite of that generated by driving force.
 In the new RX-7, this alleviates toe-in moment generated at the kingpin. As a result, stable performance is obtained when driving straight as well as during slight engine braking.

BODY

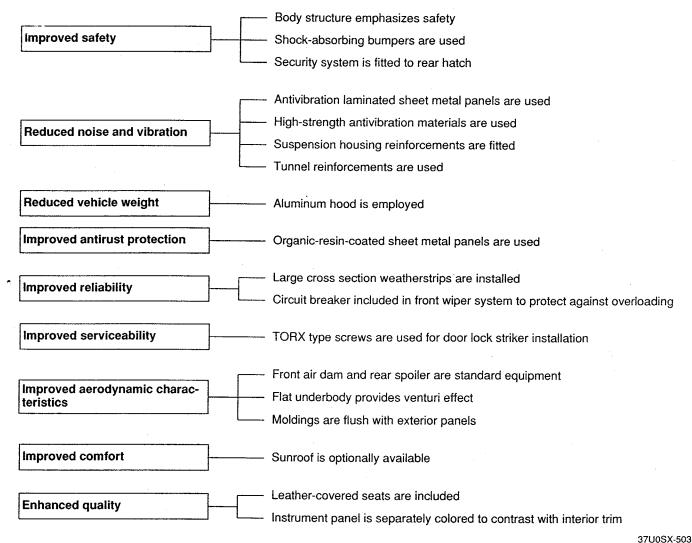
| OUTLINE | S- | 2 |
|----------------------------------|-----|---|
| FEATURES | S- | 2 |
| BODY STRUCTURE | S- | 4 |
| DOOR STRIKER SCREWS | S-1 | 0 |
| HOOD | S-1 | 1 |
| HOODTUNNEL REINFORCEMENT MEMBERS | S-1 | 1 |
| WEATHERSTRIP | S-1 | 2 |
| REAR HATCH | S-1 | 3 |
| REAR HATCH GLASS | S-1 | 3 |
| BUMPERS | S-1 | 4 |
| AIR DEFLECTORS | S-1 | 5 |
| MOLDING | S-1 | 6 |
| DOOR GLASS | S-1 | 6 |
| POWER OUTSIDE MIRRORS | | |
| WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHER | | |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | S-1 | 8 |
| REAR WIPER AND WASHER | | |
| HEADLIGHT CLEANER | | |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | | |
| SLIDING SUNROOF | S-2 | 8 |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | S-2 | 8 |
| POWER DOOR LOCK SYSTEM | S-3 | 5 |
| OUTLINE | S-3 | 5 |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | S-3 | 5 |
| POWER WINDOW SYSTEM | S-3 | 8 |
| OUTLINE | S-3 | 8 |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | S-3 | 8 |
| SECURITY MEASURES | S-4 | 2 |
| OUTLINE | | |
| DASHBOARD | | |
| TRIM | | |
| SEATS | | |
| SEAT BELTS | | |

OUTLINE

- An efficient structural design and widely used, high-strength sheet metal panels produce a light and rigid body structure.
- The wide use of rustproof sheet metal panels improves antirust protection.
- · A streamlined body with flush exterior panels lowers the coefficient of drag.

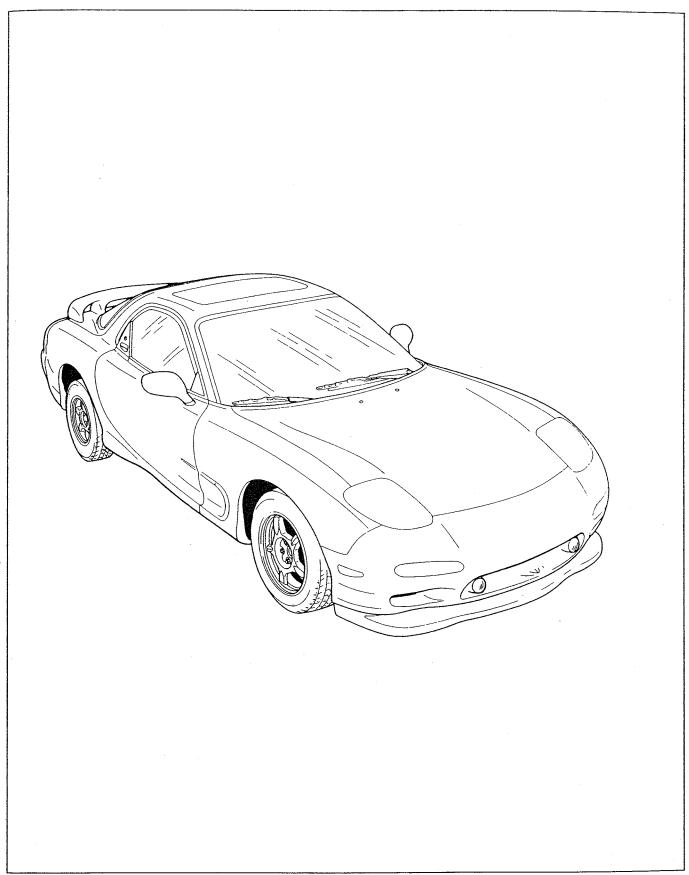
37U0SX-502

FEATURES



0,000,000

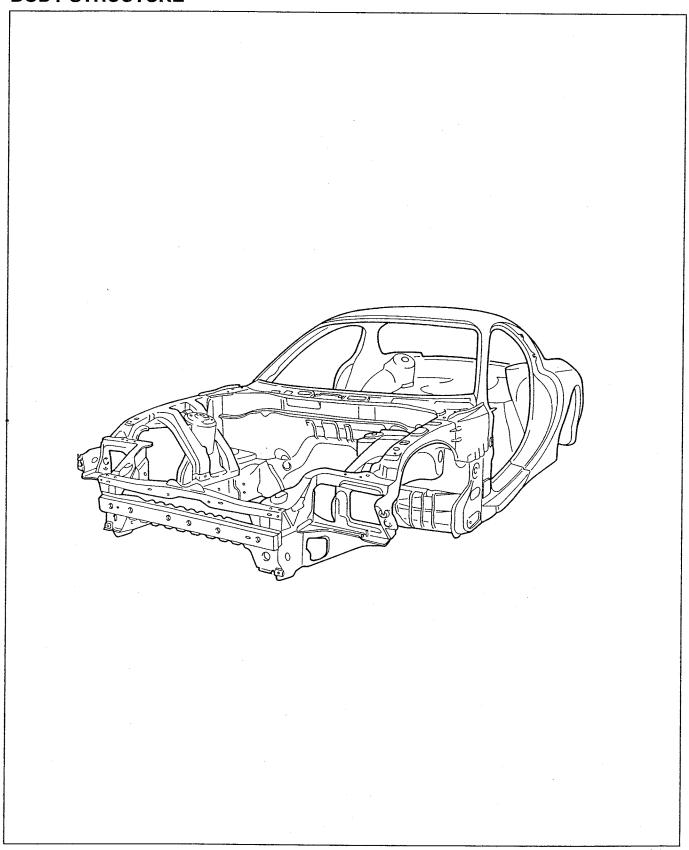
External View



37U0SX-504

• The body is superbly proportioned with a short, low nose and a wide, low configuration, made possible by the use of a compact rotary engine. The result is a unique, original sports car look.

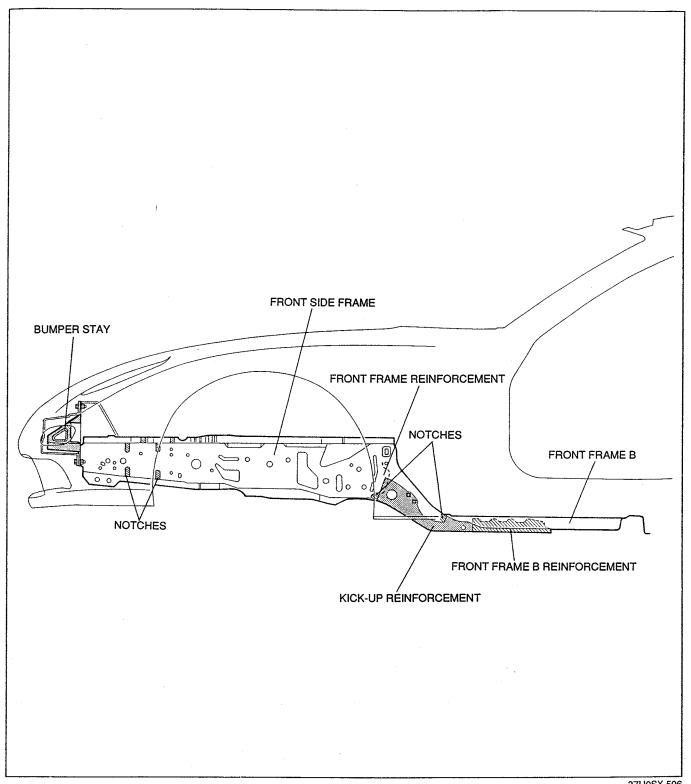
BODY STRUCTURE



- To reduce vehicle weight while maintaining rigidity, high-tension sheet metal panels are used through-
- out the body.

 To ensure user safety, the front frame is built with an enlarged cross section and a rear center frame is adopted to absorb the shock of a collision.

Head-on Collision Protection



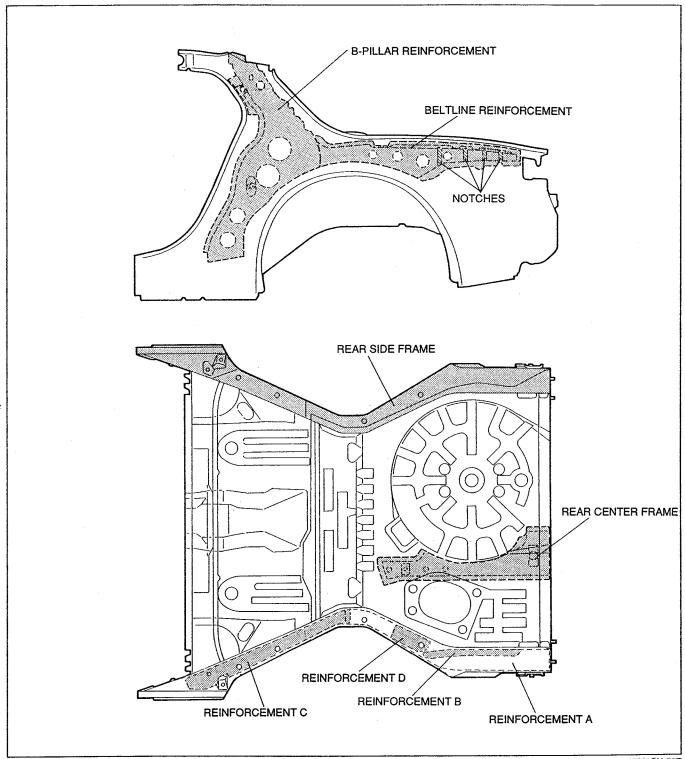
· A bumper stay is incorporated in the front side frame to absorb the initial impact of a head-on collision and reduce shock to the passenger compartment.

The cross section of the front side frame is enlarged to improve its shock absorption efficiency.

• The front side frame is made with stress notches at the front section and on the kick-up section. These notches encourage controlled collapsing in a collision to absorb and reduce shock to the passenger compartment.

• For improved rigidity, reinforcements are added to the front side frame kick-up section and to the joint of the front side frame and front frame B section.

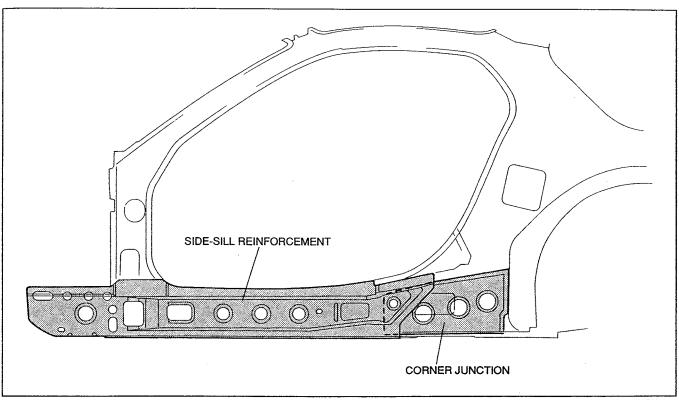
Rear Collision Protection



37U0SX-507

- A rear center frame fits parallel to the rear side frame to improve rear collision protection.
- The beltline reinforcement has stress notches that collapse in a rear collision to absorb shock. The B-pillar reinforcement receives and reduces shock from the beltline reinforcement for increased protection of the passenger compartment and doors.
- Reinforcements A, B, and D are attached to the rear side frame to control shock in a rear collision and protect the fuel tank.
- Frame reinforcement C is added to the rear side frame kick-up section for increased protection of the passenger compartment and doors.

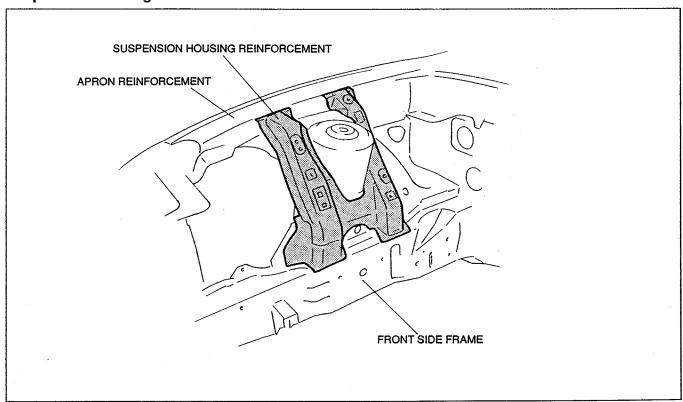
Side Collision Protection



37U0SX-508

• The sides of the vehicle are strengthened with side-sill reinforcement and a corner junction for increased protection in a side collision.

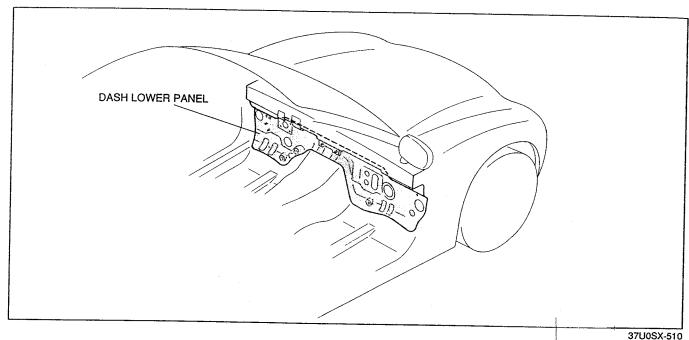
Suspension Housing Reinforcement



37U0SX-509

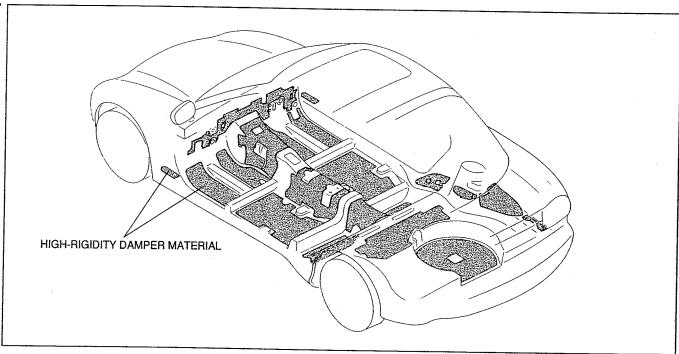
• An extremely strong and rigid structure is achieved by using a reinforcement at the front side frame and apron reinforcement of the front suspension tower.

Antivibration Laminated Steel Plate



 To reduce vibration and improve soundproofing, an antivibration laminated steel plate is used for the dash lower panel. This three-part laminated steel plate features a resin filler between two steel panels.

Antivibration Materials

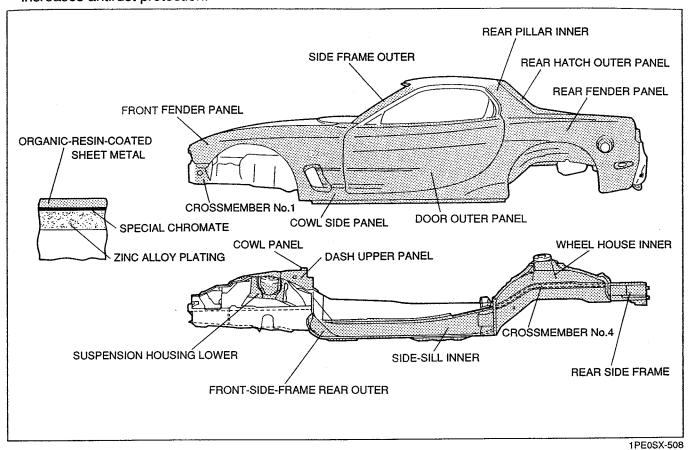


37U0SX-511

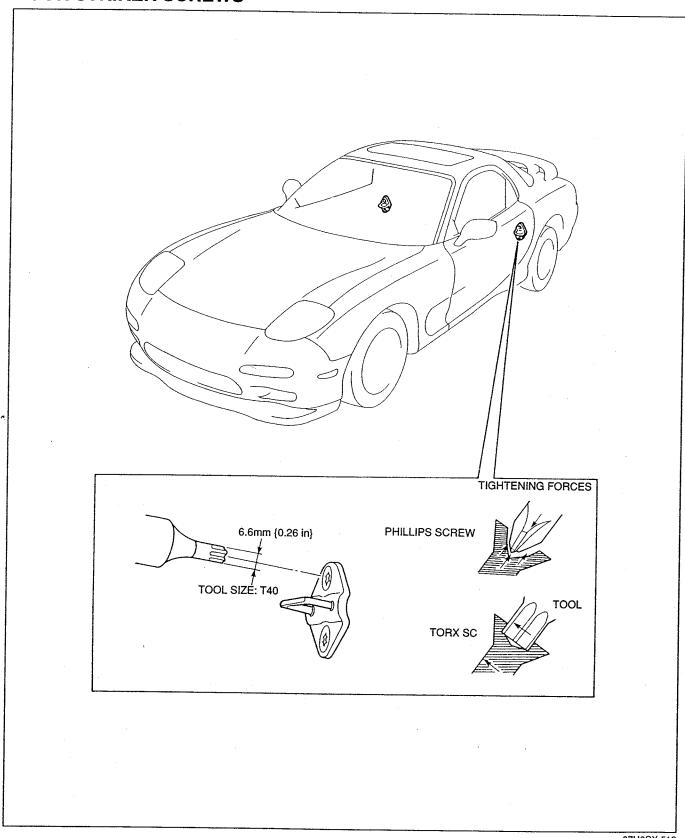
- Antivibration, soundproofing materials are fitted in the following locations:
 - Lower dash panel
 - Front floor pan
 - Center floor panRear floor pan
 - Hear floor pan
 Trunk floor pan
- A newly developed, high-strength antivibration material is used for the lower dash panel and floor area. This material is more than twice as effective as previous types in reducing vibration and noise. Yet, because it is light, the overall weight of the vehicle is reduced.

Organic-Resin-Coated Sheet Metal

• This metal, coated with organic resin over an electrogalvanized or nickel-alloy-plated coating, greatly increases antirust protection.



DOOR STRIKER SCREWS



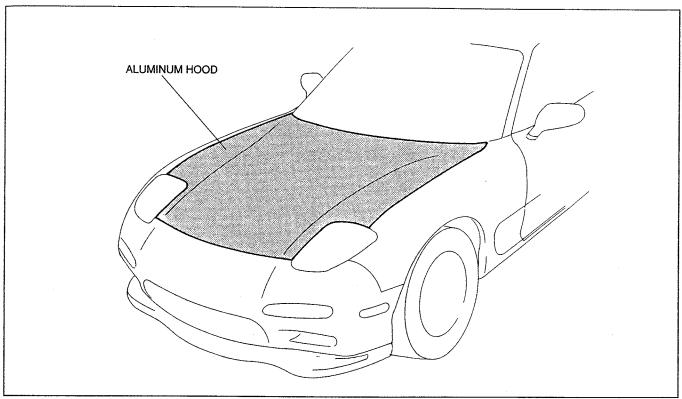
37U0SX-512

• The door strikers are installed with TORX type screws that improve initial assembly and serviceability.

Features

 The torque of the TORX tool is more efficiently transmitted to the screw, lessening the chance of the screw head "rounding out."

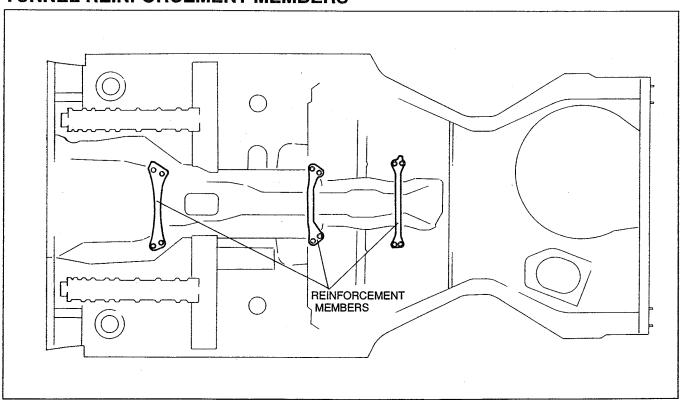
HOOD



37U0SX-513

- An aluminum hood is adopted to reduce vehicle weight.Hood insulation is used to insulate and soundproof the engine compartment.

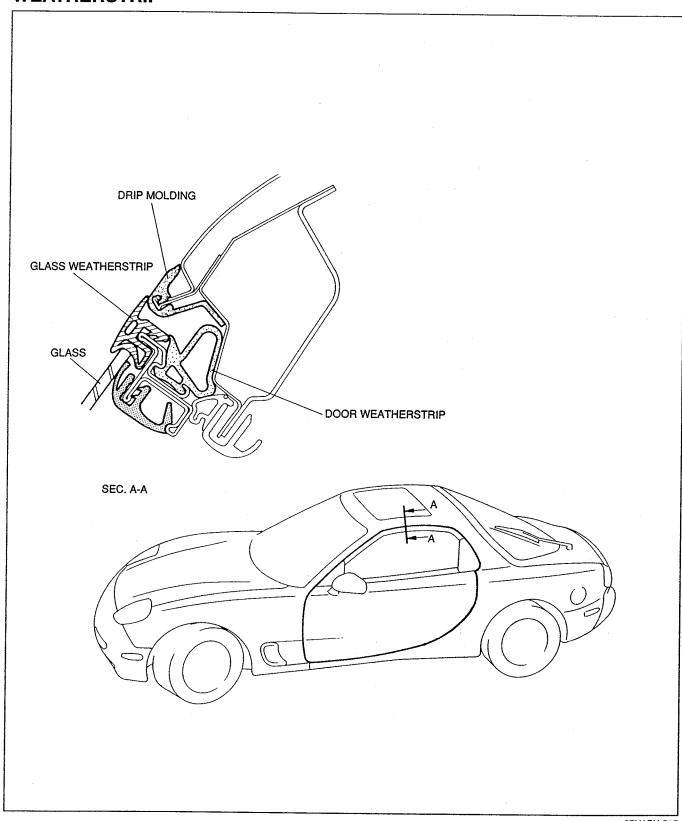
TUNNEL REINFORCEMENT MEMBERS



37U0SX-514

• Three aluminum tunnel-reinforcing members are fitted to the drivetrain tunnel to improve rigidity of the body and to reduce noise and vibration.

WEATHERSTRIP

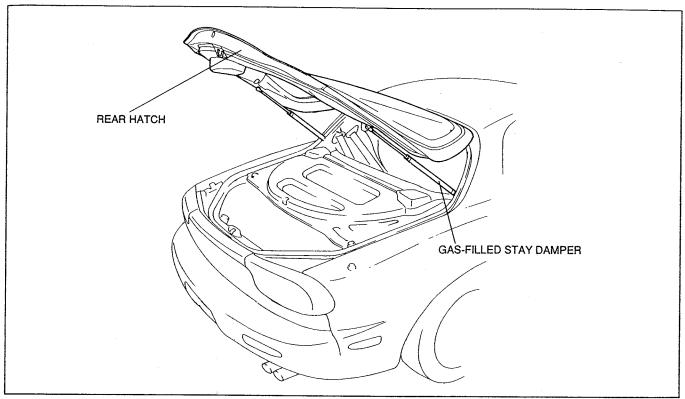


37U0SX-515

Door Weatherstrip

- The door sash and the door glass are installed as flush as possible to reduce air drag and wind noise during cruising.
- Large cross-section weatherstrip is used to effectively control water leakage and wind noise by filling the gap between the door and the body structure.
 Glass weatherstrip is provided between the drip molding and the sash to provide superior sealing.

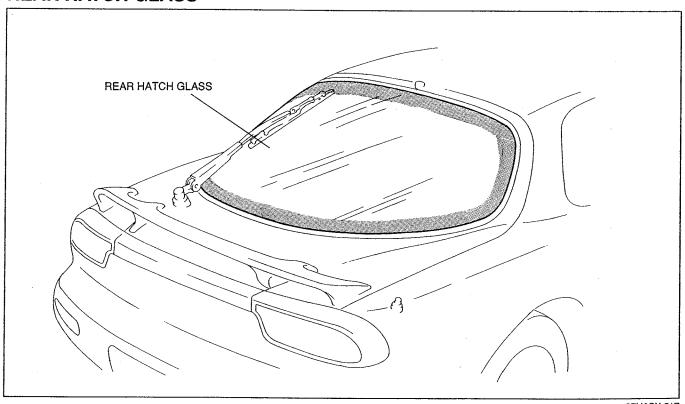
REAR HATCH



37U0SX-516

 Gas-filled stay dampers are used on the rear hatch to make opening and closing easier and smoother.

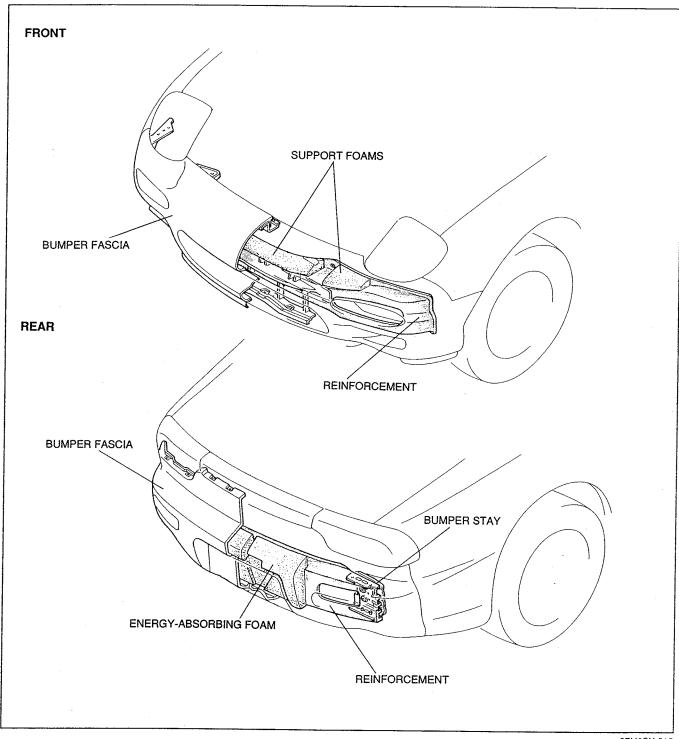
REAR HATCH GLASS



37U0SX-517

• The multicurved rear hatch glass is manufactured by the press-bend method. This intricately styled glass contributes to the overall aerodynamics of the vehicle.

BUMPERS



37U0SX-518

• Large, lightweight, body-colored bumpers are used at the front and rear.

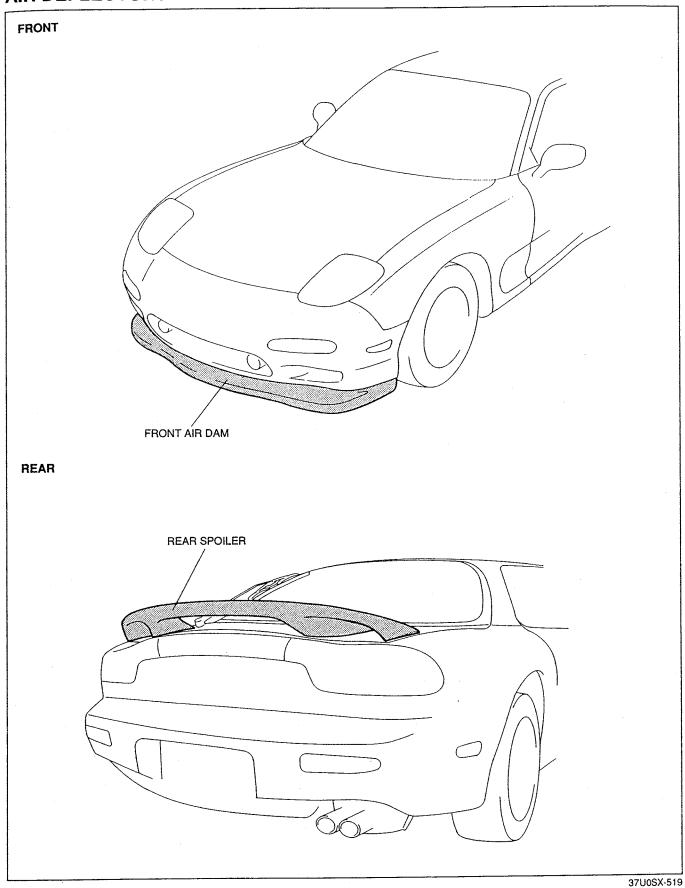
Front Bumper

- The bumper fascia is made of urethane, which has a smooth finish, for an improved appearance.
- Highly tenacious reinforced resin is mixed with glass fiber for use as front bumper reinforcement.
 This greatly increases the shock absorbing capacity of the bumper and improves safety.
- All set plates and brackets are made from aluminum to reduce vehicle weight.

Rear Bumper

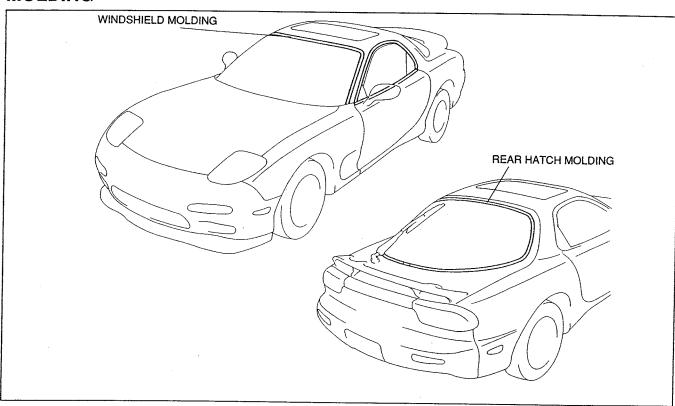
An aluminum bumper reinforcement with a large cross section is used, increasing safety and lowering weight.

AIR DEFLECTORS



• A front air dam and a rear spoiler enhance appearance and improve vehicle aerodynamics and stability during high-speed driving.

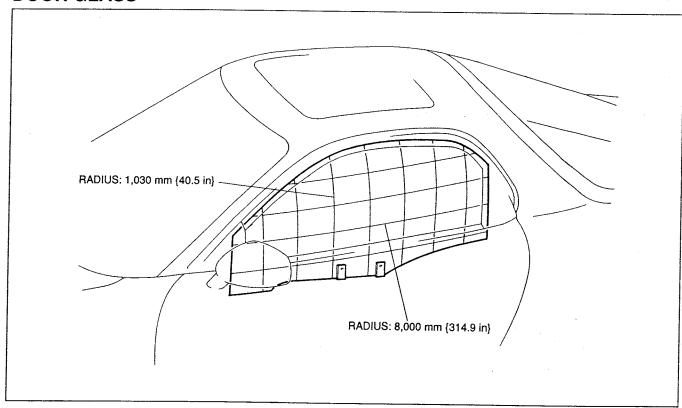
MOLDING



37U0SX-520

* Flush moldings on the windshield and rear hatch window minimize the gap between the glass and body panels, adding to the vehicle's smoothness.

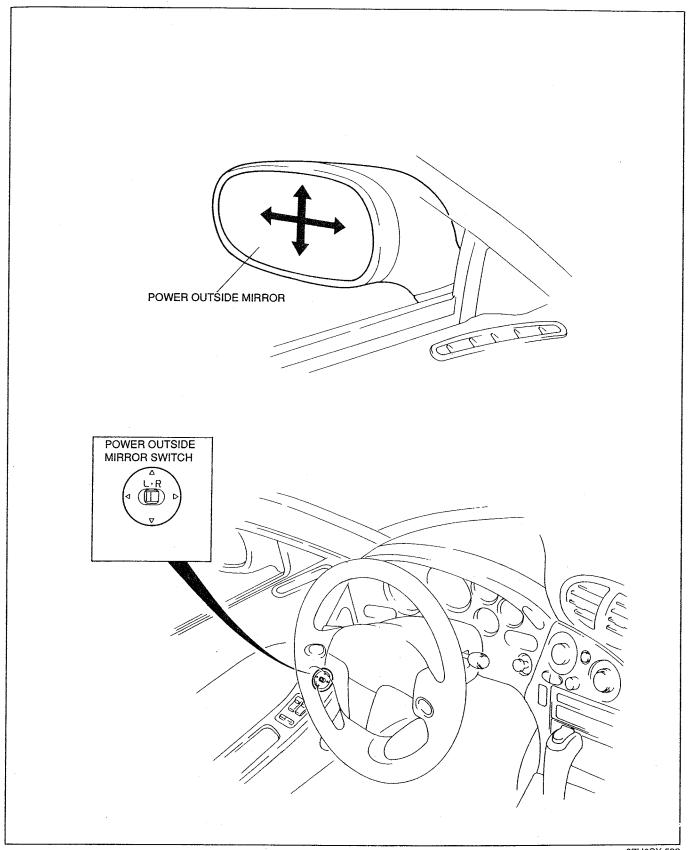
DOOR GLASS



37U0SX-521

Three-dimensionally curved door glass (vertical: R 1,030 mm {40.5 in}, horizontal: R 8,000 mm {314.9 in} helps the vehicle to achieve superior aerodynamics.

POWER OUTSIDE MIRRORS

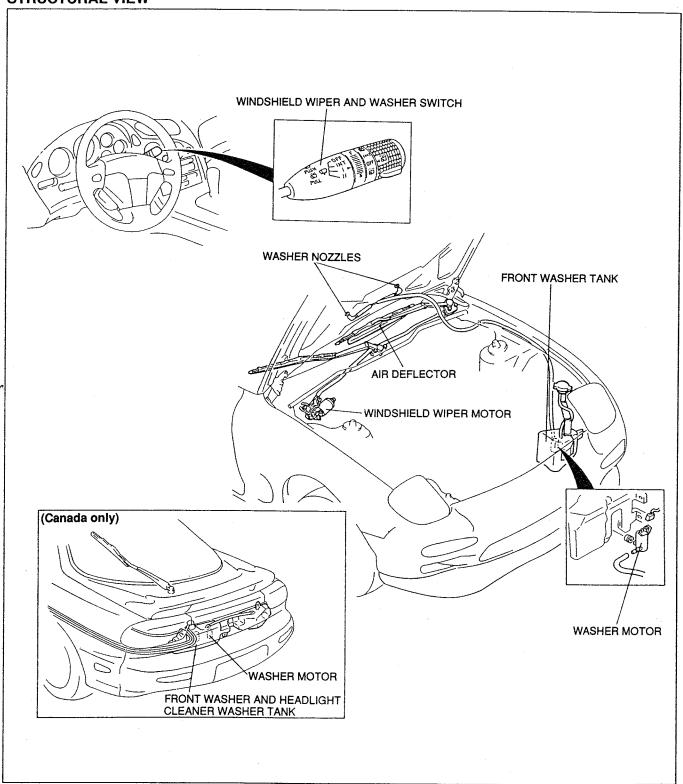


37U0SX-522

- The door-mounted mirrors are styled to match the body configuration for improved aerodynamics and appearance.
- Power outside mirrors are standard equipment on all models for added convenience.

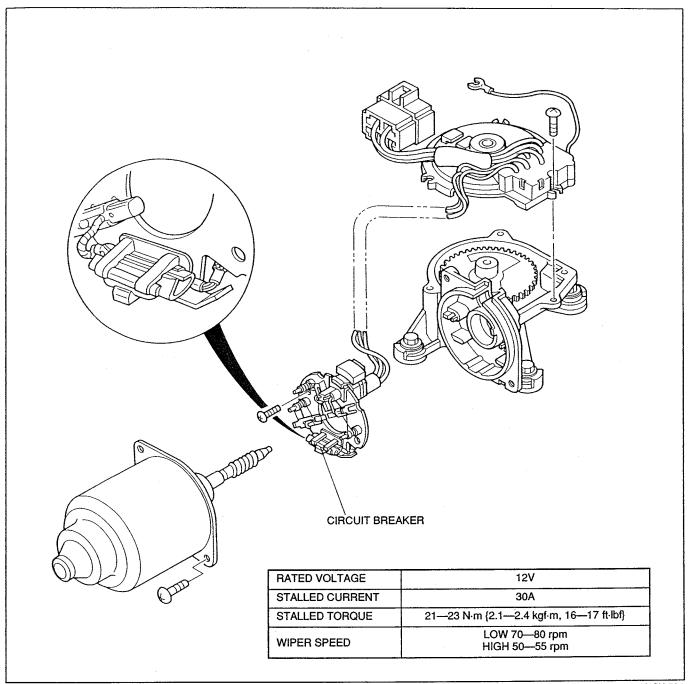
WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHER

STRUCTURAL VIEW



- Semiconcealed wipers with one-touch operation and adjustable intermittent operation functions are used for improved marketability.
- An air deflector is fitted to the driver-side wiper blade to prevent it from lifting during high-speed driving.
- Two dual-jet washer nozzles are employed to improve washer performance.

 A syringe-type washer level gauge is incorporated in the front washer tank cap for convenience.



37U0SX-524

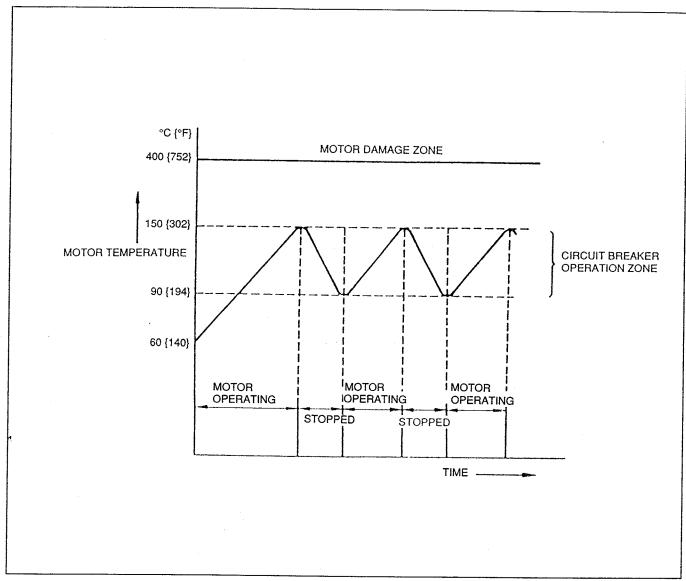
The windshield wiper motor contains a built-in circuit breaker for protection.

Circuit breaker purpose

- Prevents wiper motor damage if the motor is prevented from turning, such as when the wiper blades are frozen to the windshield or there is an excessive buildup of snow.
- Prevents excessive wiper motor temperature rise when the wipers are operated under heavy load conditions, such as heavy snowfall.

Circuit breaker operation

- The internal circuit is opened to stop the motor if the motor temperature exceeds approximately 150°C (302°F).
- The circuit breaker automatically resets and the motor again operates when the temperature drops below approximately 90°C {194°F}.



37LI0SX-525

Note

- During heavy load conditions (heavy snowfall, etc.), the circuit breaker may open and momentarily stop operation of the wipers. They will operate again when the circuit breaker resets itself.
- Wiper blades sometimes stick to the glass when left unused for a long period. If the wiper switch is switched ON in that condition, there will be an excessive flow of current to the wiper motor, possibly causing wiper motor damage. To prevent such an occurrence, the circuit breaker opens to protect the motor and circuit.
- If the wiper switch is turned OFF while the circuit breaker is open, the wipers will automatically return to the park position when the circuit breaker resets.

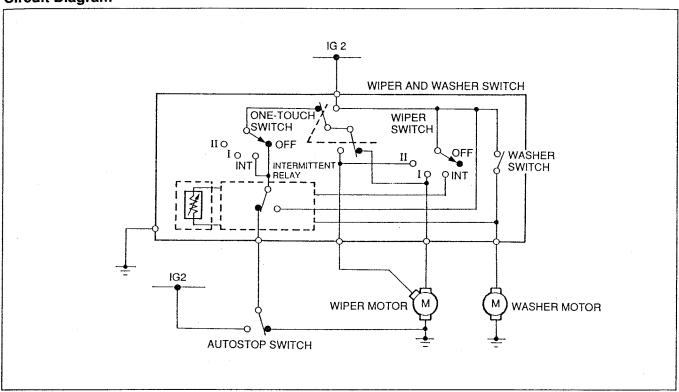
If wiper motor stops

- If the wiper motor stops while the vehicle is in motion, carefully guide the vehicle to the side of the road and stop. Turn OFF the wiper switch.
- After approximately 5 minutes, turn the wiper switch ON to verify wiper operation. If the wipers operate, the wiper motor is functioning correctly (circuit breaker opened momentarily).
- If the wiper motor does not operate, check the wiper motor circuit. (Refer to the workshop manual.)

Breaker replacement

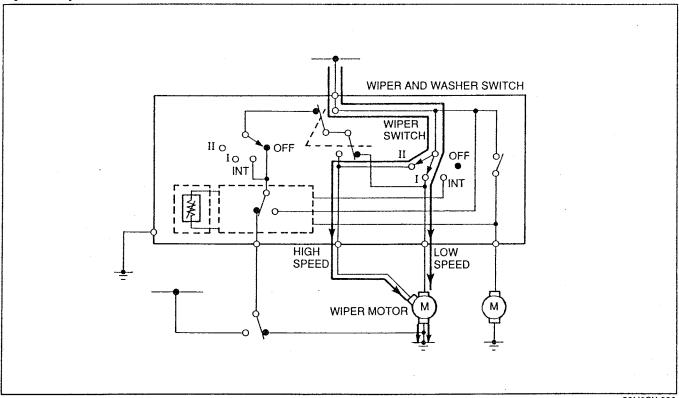
• If the circuit breaker must be replaced, disassemble the wiper motor and replace the brush plate holder and circuit breaker assembly.

Circuit Diagram



19G0SX-539

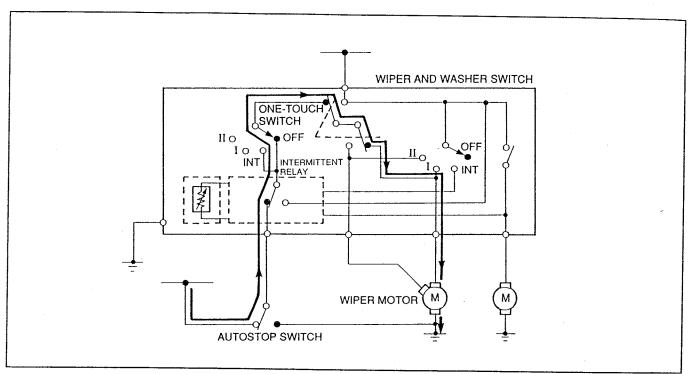
System operation



29U0SX-838

1. Low speed and high speed

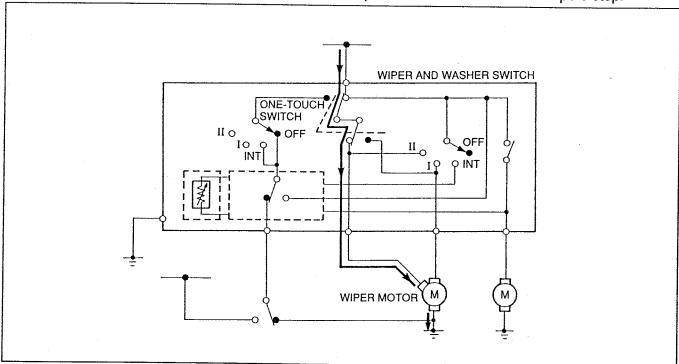
- When the wiper switch is moved to the I (low) position, current flows through the wiper switch, to the motor, then to ground. The wipers operate at low speed.
- When the wiper switch is moved to the II (high) position, current flows through the wiper switch, to the wiper motor, then to ground. The wipers operate at high speed.



37U0SX-526

2. Autostop

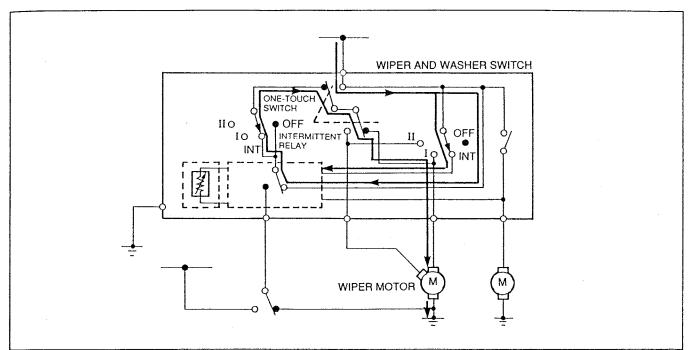
- While the wiper motor is operating, the autostop switch is ON. If the wiper switch is moved to OFF, current continues to flow through the autostop switch, to the intermittent relay, to the one-touch switch, to the wiper motor, then to ground. Thus, the wipers keep moving until they reach the park position.
- When the wipers reach the park position, the autostop switch turns OFF and the wipers stop.



37U0SX-527

3. One-touch wiper

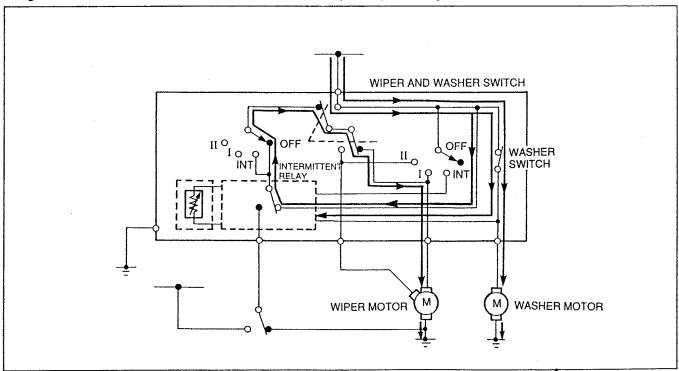
- When the wiper switch is pushed, the one-touch switch turns ON, and current flows through the one-touch switch, to the wiper motor, then to ground. The wipers operate at high speed for one cycle.
- When the wiper switch is pushed and held, the wipers cycle at high speed. When the switch is released, the autostop function is activated and the wipers stop at the park position.



37U0SX-528

4. Intermittent wiper

- When the wiper switch is moved to INT, the intermittent relay turns ON, and current flows through the
 wiper switch, to the intermittent relay, to the one-touch switch, to the wiper motor, then to ground.
 The wipers operate at low speed. The intermittent relay internal circuit turns OFF the relay. The
 autostop function is activated, and the wipers stop at the park position.
- After the wipers stop, discharge from the capacitor inside the relay turns the intermittent relay ON again, and current flows as shown above. The wipers operate again.

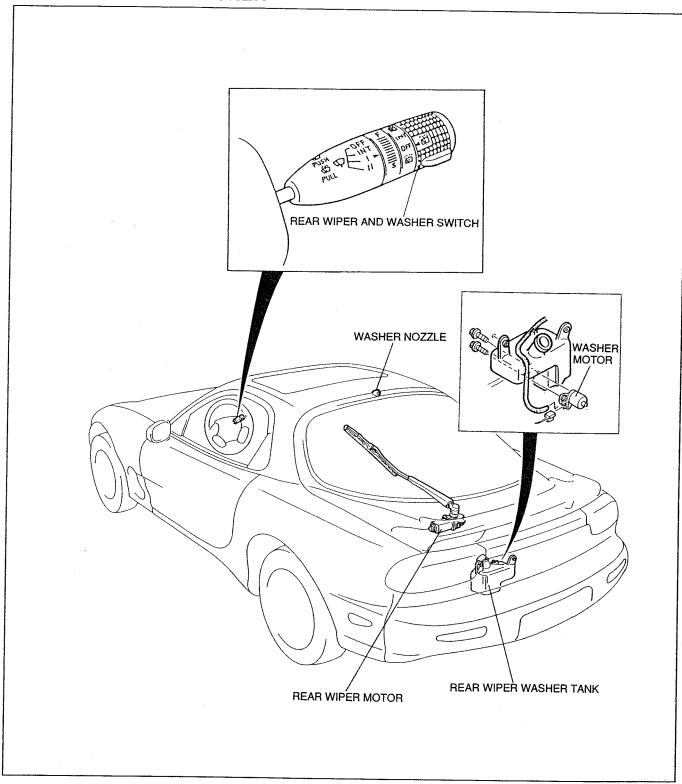


37U0SX-529

5. Washer

- When the wiper and washer switch is pulled, the washer switch turns ON. Current flows through the washer switch, to the washer motor, then to ground. The washer motor is activated.
- Current also flows to the intermittent relay, turning it ON, and continues through the one-touch switch, to the wiper motor, then to ground. The wipers operate at low speed.

REAR WIPER AND WASHER



37U0TX-530

• The intermittent rear wiper and washer controls are located on the wiper control lever.

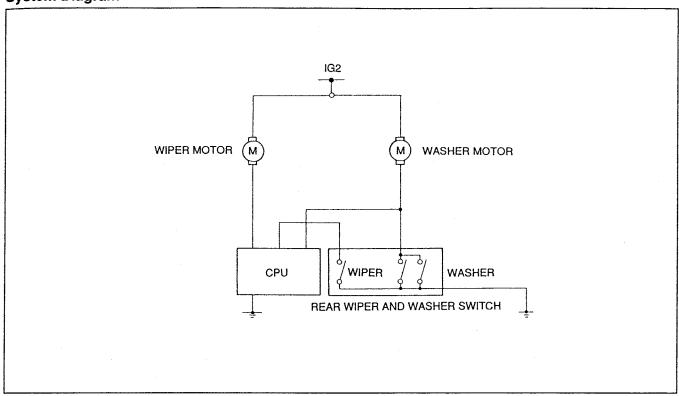
When the rear wiper switch is turned to the INT position, the rear wiper cycles three times and pauses for 14 seconds, then repeats one cycle each 14 seconds.

• When the rear wiper switch is held in the washer position, washer fluid is sprayed on the glass and the wiper operates. When the switch is released, the wiper cycles two more times and then stops.

When the rear wiper switch is momentarily turned to the washer position and released, washer fluid
is sprayed on the glass and the wiper completes two cycles, then stops.

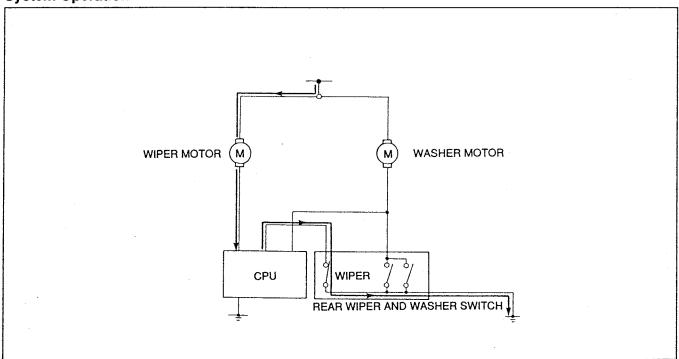
The rear wiper is parked vertically for better aerodynamics and easier starting in snowy weather.

System Diagram



37U0SX-531

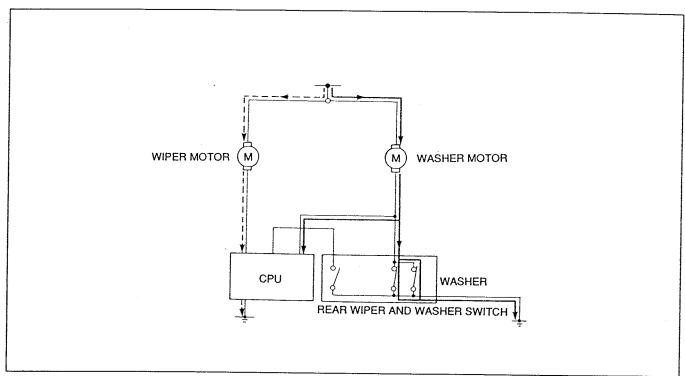
System Operation



37U0SX-532

1. Rear wiper

- When the rear wiper switch is turned ON, current flows through the rear wiper motor, to the CPU, to the rear wiper switch, then to ground, activating the rear wiper motor.
 After three cycles, the rear wiper is turned OFF by the CPU.
- After the rear wiper stops, discharge from the capacitor within the CPU turns ON the CPU. Current flows as described above and the wiper operates again. Charging and discharging of the capacitor continues and the wiper cycles once every 14 seconds.



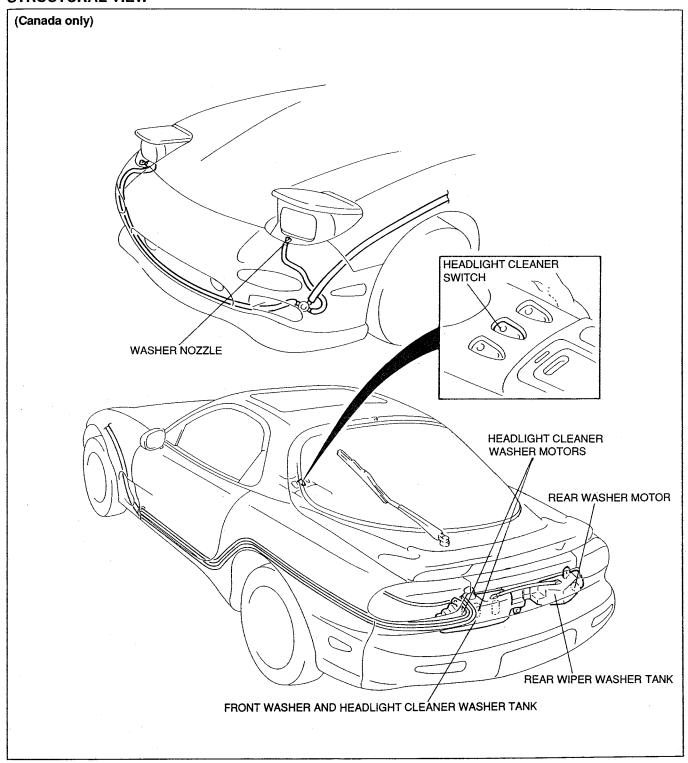
37U0SX-533

2. Rear washer

- When the rear washer switch is turned ON, current flows through the rear washer motor, to the rear washer switch, then to ground, activating the rear washer motor.
- At the same time, current flows through the CPU and turns it ON.
- Because the CPU is ON, current flows through rear wiper motor, and the rear wiper motor operates.

HEADLIGHT CLEANER

STRUCTURAL VIEW



37U0SX-534

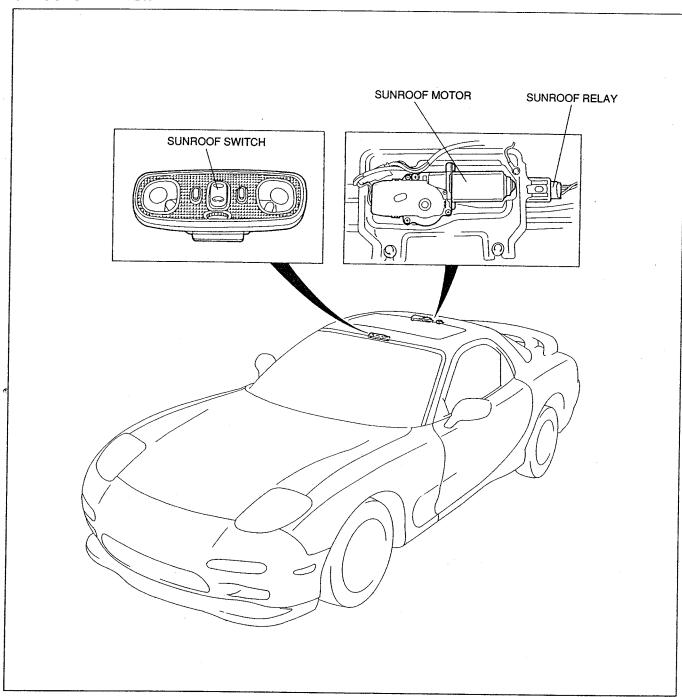
- A headlight cleaner system is optionally available for improved safety.
 The system shares the washer fluid reservoir with the rear washer, but each system has its own motors.

Specifications

| Openioations | | |
|------------------------|---|--|
| | CAPACITY OF TANK liters (US qt, Imp qt) | |
| WITH HEADLIGHT CLEANER | 5.2 {5.4, 4.5} | |

SLIDING SUNROOF

STRUCTURAL VIEW



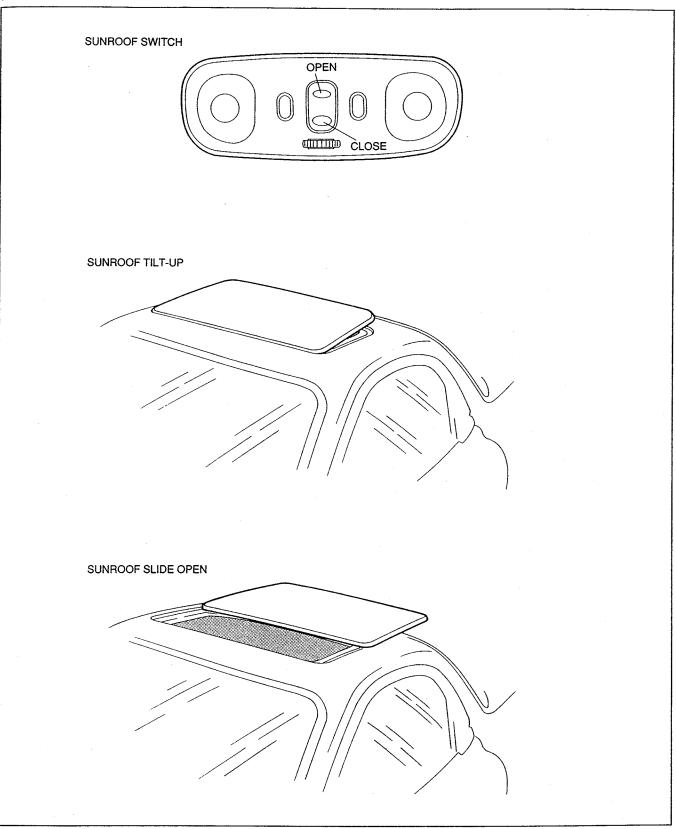
37U0SX-535

• Because of limited space, an external sliding sunroof is installed.

Specifications

| Functions | | Tilt-up, slide open, close | |
|----------------|---------|------------------------------|--|
| Actual opening | | 242 × 724 mm {9.5 × 28.5 in} | |
| Tilt amount | | 27—30 mm {1.1—1.2 in} | |
| Slide amount | | 292—298 mm {11.5—11.7 in} | |
| Operation time | Tilt-up | 2 sec (max.) | |
| | Slide | 4—6 sec | |

Mechanism

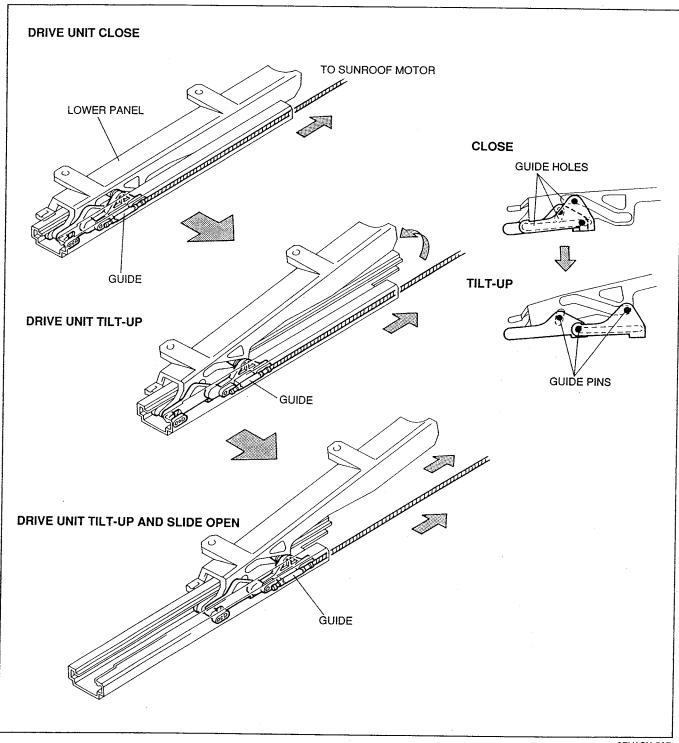


37U0SX-536

• When the back of the sunroof switch is pressed, the sunroof tilts up and stops. When the switch is released and pressed again, the sunroof slides open.

When the front of the sunroof switch is pressed with the sunroof tilted up, the sunroof closes. When
the front of the switch is pressed with the sunroof fully open, the sunroof slides closed without stopping at the tilt-up position.

Drive Mechanism



37U0SX-537

Drive Unit Tilt-Up and Slide Open

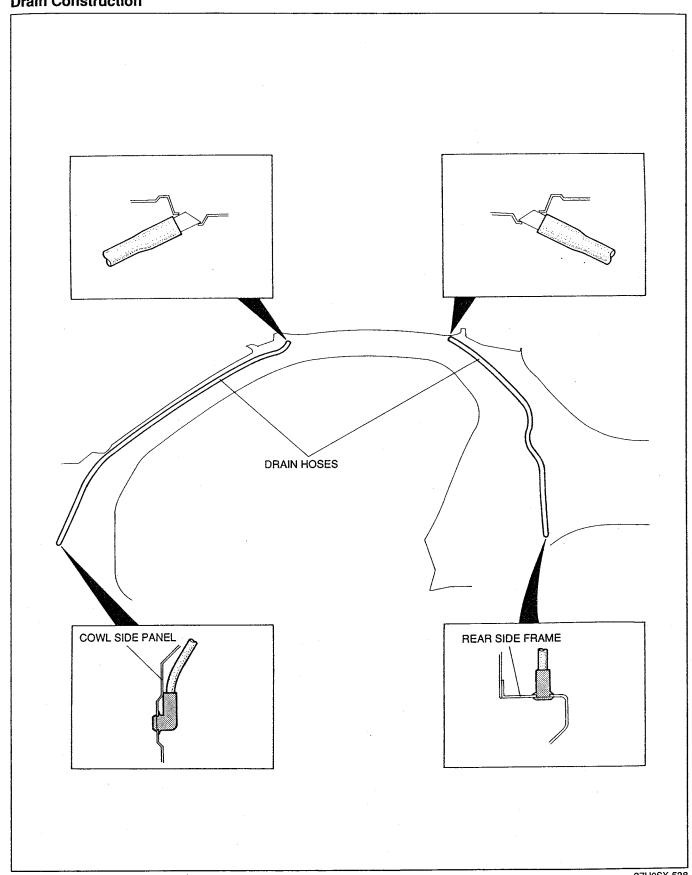
• When the back of the sunroof switch is pressed, the sunroof motor rotates, moving the slider guide pins backward in the guide holes of the lower panel. The lower panel is raised and the slide panel is tilted up. The slide panel is stopped by the limit switch motor.

• If the back of the sunroof switch is pressed again with the slide panel tilted up, the sunroof motor will rotate again, moving the slide panel backward until the sunroof is fully open.

Drive Unit Close

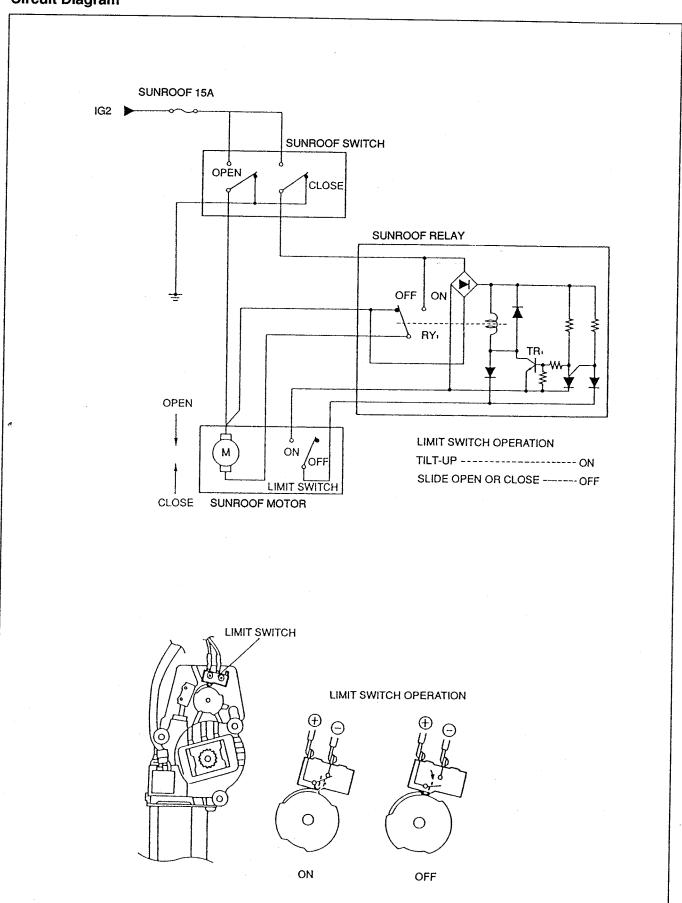
When the front of the sunroof switch is pressed with the sunroof fully open, the sunroof motor reverses its rotation. The slider guide pins move forward in the guide holes of the lower panel, and the opposite of open movement occurs.

Drain Construction



• A drain hose is located at each corner of the sunroof frame. Water drains out either through the Apillars to the cowl side panel or through the B-pillars to the rear side frame.

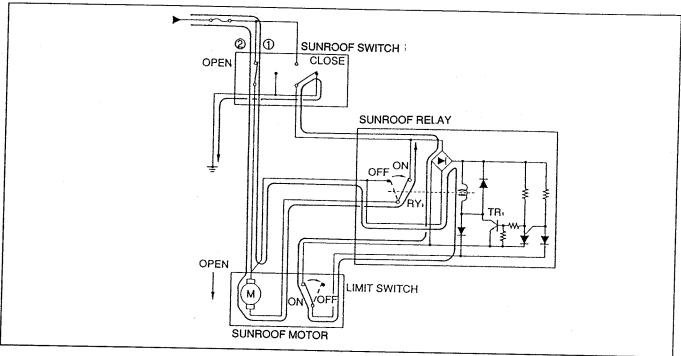
Circuit Diagram



System Operation Sunroof switch operation

1. Tilt-up

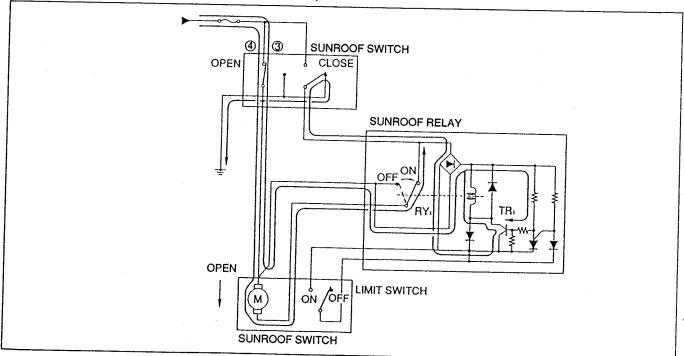
- The sunroof motor limit switch is ON.
- When the back of the sunroof switch is pressed, current (1) flows to coil RY₁ and turns the RY₁ switch ON. Current (2) also flows. The sunroof motor rotates, and the slide panel tilts up.
- After the slide tilts up, the limit switch in the sunroof motor turns OFF, stopping current flow and the sunroof motor.



37U0SX-539

2. Slide open

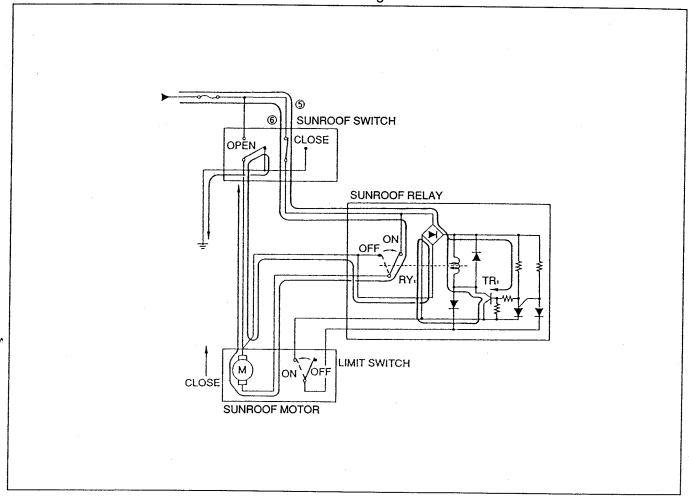
- The sunroof motor limit switch is OFF.
- When the back of the sunroof switch is pressed with the slide panel tilted up, current (3) flows to coil RY₁ and transistor TR₁, turning the RY₁ switch ON. Current (4) then flows, causing the sunroof motor to rotate. The tilted-up slide panel opens.



37U0SX-540

3. Close

- The sunroof motor limit switch is OFF.
- When the front of the sunroof switch is pressed with the slide panel tilted up open, current (5) flows to coil RY₁ and transistor TR₁, turning the RY₁ switch ON. Current (6) then flows, causing the sunroof motor to rotate. The sunroof panel closes.
- After the sunroof closes, the limit switch turns ON again.



37U0SX-541

POWER DOOR LOCK SYSTEM

OUTLINE

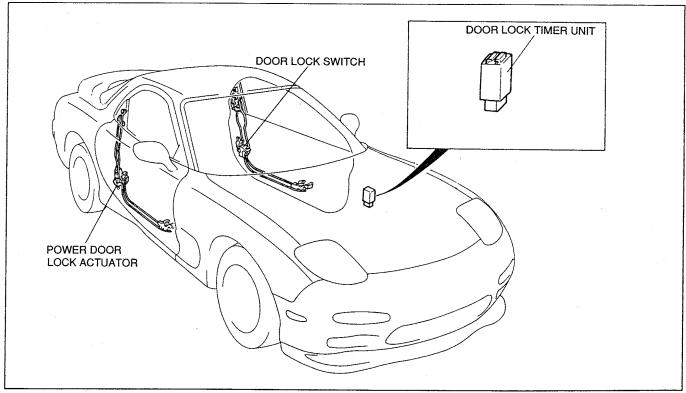
- Power door locks are available for added security and convenience.
- Both doors can be conveniently locked from the driver's side by the door key or lock knob.
- A door lock switch is used in the driver-side door lock assembly; a door lock actuator is used on the passenger-side.

Function

| System | Operation | Illustration |
|--------------------------------------|---|--------------|
| Door key interlock function | By locking or unlocking the driver door, both doors automatically lock or unlock. | UNLOCK |
| Door lock knob interlock function | By pressing or lifting the driver-side door lock knob, both doors automatically lock or unlock. | UNLOCK |

37U0SX-542

STRUCTURAL VIEW

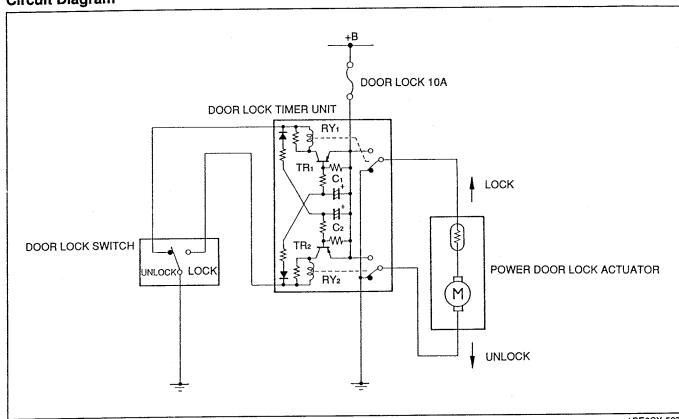


1PE0SX-526

Specifications (Door Lock Actuator)

| Rated voltage | 12V | Operating time | 0.5 sec (max.) |
|-----------------|-----------|----------------|----------------|
| Stalled current | 7A (max.) | | |

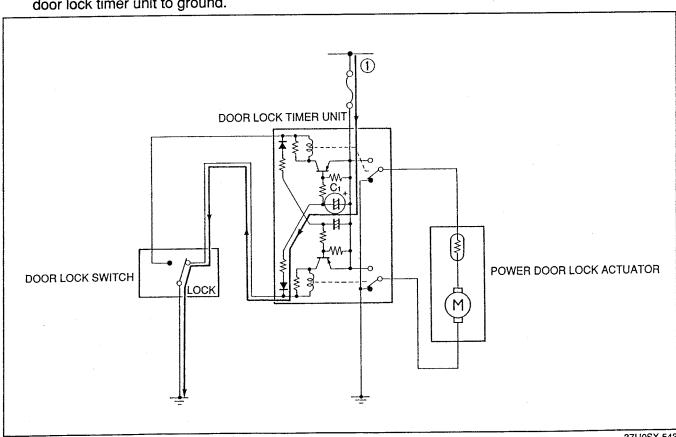
Circuit Diagram



1PE0SX-527

System Operation 1. Locked condition

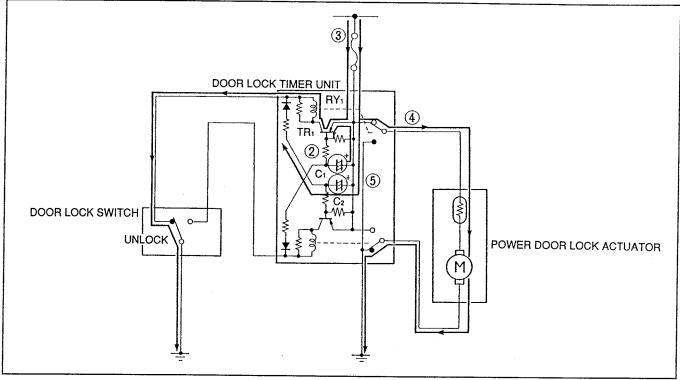
• When the door lock switch is in the LOCK position, current (1) flows through condenser C₁ of the door lock timer unit to ground.



37U0SX-543

2. Operation from locked to unlocked

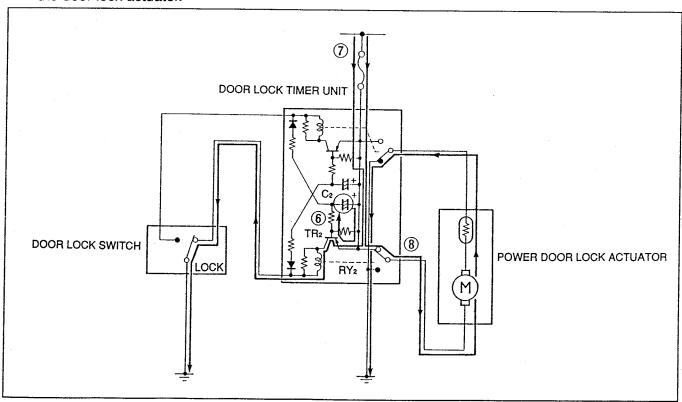
- When the door lock switch is moved to the UNLOCK position, condenser C₁ discharge current (2) turn ON transistor TR₁. Current (3) turns ON relay RY₁, and current (4) activates the power door lock actuator.
- Current (5) fully charges condenser C2.



37U0SX-544

3. Operation from unlocked to locked

• When the door lock switch is moved from the UNLOCK to the LOCK position, condenser C₂ discharge current (6) turn ON transistor TR₂. Current (7) turns ON relay RY₂, and current (8) activates the door lock actuator.

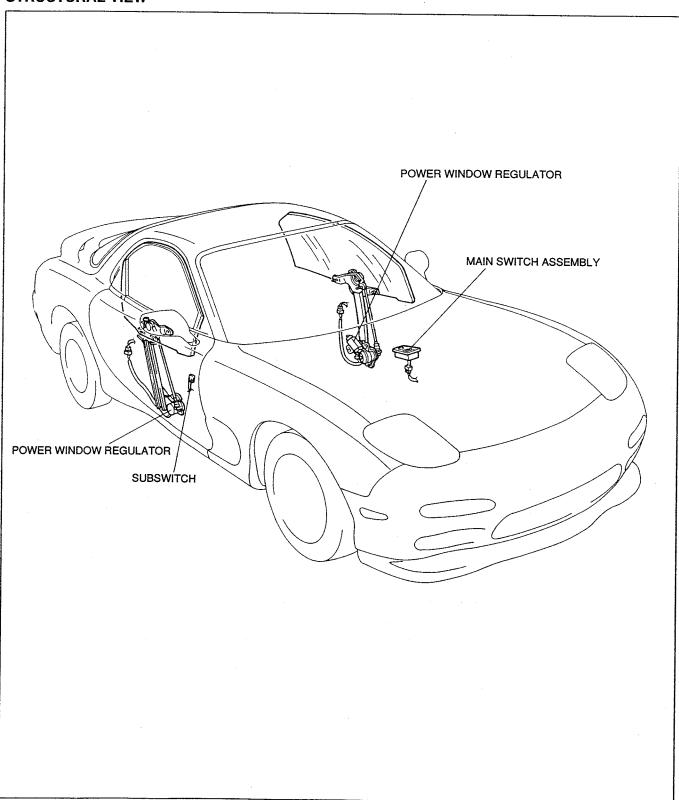


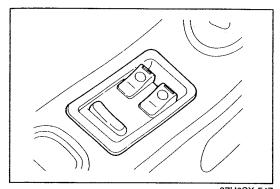
POWER WINDOW SYSTEM

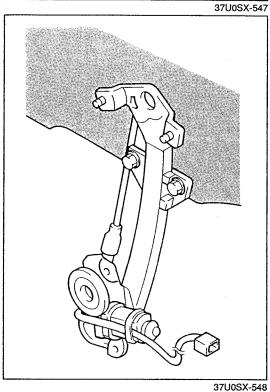
OUTLINE

- The main switch assembly is installed on the driver-side door. A subswitch is located on the passenger door.
- The main switch assembly includes driver-side and passenger-side control switches and a power-cut switch, which controls power to the passenger-side subswitch.

STRUCTURAL VIEW







Driver-side Power Window Switches

To prevent accidental closing of the window, the switches on the main switch assembly must be pressed to lower the glass, and lifted to raise the glass.

Specifications

| Rated voltage | 12V | |
|-----------------|----------------------|--|
| Stalled current | 8A (28A when locked) | |

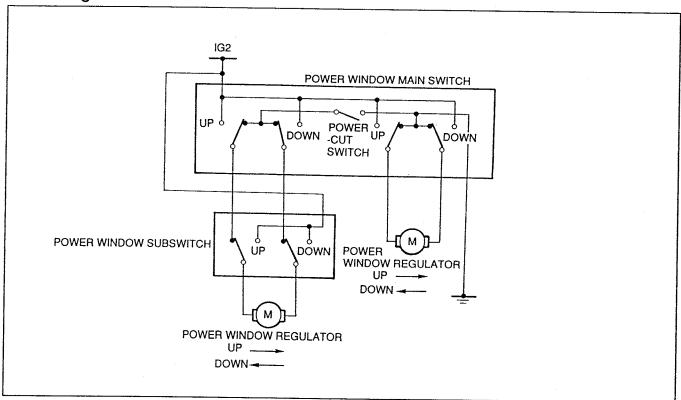
Power Window Regulator

- A wire-type window regulator is used because of its light weight.
- The motor contains a built-in bimetal breaker to prevent electrical damage.

Specifications

| Rated voltage | 12V |
|------------------------------|--|
| Stalled current | 28A |
| Motor breaker operating time | Opens 4—60 seconds after motor is locked. Closes within 60 seconds. |

Circuit Diagram

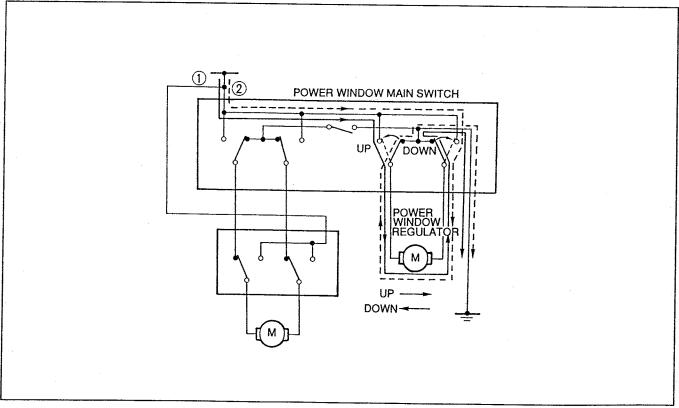


1PE0SX-535

System Operation

1. Main switch assembly

- When one of the switches is pressed with the ignition ON, current flows as shown by the solid line (arrow 1). The motor rotates and the window opens.
- If the switch is then lifted, current will flow as shown by the dotted line (arrow 2). The motor will rotate in the opposite direction and the window will close.

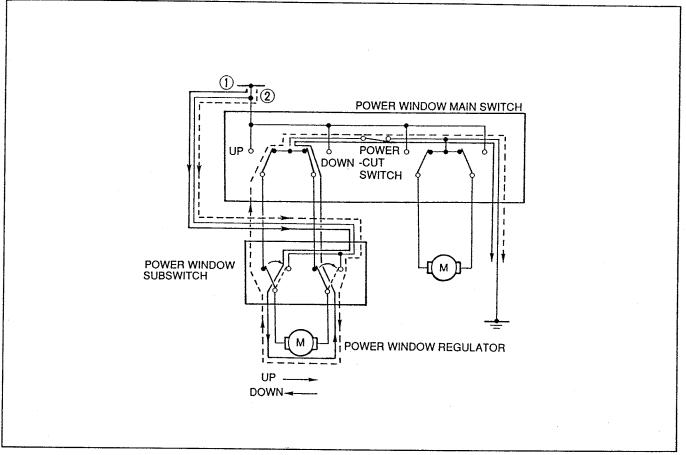


37U0SX-549

2. Subswitch

• When the top of the subswitch is pressed with the power-cut switch and ignition switch ON, current flows as shown by the solid line (arrow 1). The motor rotates and the passenger window opens.

• If the bottom of the subswitch is then pressed, current will flow as shown by the dotted line (arrow 2). The motor will rotate in the opposite direction and the passenger window will close.

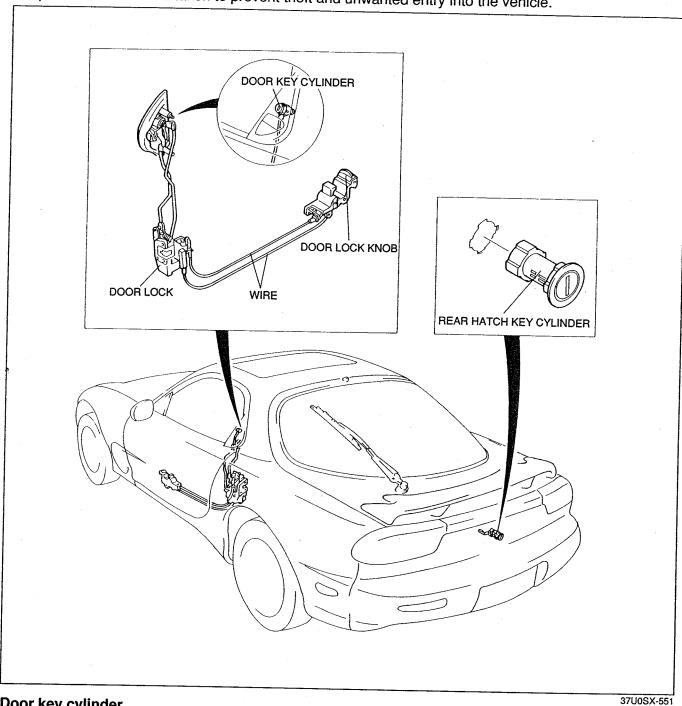


37U0SX-550

SECURITY MEASURES

OUTLINE

Special measures are taken to prevent theft and unwanted entry into the vehicle.



Door key cylinder

• The door key cylinder is incorporated into the outer door handle structure to ensure secure installation.

Door lock knob

• The door lock knob and door latch are connected by a wire to prevent the door from being unlocked with a hook from the outside.

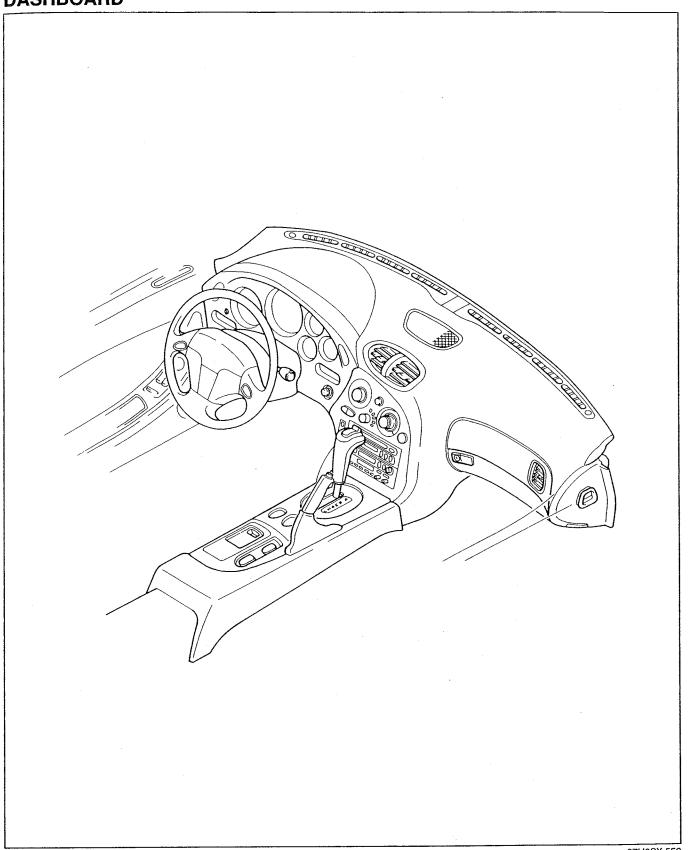
Door lock

• The door lock mechanism is protected by a theft-deterrent cover to prevent the door from being unlocked with wire from the outside.

Rear hatch key cylinder

The rear hatch key cylinder head has four mounting flanges to ensure strong retention.

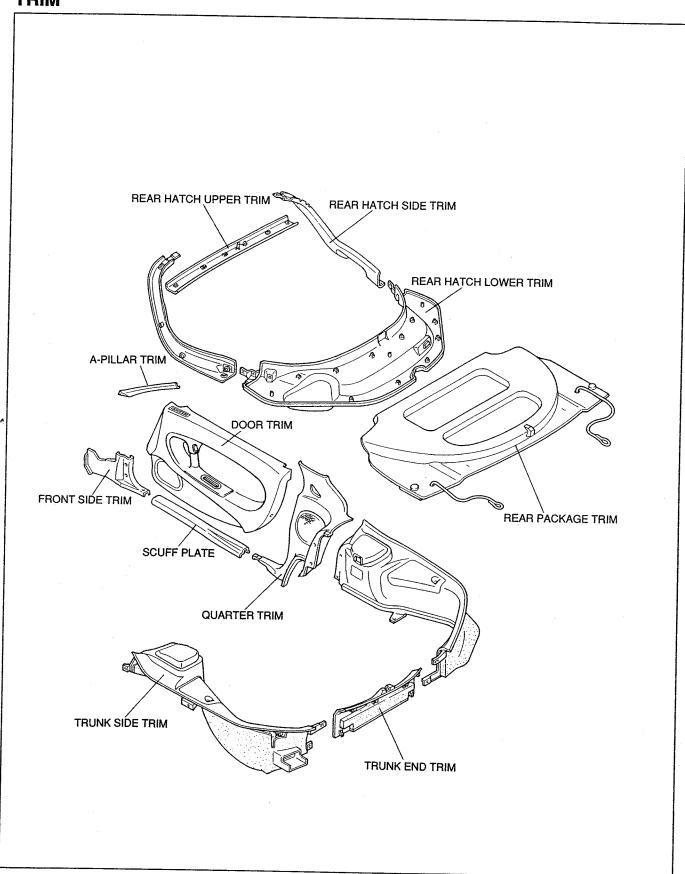
DASHBOARD



37U0SX-552

• The color of the meter hood and center panel contrasts with that of the interior trim to present an original and unique look.

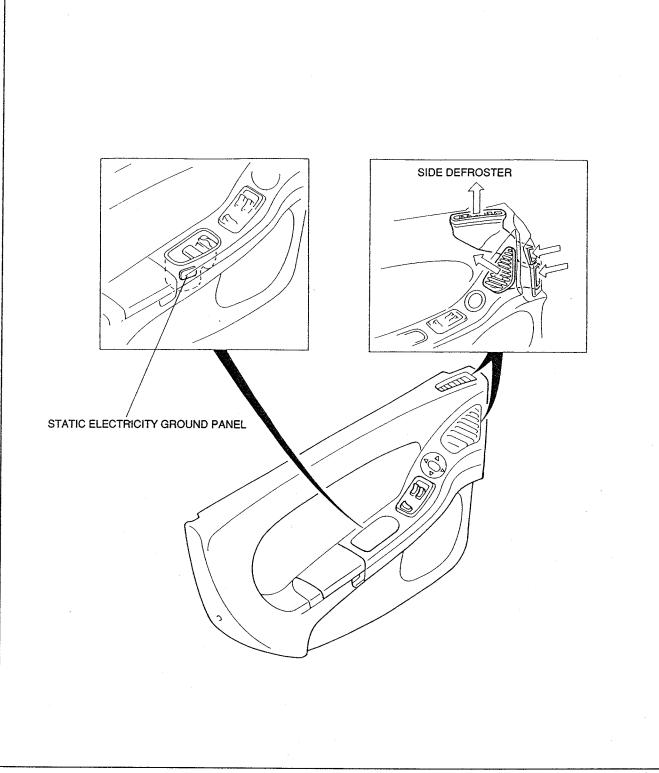
• The instrument panel is curved so that all of the switches and gauges face the driver.



37U0SX-553

The instrument panel, door trim, and rear console are styled to deliver a look of continuity and to provide the driver and passenger with a neat and comfortable driving environment.

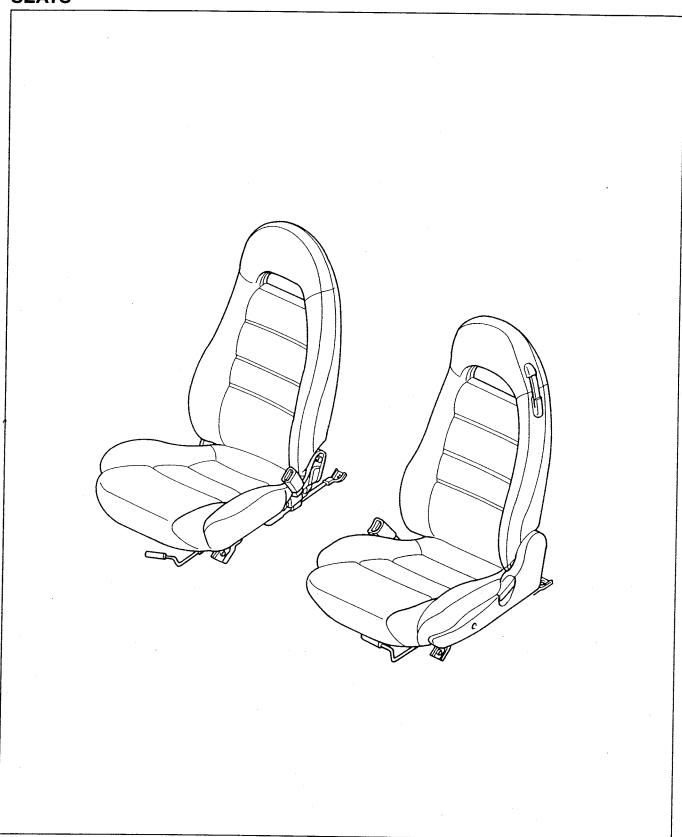




37U0SX-554

Static electricity ground panels are installed on the pull handles of the doors to prevent unpleasant static electric shock when getting in or out of the vehicle.
When a static electricity ground panel is lightly touched, static electricity runs from the finger tips through the touch panel, to the inner door panel, then to ground.
Side vents direct air to the side glass to reduce window fogging.

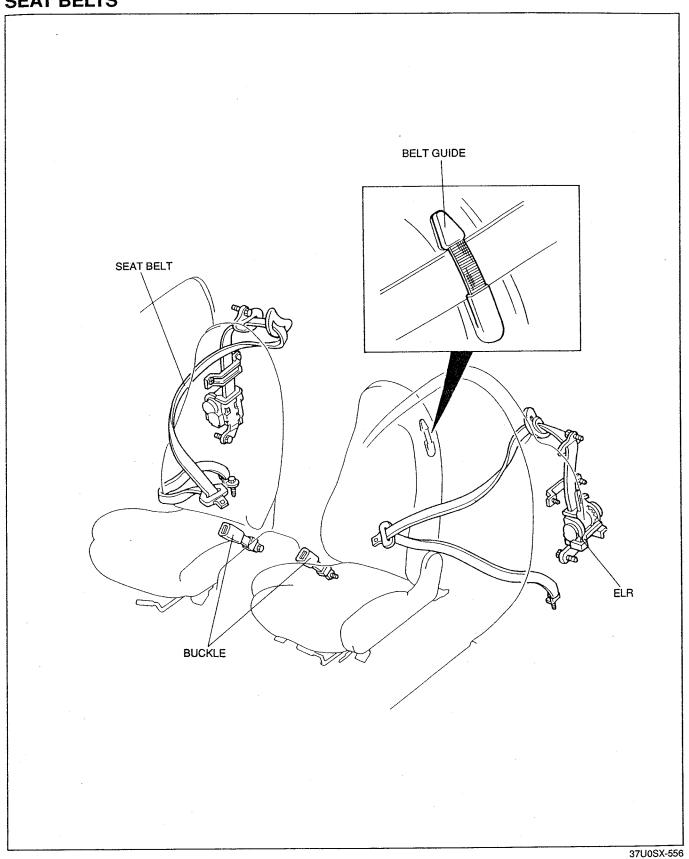
SEATS



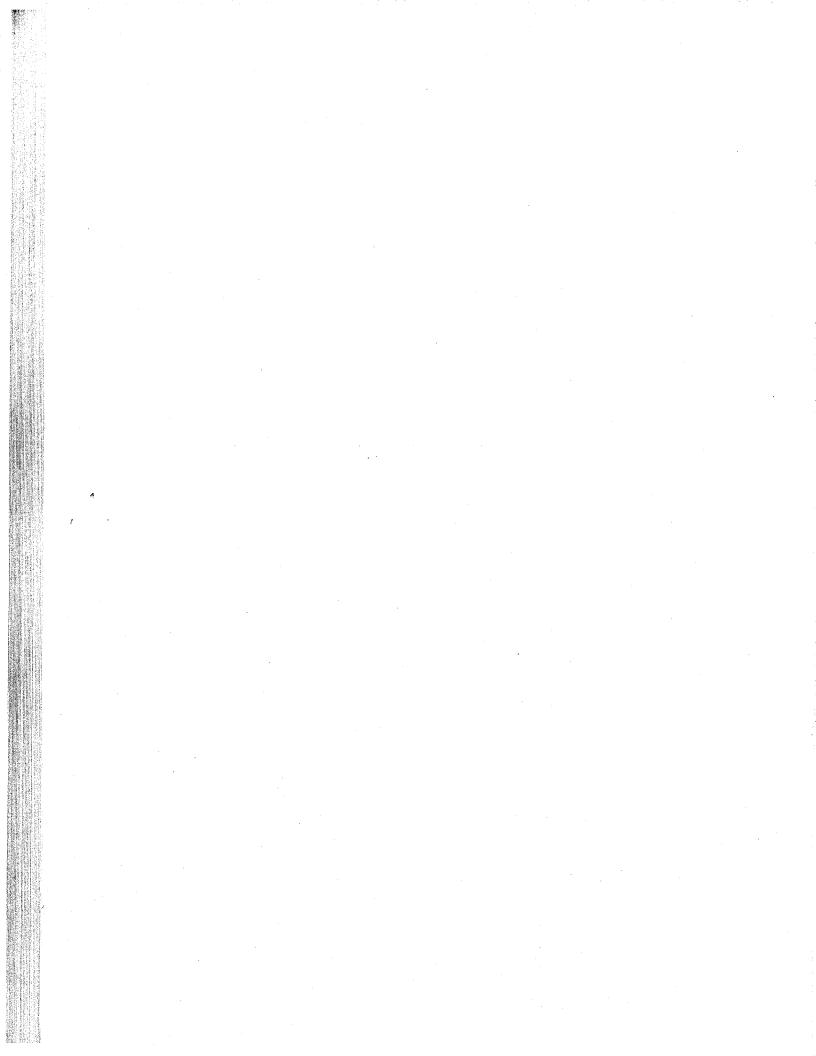
37U0SX-555

Specially contoured seats provide the driver/passenger with proper side and back support for comfortable, spirited, and extended driving pleasure.
The seats in the touring model are covered with specially processed leather, which provides a smooth feeling and improved holding.

SEAT BELTS



- ELR (emergency locking retractor) three-point seat belts are used.
 Belt guides are installed on the seats.
 The seat belt buckles are installed on the seat frames.



BODY ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

| OUTLINE T- 2 | AUDIO | T_41 |
|----------------------------------|---|------------|
| MAIN FUSE BLOCK AND | OUTLINE | |
| FUSE BLOCKT- 3 | SYSTEM DIAGRAM | T-42 |
| OUTLINE T- 3 | SPECIFICATION | T_4: |
| SPECIFICATIONS T- 3 | STANDARD SYSTEM (Type 1) | T-44 |
| RELAY T- 5 | BOSE ACOUSTIC WAVE® MUSIC |) |
| OUTLINE T- 5 | SYSTEM (Type 2) | T_46 |
| CENTRAL DROCESSING | BOSE ACOUSTIC WAVE® MUSIC SYSTEM (Type 2) OPERATION DESCRIPTION | T-50 |
| UNIT (CPU) T- 6 | CONNECTOR TERMINAL | |
| OUTLINE T- 6 | SPECIFICATIONS | T-55 |
| SPECIFICATIONS T- 6 | TERMINAL DESCRIPTIONS | T-60 |
| SYSTEM DIAGRAMT- 9 | ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM | |
| SWITCHT-11 | THEFT-DETERRENT SYSTEM | |
| OUTLINE T-11 | OUTLINE | |
| COMBINATION SWITCHT-12 | BASIC OPERATION | T-67 |
| CRUISE CONTROL SWITCH T-14 | SYSTEM DIAGRAM | |
| CLOCK SPRING CONNECTOR T-15 | INPUT / OUTPUT | |
| LIGHTS AND LAMPST-16 | AIR BAG SYSTEM | |
| OUTLINE T-16 | OUTLINE | |
| SPECIFICATIONST-17 | COMPONENT DESCRIPTION | |
| RETRACTABLE HEADLIGHTT-17 | SYSTEM DIAGRAM | |
| OPERATION DESCRIPTIONT-18 | SYSTEM OPERATION | |
| DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHT (DRL) T-20 | AIR BAG MODULE | |
| SYSTEM DIAGRAMT-21 | INFLATOR | |
| INSTRUMENT CLUSTERT-22 | D-SENSOR | |
| OUTLINE T-22 | S-SENSOR | |
| SPECIFICATIONST-23 | CLOCK SPRING CONNECTOR | T_80 |
| INDICATION TOLERANCET-23 | DIAGNOSTIC MODULE | |
| SYSTEM DIAGRAMT-25 | AIR BAG SYSTEM WARNING | |
| SPEEDOMETERT-28 | LAMP | T_81 |
| SPEEDOMETER SENSORT-29 | TROUBLESHOOTING | |
| FUEL GAUGET-30 | PROCEDURE | T_82 |
| WATER TEMPERATURE GAUGE T-30 | SERVICE PRECAUTION | T84 |
| CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM T-31 | AIR BAG MODULE DISPOSAL | |
| OUTLINE T-31 | AIR BAG MODULE DISPOSAL PROCEDURE | T_87 |
| SYSTEM COMPONENTS AND | INSPECTION OF SST | |
| FUNCTIONS T-32 | (DEPLOYMENT TOOL) | T_89 |
| SYSTEM DIAGRAMT-33 | (3-1 -0 : m1 : 1 · 0 · 0 · 1 · m. · m. · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | 37U0TX-501 |
| CRUISE CONTROL ACTUATOR T-34 | | |
| SELE-DIAGNOSIS FUNCTION T_35 | | |

OUTLINE

• There are many convenience and safety features that are standard equipment on all models. These include:

High-mount stoplight

Driver-side door key cylinder illumination and ignition key cylinder illumination

Rear window defroster system with timer function

Cargo compartment lamp

Panel lamp brightness control

Cruise control system

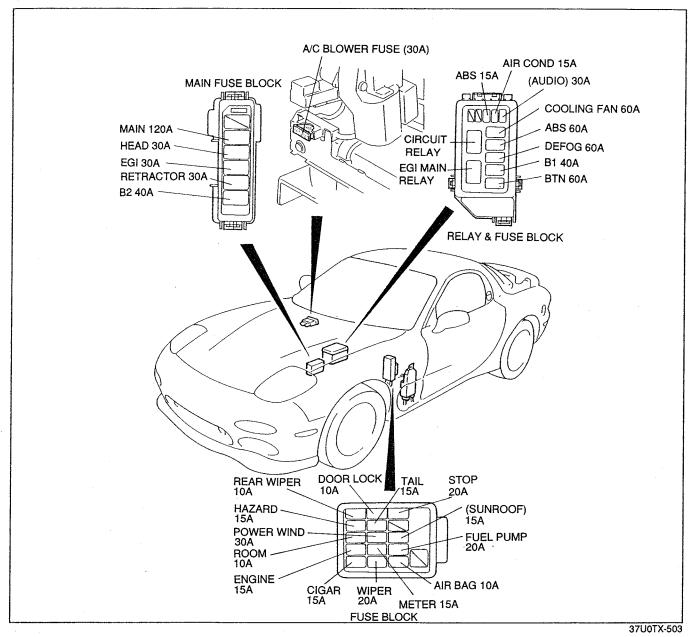
Driver-side air bag system

Theft-deterrent system (in CPU No.2)

- The interior lamp is mounted in the overhead console.
- A smoked panel is fitted to the rear combination light to conceal the lenses and to produce a unique, original look.
- Retractable headlights are again used to improve vehicle aerodynamics.
- The DRL (daytime running light) system is equipped on all Canada models.
- A headlight cleaner is also equipped on all Canada models.

MAIN FUSE BLOCK AND FUSE BLOCK

OUTLINE



- For the main fuse block in the engine compartment, compact, high-efficiency cartridge-type fuses are used.
- For the fuse block, mounted on the left side kick panel, lightweight, compact blade-type fuses with strong durability against intermittent current flow are fitted.

SPECIFICATIONS Main Fuse Block (Cartridge Type)

| Fuse/Amperage Color code | | Color code | Protected circuit | |
|---|-----|--|---|--|
| MAIN 120A White Main fuse block No.2, Alternator | | Main fuse block No.2, Alternator | | |
| HEAD | 30A | Pink | Headlight switch, Headlight relay, Retractable headlight switch | |
| EGI | 30A | Pink | Alternator, EGI main relay, Diagnostic module (Air bag) | |
| RETRACTOR 30A Pink Retractable headlight actuator (RH and LH) | | Retractable headlight actuator (RH and LH) | | |
| B2 40A Green | | Green | Ignition switch | |

Relay & Fuse Block (Cartridge Type, Blade Type)

V_B: Battery voltage

| Fuse/Ampe | erage | Color code | Protected circuit | |
|------------|-------|------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| BTN | 60A | Yellow | All fuses (V _B power) | |
| COOLING FA | N60A | Yellow | Cooling fan relays No.1, No.2, No.4 | |
| ABS | 60A | Yellow | ABS hydraulic unit | |
| DEFOG | 60A | Yellow | Rear window defroster relay | |
| AIR COND | 15A | Blue | A/C relay, Air pump magnetic clutch | |
| (AUDIO) | 30A | Green | Radio relay | |
| ABS | 15A | Blue | ABS warning lamp | |
| B1 | 40A | Green | Ignition switch | |

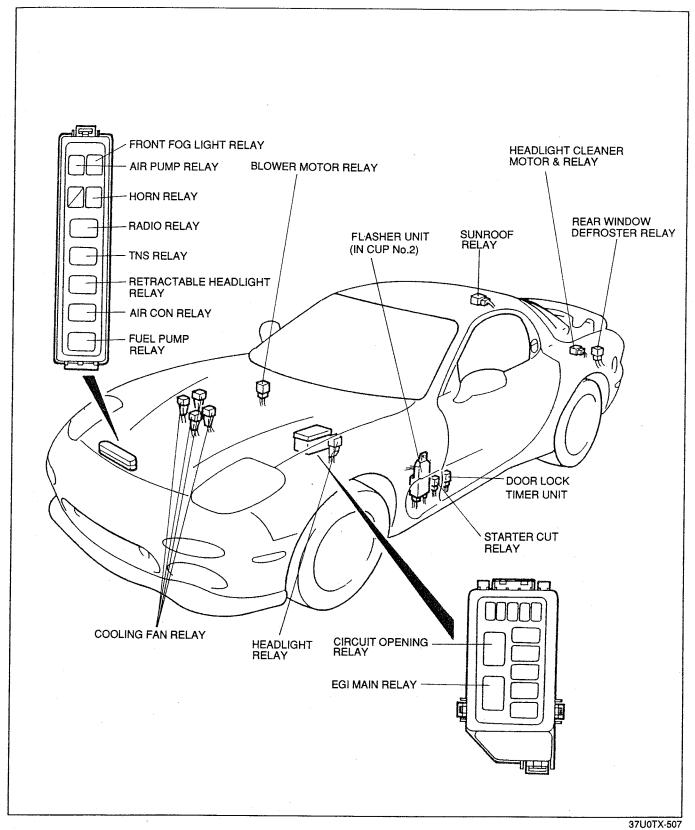
37U0TX-505

Fuse Block (Blade Type)

| Symbol | Fuse/Amp | erage | Color code | Protected circuit |
|--------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| +B | ROOM | 10A | Red | CPU (in instrument cluster), Key interlock solenoid, Power antenna, Cargo compartment lamp, Key reminder switch, Ignition key illumination, Door key illumination, EC-AT control unit, Interior lamp, Audio unit, ECU, CPU No.2, Security lamp |
| | STOP | 20A | Yellow | Stoplight switch, Cruise control unit |
| | DOOR LOC | CK10A | Red | Power door lock relay |
| | HAZARD | 15A | Blue | Horn relay, Flasher unit (in CPU No.2) |
| | TAIL | 15A | Blue | TNS relay |
| ACC | CIGAR | 15A | Blue | CPU No.1, A/C relay, Cigar lighter, Power outside mirror switch, Power antenna, Audio unit |
| IG1 | ENGINE | 15A | Blue | EGI main relay, Circuit opening relay, Starter cut relay, Diagnostic module (Air bag), Fuel pump relay |
| | METER | 15A | Blue | Instrument cluster, CPU (in instrument cluster), Combination switch, CPU No.1, EC-AT control unit, Cruise control main switch, Cooling fan relays No.1, No.2, No.3, No.4, Power antenna, Rear window defroster relay, Rear washer motor, Inhibitor switch, Shift lock actuator |
| | FUEL PUM | P 20A | Yellow | Circuit opening relay |
| | AIR BAG | 10A | Red | Diagnostic module (Air bag) |
| IG2 | (SUNROOF | F) 15A | Blue | Sunroof switch |
| | WIPER | 20A | Yellow | Combination switch, Wiper motor |
| | (REAR WIP | PER) 10A | Red | Rear wiper motor, Heater control unit, ABS control unit |
| | POWER W | ND 30A | Green | Power window main switch |

RELAY

OUTLINE

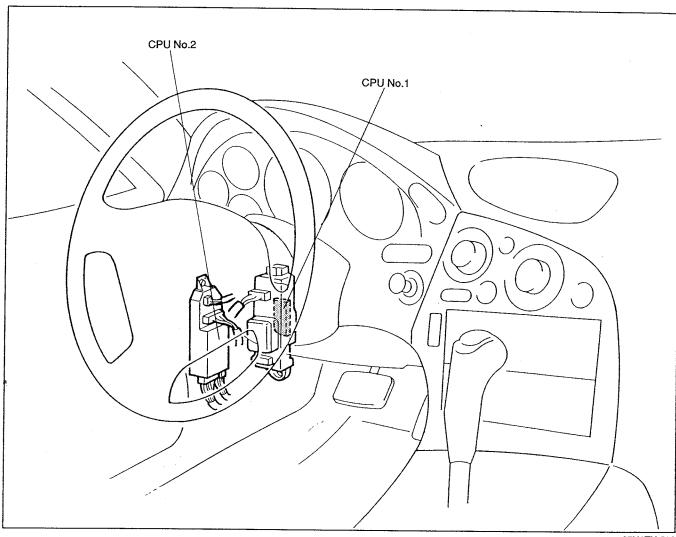


 The relays are concentrated at the following two points for improved serviceability: Relay box in engine compartment On left side kick panel

• The location and arrangement of the relays are as shown above.

CENTRAL PROCESSING UNIT (CPU)

OUTLINE



37U0TX-508

- There are two central processing units (CPU No.1 and CPU No.2) mounted on the joint box at the left kick panel.
- Each CPU is equipped with dedicated microprocessors to control the function of specific electrical units.

SPECIFICATIONS (CPU No.1)

| Function | Load/Rating | Activated condition | Remark |
|--|---|---|--|
| Rear window defroster timer | Rear window defroster relay: 200 mA | IG1 ON. Rear window defroster switch ON. | Operation time: 12—18 min |
| Rear wiper intermittent timer | Rear wiper motor: 3A | With rear wiper switch ON, wiper motor rotates three times, pauses, then repeats single rotation and pausing. | Intermittence (pause): 13—15 sec |
| Rear wiper washer continuous operation | Rear washer motor: 3A | With washer switch ON, motor rotates. When washer switch turned OFF, wiper motor continues rotating for period. | Time lag: 0.2—0.8 sec Memory time: 1.6—3.6 sec Operation time: 0.2—0.8 sec |

SPECIFICATIONS (CPU No.1) Cont'd

| Function | Load/Rating | Activated condition | Remark |
|--------------------|------------------------------|---|---|
| Key interlock (AT) | Key interlock solenoid 1A | With ignition switch at ACC or IG1 position and selector lever at except P range, key interlock function operates (Key interlock solenoid coil turns OFF after programmed period.) When ignition switch is turned OFF during interlock operation, function deactivated. When selector lever at P range during interlock operation, function deactivated. When ignition switch at ACC position and selector lever at except P range during interlock operation, key interlock resistor turns OFF after programmed period. | Operation time: 2—3 sec (Key interlock solenoid coil) 0.9—1.1 hour (Key interlock resistor) |

37U0TX-510

SPECIFICATIONS (CPU No.2)

| Function | Load/Rating | Activated condition | Remark |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|---|
| Turn signal and hazard warning lights | (Turn signal and hazard warning lights) Front turn signal light: 27W × 2 Rear turn signal light: 27W × 2 | (Turn signal light) IG1 ON and turn signal switch ON. (Hazard warning light) Hazard warning switch ON. | Flashing frequency: 75—100 cycles/min |
| Key illumination timer | Ignition key illumination lamp: 1.4W × 2 | With door switch ON or outer door handle switch ON, ignition key illumination comes ON. When door switch or outer door switch is turned OFF, ignition key illumination remains ON for programmed period. | Operation time: 15—21 sec ON OPERATION TIME |

SPECIFICATIONS (CPU No.2) Cont'd

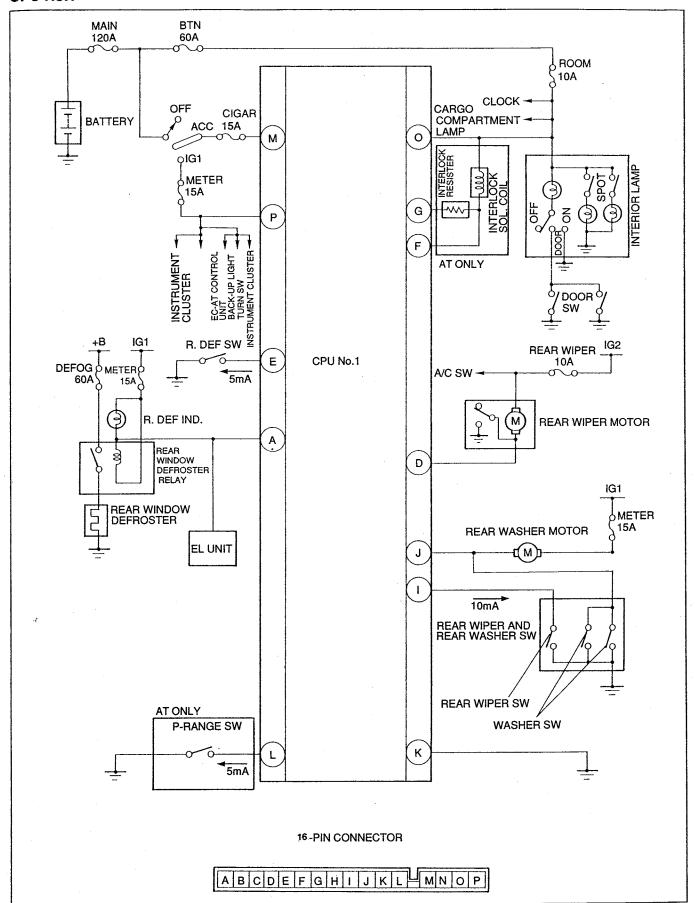
| Function | Load/Rating | Activated condition | Remark |
|------------------------------|--|---|--|
| Seat belt warning timer | Seat belt warning lamp: 1.4W | IG1 ON Seat belt warning indicator lamp illuminates for programmed period. When buckle switch ON (seat belt buckle tongue not inserted), warning alarm sounds during programmed operation time. | Operation time: 4—8 sec |
| Theft-deterrent system | Security lamp: 1.4W Starter cut relay: 200 mA Headlight relay: 200 mA Horn relay: 150 mA Retractable headlight relay: 200 mA Warning buzzer: 20mA Hazard output: 200mA | (Refer to page T-70) | Security lamp flash condition LAMP ON LAMP OFF 3 sec. 100ms |
| Daytime running lights (DRL) | Front turn signal light: 27W × 2 Parking brake war- ning lamp: 1.4W | DRL comes on when IG2 ON | |

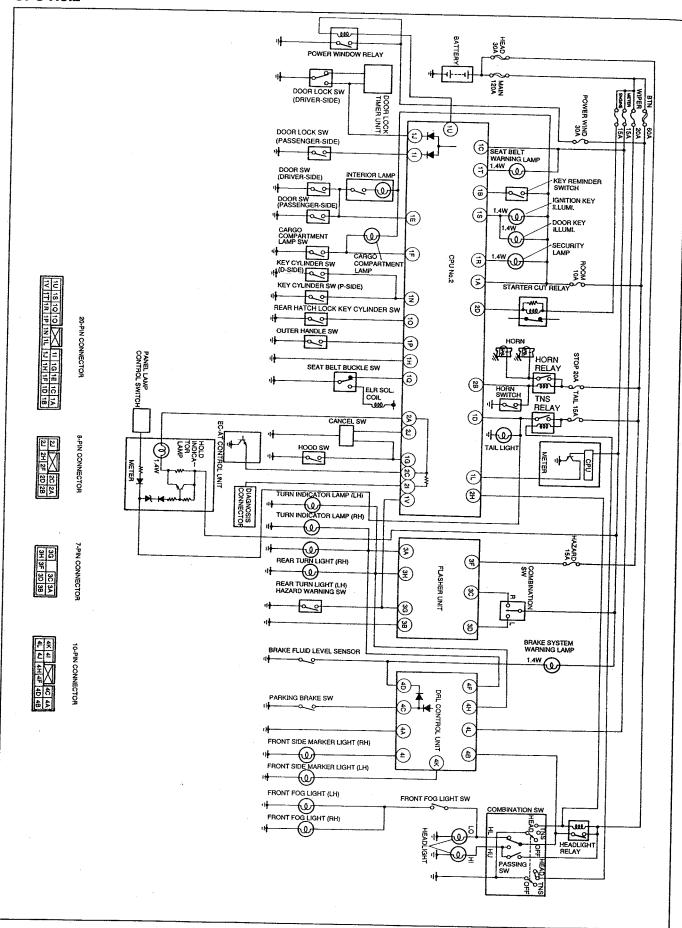
37U0TX-512

SPECIFICATIONS (CPU No.2)

| Function | | Activated condition | Remark | |
|----------------|-------------------------|---|--|--|
| Warning alarms | Ignition key reminder | Intermittently sounds when: • Keyless switch ON, • IG1 OFF, • Door switch ON. | t ₁ : 250 ± 50 m Sec. t ₂ : 125 ± 25 m Sec. | |
| | Lights-on reminder | Intermittently sounds when: • Light switch ON, • IG1 OFF, • Door switch ON. | ON TO THE OFF | |
| | Seat belt warning | Intermittently sounds when: • Seat belt timer ON, • Buckle switch ON. | BASE FREQUENCY t2 | |
| | Over revolution warning | Buzzer sounds continuously when engine speed exceeds approximately: (AT) 6,800—7,000 rpm (MT) 7,300—7,500 rpm | ON | |
| | Coolant level warning | Buzzer sounds continuously and lamp comes on when: Coolant level sensor ON, IG1 ON. | BASE FREQUENCY | |

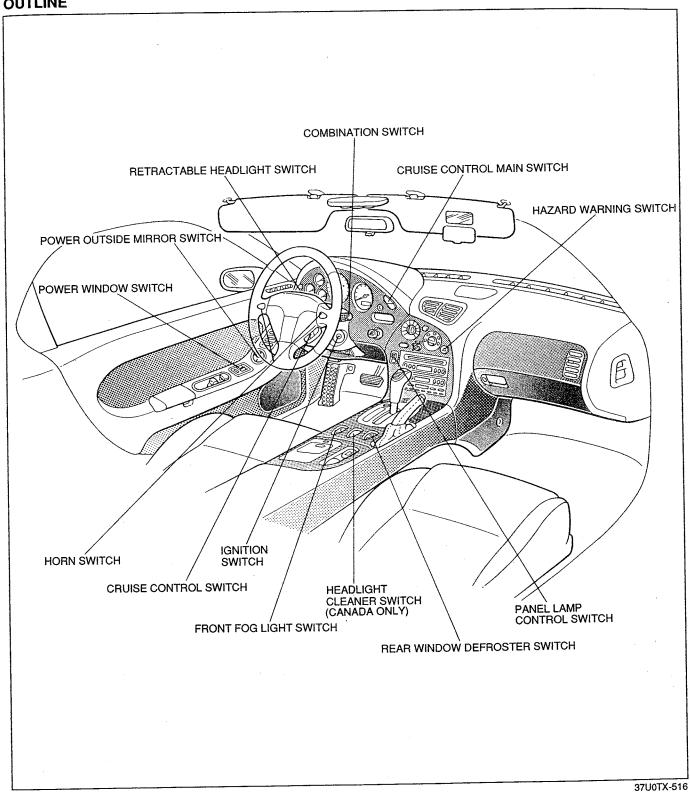
SYSTEM DIAGRAM CPU No.1





SWITCH

OUTLINE



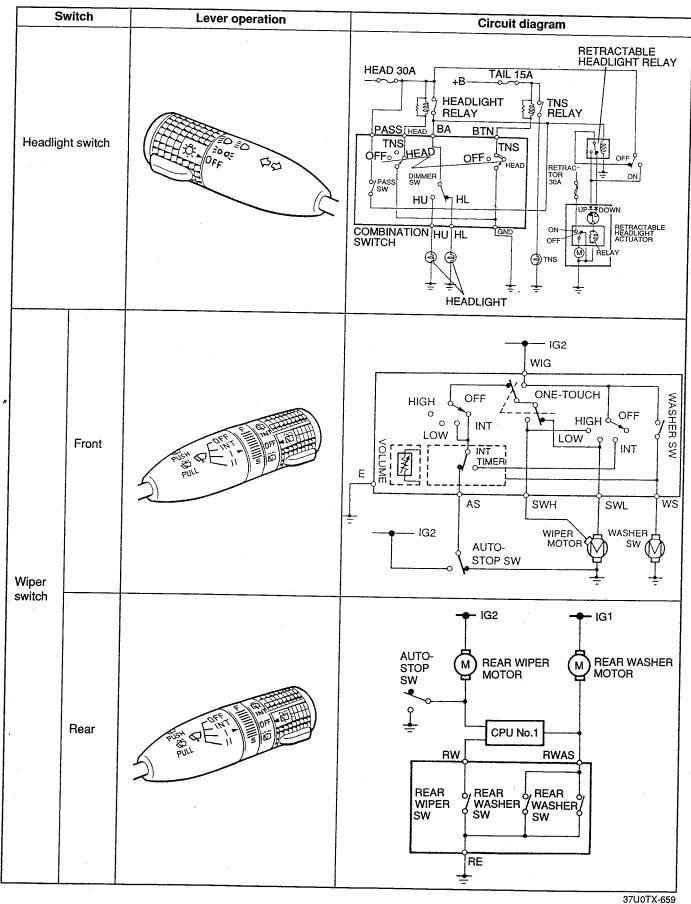
 Switches are arranged around the meters on the instrument panel and the panel is curved so that all switches and meters face the driver for improved visibility and operability.

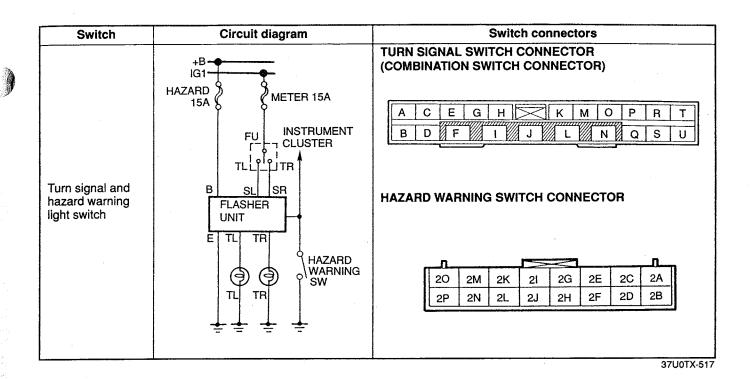
The hazard warning switch is located in the middle of the instrument panel for improved safety.

The cruise control switch is mounted on the steering wheel hub for improved safety and operability.

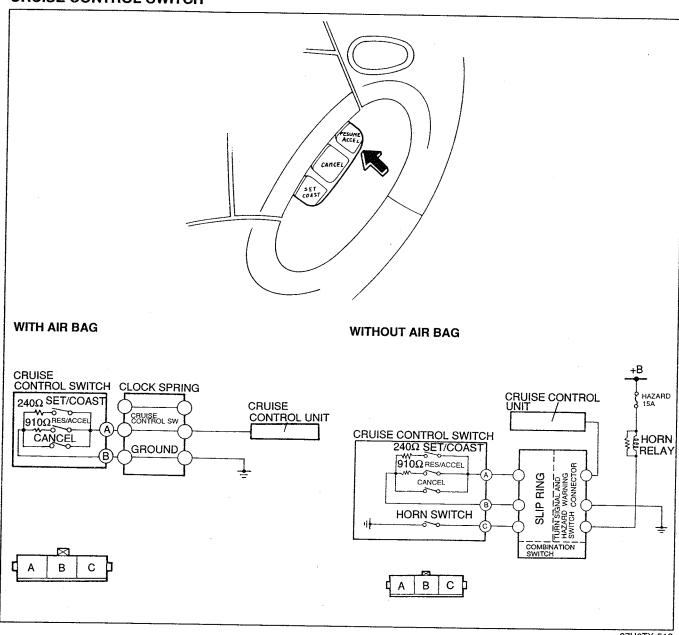
The front fog light switch, rear window defroster switch, and headlight cleaner switch are located in the center panel.

COMBINATION SWITCH Specification





CRUISE CONTROL SWITCH

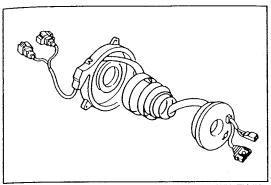


37U0TX-518

- The cruise control switch is mounted on the steering wheel hub for improved operability.
- The cruise control switch sends output signals to the cruise control unit which judges the operation command based on the signal voltage.

Operation Description

| Name | Switch | Description | | |
|--|--------|--|--|--|
| SET/COAST push button switch | | SET: Press switch to set vehicle speed for cruise control operation COAST: Press and hold switch to decrease preset cruise control speed until desired speed is obtained | | |
| RESUME /ACCEL push button switch | | RESUME: Press button to resume cruise control operation after temporarily cancelling cruise control speed setting Cruise control resumes when vehicle is running at 40 km/h {24.8 MPH} or faster ACCEL: Press and hold switch to increase preset cruise control speed until desired speed is obtained | | |
| CANCEL push button switch | | Press button to cancel cruise control speed setting | | |



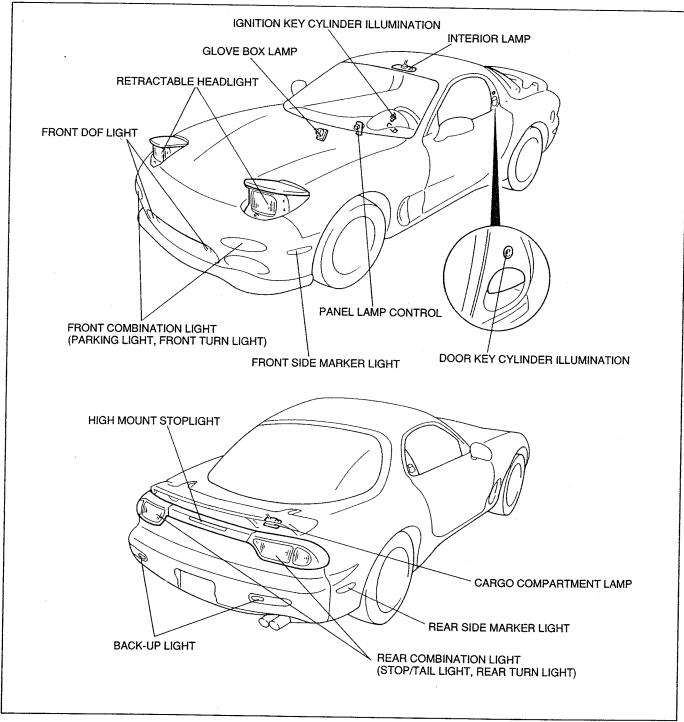
37U0TX-520

CLOCK SPRING CONNECTOR

- The clock spring connector is part of the air bag system.
- The clock spring connector serves as the connection of the cruise control switch, horn switch, and air bag module to the vehicle wiring harness.

LIGHTS AND LAMPS

OUTLINE



37U0TX-521

• The retractable headlights and the high-mount stoplight produce a sporty appearance.

The smoked panel, fitted to the rear combination light, conceals the stop- and taillights to produce a unique, original look.

- The driver-side door key illumination lamp and the ignition key illumination lamp are standard for all models.
- The interior lamp is mounted in the overhead console.
- The cargo compartment lamp is fitted to all models.
- The standard panel lamp control function adjusts illumination of instrument cluster.
- The DRL (daytime running light) system is equipped to Canada specification model.

The glove box lamp is installed to all models.

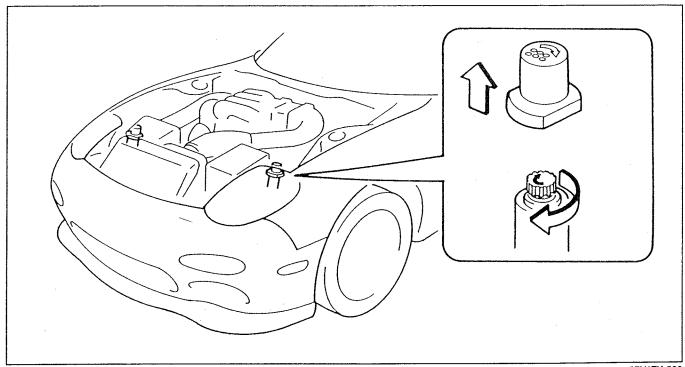
SPECIFICATIONS

| Name | | Capacity (W) | Number of bulbs | Bulb trade number |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|--------------------|---|
| Headlight | High/Low | 60/55 | 2 | (HB 2) |
| Parking light | | 5 | 2 | _ |
| Front turn signal | | 27 | 2 | 3,497 |
| * DRL | | 27/8 | 2 | 3,496 |
| Front side marker light | | 4.9 | 2 | 168 |
| Front fog light | | 35 | 2 | - |
| Rear combination light | Stop/Taillight | 27/8 | 4 | 1,157 |
| | Rear turn signal light | 27 | 2 | 1,156 |
| Back-up light | | 27 | 2 | 1,156 |
| Rear side marker light | | 3.8 | 2 | 194 |
| License plate light | | 5 | 2 | 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 |
| High-mount stoplight | | 18.4 | 3 | 921 |
| Interior lamp | Interior lamp | 5 | 2 | _ |
| | Cargo com- partment lamp | 8 | 1 | |
| | Glove box lamp | 3.4 | 1 | - |

^{*:} DRL (daytime running light) is for Canada model only.

37U0TX-522

RETRACTABLE HEADLIGHT

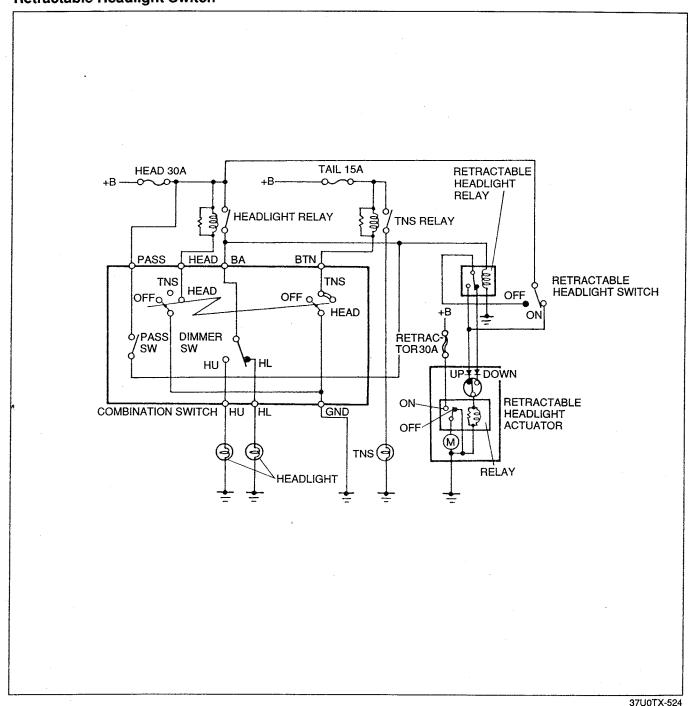


37U0TX-523

• If the retractor is damaged, the headlight can be manually raised/retracted by turning the knob atop the retractor motor.

- Manual Operation1. Turn the light switch OFF.2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.3. Remove the rubber cap from the motor as shown.4. Turn the red knob clockwise to raise/retract the headlight.

OPERATION DESCRIPTION Retractable Headlight Switch

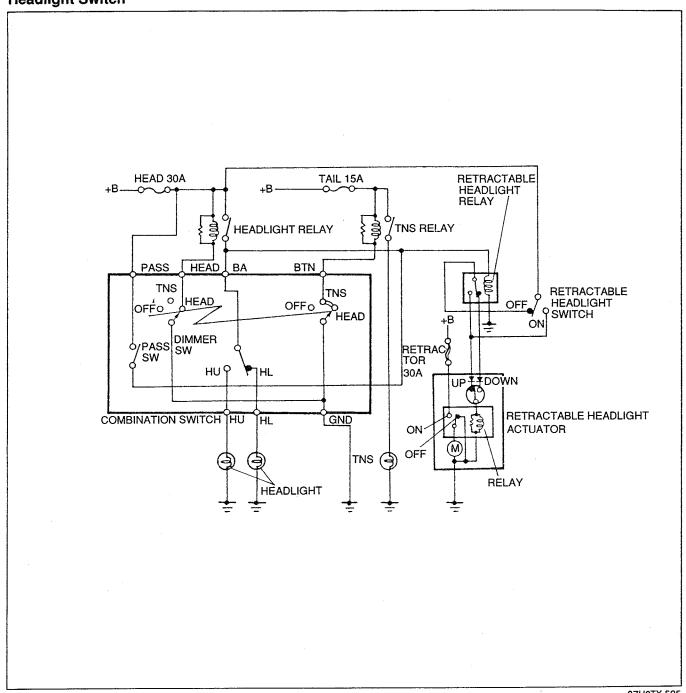


The retractable headlight actuator rotates clockwise only. The headlights are raised/retracted by the link mechanism of the system.

Operation

- Retractable headlight switch turned ON when headlight is in fully retracted condition.
 The retractable headlight actuator internal relay turns ON to activate the condition.
 When the headlight is fully raised, the contact of the limit switch in the motor changes from UP to DOWN; relay turns OFF and the motor stops.
- Retractable headlight switch turned OFF when headlight is in fully raised condition
 The retractable headlight actuator internal relay turns ON to activate the motor.
 The limit switch in the motor is at the DOWN position, and the headlight starts retracting.
 When the headlights is fully retracted, contact of the limit switch in the motor changes from DOWN to UP; relay turns OFF and the motor stops.

Headlight Switch



37U0TX-525

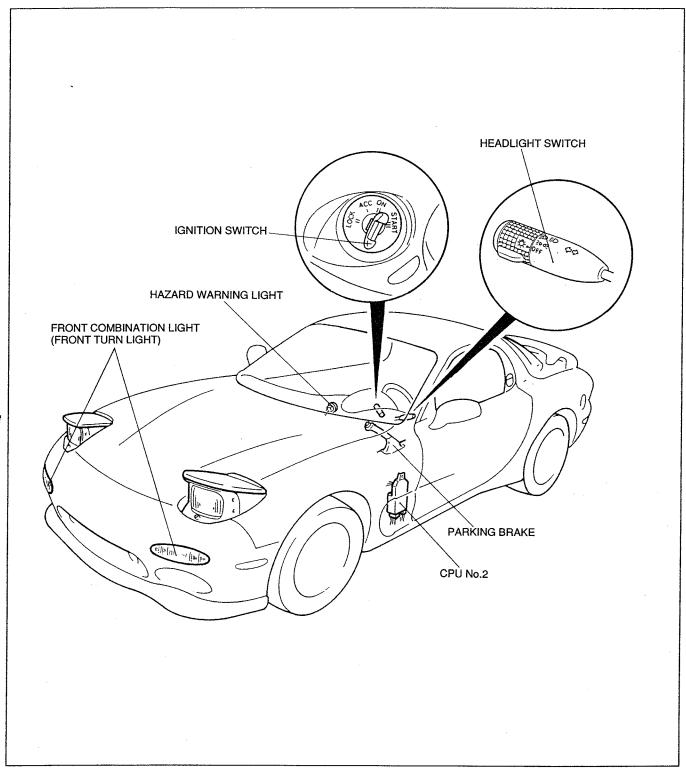
Operation

 Headlight switch turned to second position when retractable headlight switch is OFF. The headlight comes on and the retractable headlight relay turns ON. Current flows to the retractable headlight actuator internal relay to turn relay ON and the motor is activated. When the headlight is fully raised, contact of the limit switch in the motor changes from UP to DOWN; relay turns OFF and the motor stops.

Headlight switch turned OFF when retractable headlight switch is OFF. The retractable headlight relay is turned OFF and shuts off the current flow. As the limit switch in the motor is at the DOWN position, relay turns ON and the motor is activated. When the headlights are fully retracted, contact of the limit switch in the motor change from DOWN to UP; relay turns OFF and the motor stops.

This retracting operation is possible only when the retractable headlight switch is OFF. If the switch is ON, the headlights remain raised.

DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHT (DRL)-CANADA SPEC.



37U0TX-526

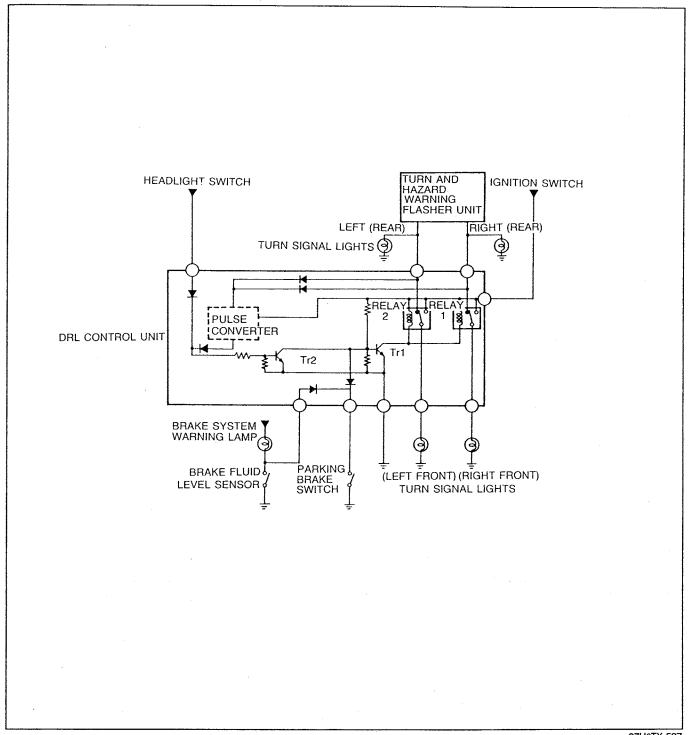
Daytime running lights (DRL) system is included to satisfy motor vehicle regulations of Canada.

Operation:

The front turn lights automatically illuminate as the running lights

The daytime running lights are switched off under any of the following conditions:

- 1. When headlights are switched ON.
- 2. When parking brake is applied.
- 3. When turn signal lights are switch ON.4. When hazard warning lights are switch ON.



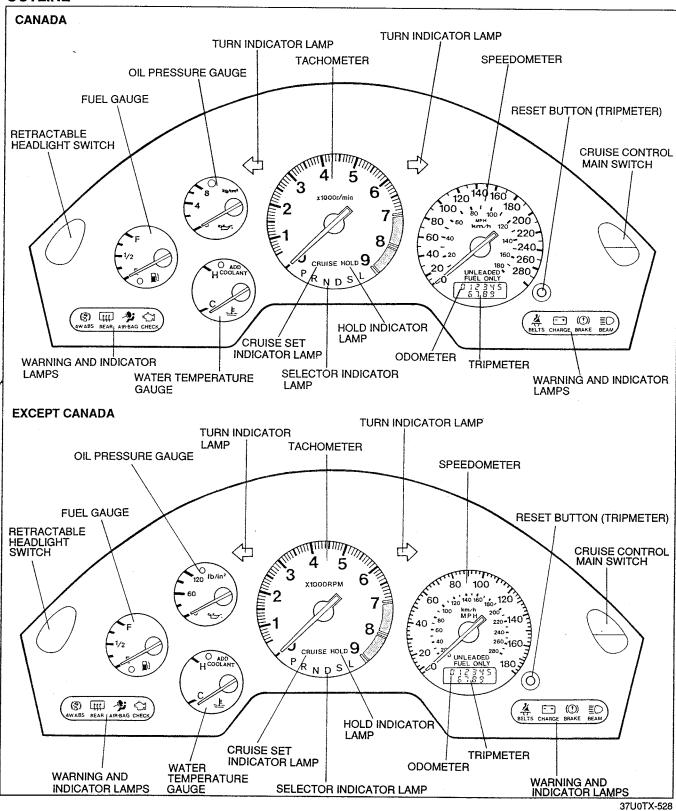
Operation

The DRL control unit controls operation of the turn signal lights and daytime running lights as described below.

- When the ignition switch in the ON or START position, Tr1 is turned ON unless Tr2 is also ON. Relay 1 and relay 2 are turned ON, and current flows to the turn signal lights and they illuminate as DRL.
- If one or more of the switches below is ON, Tr2 comes ON and cancels Tr1 operation. The turn signal lights then work as normal.
 - Headlight switch
 - Turn signal switch
 - Hazard warning switch
 - Parking brake switch

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

OUTLINE



A digital-type odometer and tripmeter are adopted for improved visibility.

The AT selector indicator lamp is situated in the tachometer face for improved safety.

The red zone of the tachometer is as follows;

AT model: 7,000—9,000 rpm MT model: 7,500—9,000 rpm

SPECIFICATIONS Speedometer

| Туре | Cross-coil (electric) |
|---|-----------------------|
| Indication (max.) | 280 km/h {180 MPH} |
| Input pulses (per driven gear rotation) | 8 (sine wave) |
| Output pulses (per rotation) | 4 |

37U0TX-529

Tachometer

| Туре | | Cross-coil (electric) | |
|---|-------|--------------------------|--|
| Input pulse source | | ECU (EC-AT control unit) | |
| Input pulses (per two engine rotations) | | 4 | |
| Indication range | {rpm} | 0—9,000 | |

37U0TX-530

Fuel Gauge, Water Temperature Gauge

| Name | Fuel gauge Water temperature gauge | | | |
|---------------|------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Туре | Cross-coil Cross-coil | | | |
| Rated voltage | DC 12V | | | |

37U0TX-531

Odometer / Tripmeter

| Name | | Odometer Tripmeter | |
|------------------|-------|--|--------------------|
| Indication digit | | 6 4 | |
| Indication unit | (min) | 1 km {0.62 mile} | 0.1 km {0.06 mile} |
| Reset method | | Push button | |
| Characteristic | | Indicates 1 km per 5,096 vehicle speed signal pulses Indicates 1 mile per 8,208 vehicle speed signal pulses | |

37U0TX-532

INDICATION TOLERANCE Speedometer

240

260

280

20,384

22,082

23,781

| - | | | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
| Vehicle speed {km/h} | Input pulses (per minute) | Meter indication {km/h} | Vehicle speed {MPH} | Input pulses (per minute) | Meter indication {MPH} |
| 20 | 1,699 | 21—23 | 20 | 2,733 | 20-23 |
| 40 | 3,397 | 40—43 | 40 | 5,467 | 40-42 |
| 60 | 5,096 | 60—64 | 60 | 8,200 | 60—63 |
| 80 | 6,795 | 8084 | 80 | 10,933 | 80—84 |
| 100 | 8,493 | 100—105 | 100 | 13,667 | 100—105 |
| 120 | 10,192 | 120—126 | 120 | 16,400 | 120—126 |
| 140 | 11,891 | 140—147 | 140 | 19,133 | 140—147 |
| 160 | 13,589 | 160—168 | 160 | 21,867 | 160—168 |
| 180 | 15,288 | 180—189 | 180 | 24,600 | 180189 |
| 200 | 16,987 | 200—210 | | | 37U0TX-5 |
| 220 | 18.685 | 220—231 | | | |

240-252

260-273

280-294

Tachometer

| Standard indication (rpm) | Allowable indication (rpm) (Ambient temperature: 20°C {68°F}) | | |
|---------------------------|---|-------------|--|
| (): AT model | MT model | AT model | |
| 700 | 650750 | 9201,020 | |
| 2,000 | 1,800—2,100 | 1,810-2,110 | |
| 3,000 | 2,800—3,100 | 2,800—3,100 | |
| 4,000 | 3,750—4,050 | 3,820—4,020 | |
| 5,000 | 4,750—5,050 | 4,700—5,000 | |
| 6,000 | 5,850—6,150 | 5,820—6,120 | |
| 7,000 (6,900) | 6,900—7,200 | 6,780—7,020 | |
| 7,400 (8,000) | 7,280—7,520 | 7,750—8,050 | |

37U0TX-534

Fuel Gauge

| Indication | Input resistance values (Ω) | |
|------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| E | 75.9 | |
| 1/2 | 31.5 | |
| F | 7.4 | |

37U0TX-535

Water Temperature Gauge General area spec.

| Indication | Input resistance values (Ω) | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| C {54°C, 129°F} | 178.4 | |
| Normal {70—105°C. 158—221°F} | 95.4—32 | |
| H {130°C, 266°F} | 16.9 | - |

37U0TX-536

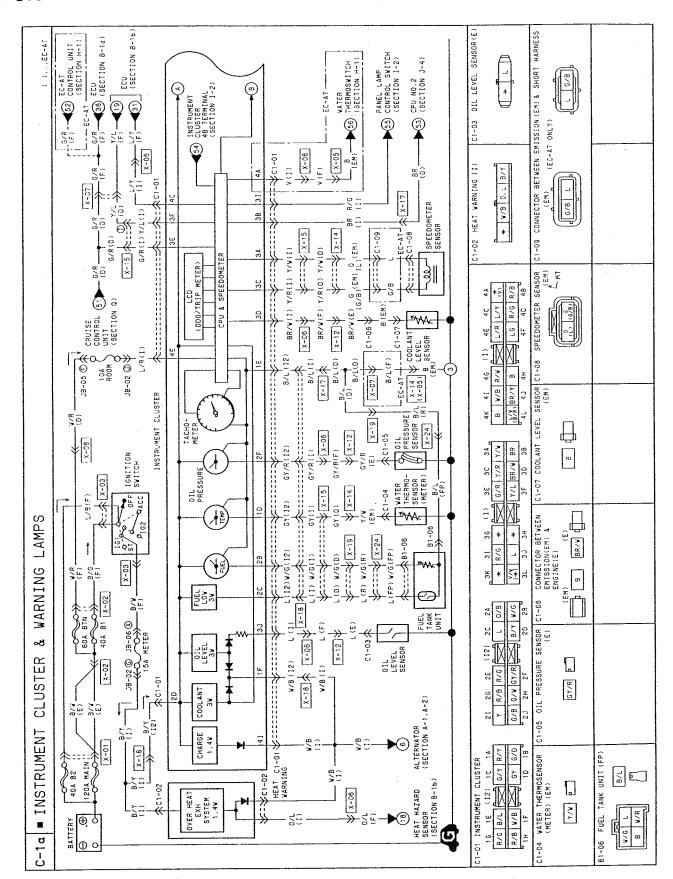
Cold area spec.

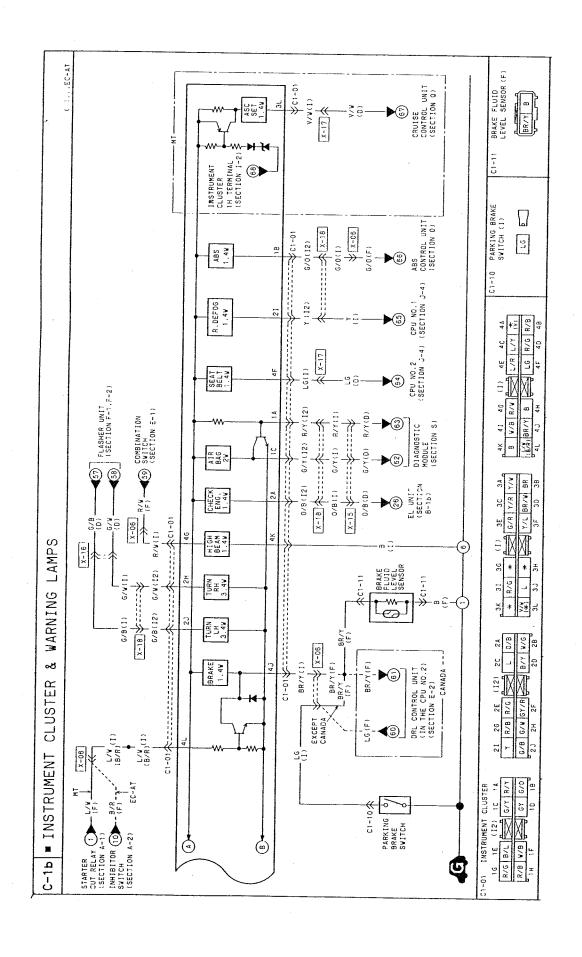
| Indication | Input resistance values (Ω) | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| C {47°C, 117°F} | 240 | |
| Normal {70—105°C. 158—221°F} | 95.4—32 | |
| H {121°C, 250°F} | 21.1 | |

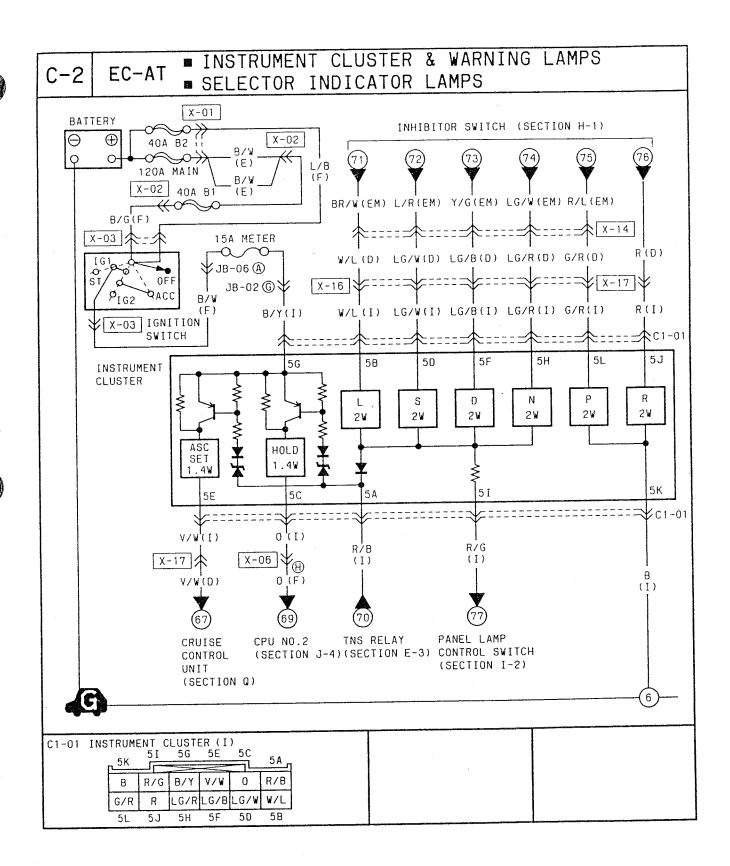
Oil Pressure Gauge

| Indica | ation | Input resistance values (Ω) | |
|-----------|----------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| {kgf/cm²} | {lb/in²} | | |
| 0 | 0 | . •• | |
| 4 | 60 | 28 | |
| 8 | 120 | 10 | |

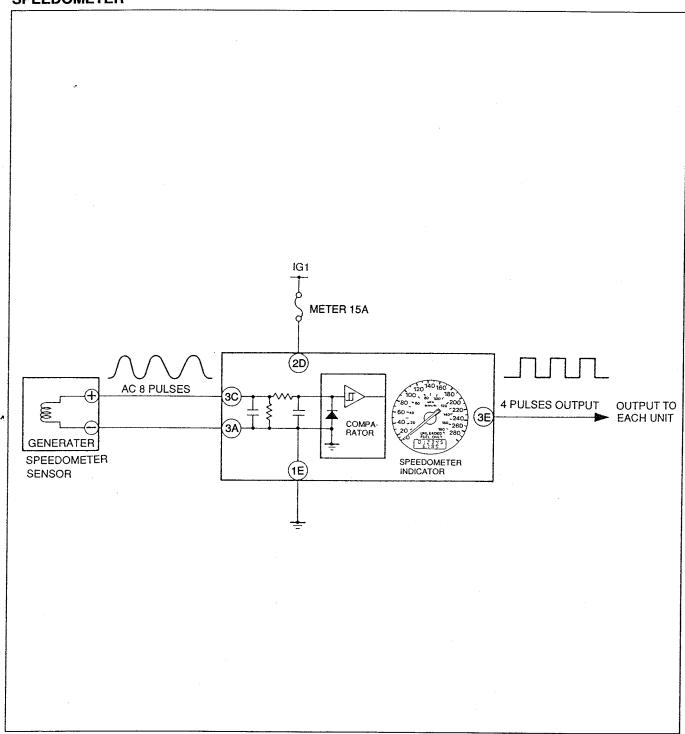
SYSTEM DIAGRAM







SPEEDOMETER



37U0TX-540

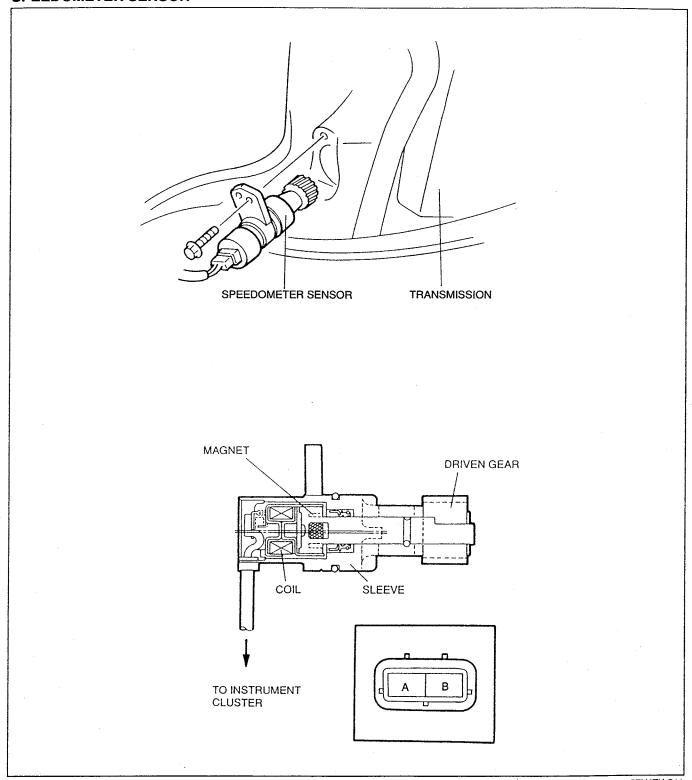
A electronic speedometer is used to reduce vehicle weight. A large analogue meter is used to improve visibility.

Operation

To move the indicator, the cross coil in the speedometer reacts to pulse signals received from the speedometer sensor attached to the transmission.

- 1. The pulse signals from the speedometer sensor turn the comparator ON and OFF, thus counting as the vehicle's speed signals.
- 2. Based on the amount of pulse signals input in a certain time period, the computing element determines the amount of current sent to the cross coils.
- 3. A magnetic field is produced by the current in the cross coils, moving the indicator to show the vehicle speed.

SPEEDOMETER SENSOR



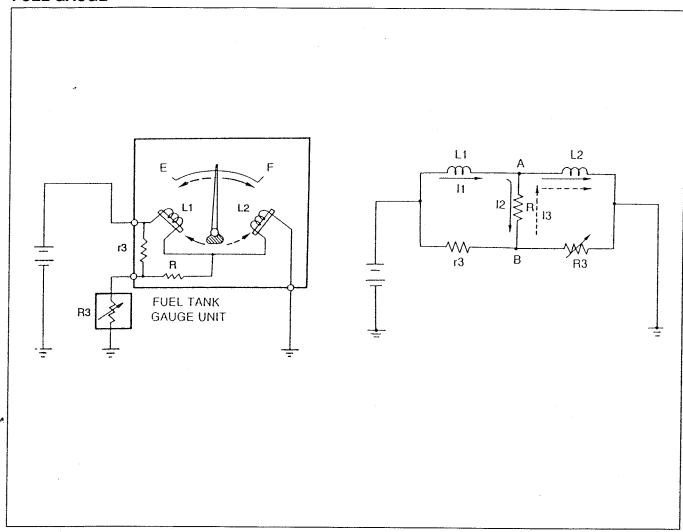
37U0TX-541

The speedometer sensor is driven by the output shaft of the transmission. This sensor sends eight pulses of alternating current signals to the instrument cluster per 1 rotation of the driven gear.

Operation

- 1. The speedometer sensor includes the driven gear, sleeve, and magnetic coil. The driven gear is turned by the output shaft of the transmission.
- 2. The plastic magnet rotates, changing the magnetic field in the coil.
- 3. The coil generate electricity as the magnetic field changes; eight alternating current pulses per rotation of the speedometer sensor driven gear are sent to the speedometer.

FUEL GAUGE



37U0TX-542

 The fuel gauge is a cross-coil, set needle type. It remains in position when the ignition switch is turned OFF.

Operation

- Within the fuel gauge, the movable iron piece is contained in silicone oil that acts as damper.
 The two coils generate magnetic force according to the current flowing through them.
 The movable iron piece is caused to move by the varying magnetic force of the coils.
- When the fuel level is high, the resistance (r₃) of the fuel gauge sender unit becomes lower, causing current (I₁) to become greater (magnetic force generated at coil L₁ becomes stronger), and current (I₂) to become smaller (magnetic force generated at coil L₂ becomes weaker).

As a result, the movable iron piece is pulled in the direction of (L₁), overcoming the viscosity of the silicone oil. The indicator needle thus moves to indicate F.

• When the fuel level is low, the resistance (r₃) of the fuel gauge sender unit becomes higher, causing current (I₁) to become smaller (magnetic force generated at coil L₁ becomes weaker), and current (I₂) to become greater (magnetic force generated at coil L₂ becomes stronger).

As a result, the movable iron piece is pulled in the direction of (L2). The indicator needle thus moves to indicate E.

• When the ignition is switched OFF, the movable iron piece is held at the indicating position by the viscosity of the silicone oil.

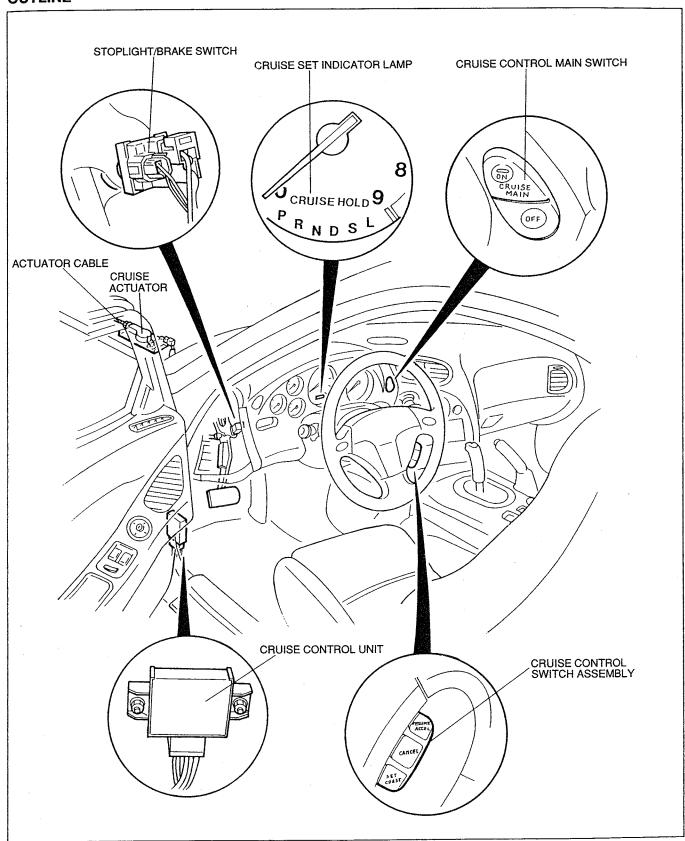
WATER TEMPERATURE GAUGE

• The water temperature gauge is the cross-coil, mid-range-stability indication type. It indicates about mid-point on the gauge at the normal engine operating temperature range (approx. 70—105°C {158—221°F}) to reduce the worry of seeing the gauge at a high point.

CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM

OUTLINE

•



37U0TX-54

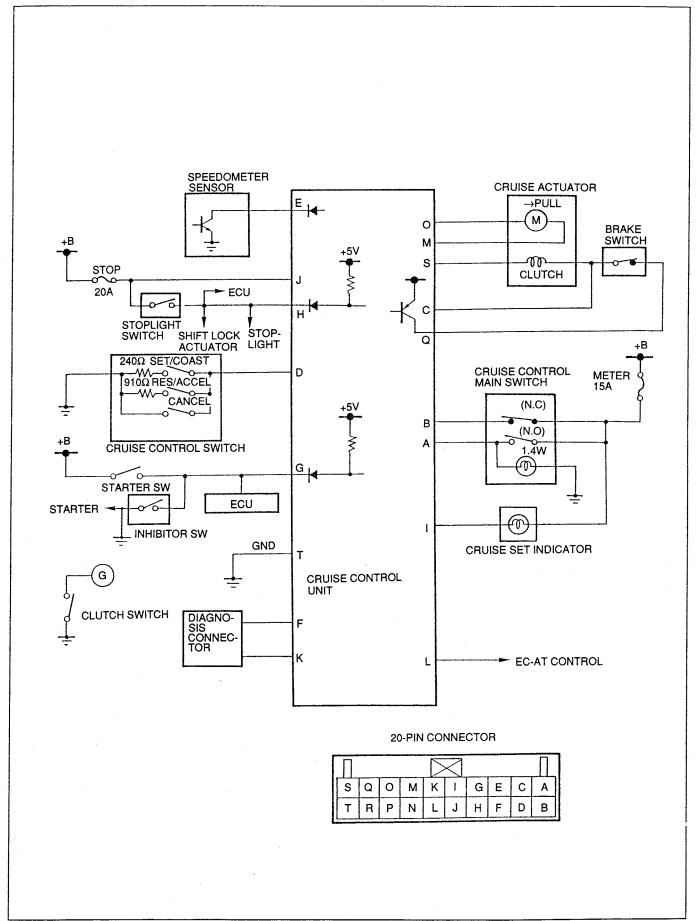
• The cruise control system enables the driver to maintain a set vehicle speed without operating the accelerator pedal.

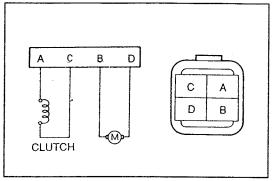
• A motorized actuator is used to control vehicle speed by pulling/releasing the throttle linkage.

SYSTEM COMPONENTS AND FUNCTIONS

| Component | Function | Note |
|----------------------------|--|------------|
| Speedometer sensor | AC signals sent from speedometer sensor (attached to transmission) are transformed into AC signals in speedometer. Transformed vehicle speed signals are sent to cruise control unit. | |
| Cruise control unit | Microcomputer controls all functions including vehicle speed set, resume, coast (decelerate), and cancel. Control unit contains self-diagnosis function. | |
| Cruise actuator | Operates throttle linkage and adjusts vehicle speed based on control unit signals. | Motor type |
| Cruise control main switch | Controls ON/OFF of cruise control system main power. | |
| SET/COAST switch | T/COAST switch SETDetermines cruise control setting speed. COASTPressing and holding switch decreases set speed. | |
| RESUME/ACCEL switch | RESUMEReturns vehicle to set speed if vehicle speed is 40 km/h {25 MPH} or more after cruise control is temporarily cancelled. ACCEL Pressing and holding switch increases set speed. | |
| CANCEL switch | Cancels cruise control setting. | |
| Stoplight switch | Control discontinues to slow down vehicle speed when brake pedal is pressed. | |
| Brake switch | Control discontinues to slow down vehicle speed when brake pedal is pressed. | · |
| Clutch switch (MT) | Cancels cruise control setting when clutch pedal is pressed. | |
| Inhibitor switch (AT) | Cancels cruise control setting when selector lever shifted to P or N range. | |

SYSTEM DIAGRAM





37U0TX-548

CRUISE CONTROL ACTUATOR

- The actuator includes the motor, electromagnetic clutch, reduction gear, drive gear, and drive shaft.
- The motor can rotate in either direction by changes in the polarity of the power source.
- The electromagnetic clutch connects the drive gear and drive shaft (when there is current) and transfers the motor torque to the drive shaft.

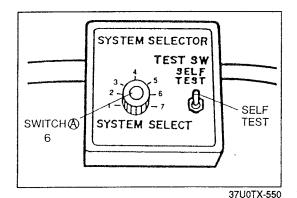
Mode and actuator current

| | Terminal | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------|--------|
| Mode | Accele- ration | Decele ration | Hold | Cancel |
| Motor (current direction) | $B \rightarrow D$ | $D \rightarrow B$ | | D → B |
| Clutch | ON | ON | ON | OFF |

SELF-DIAGNOSIS FUNCTION

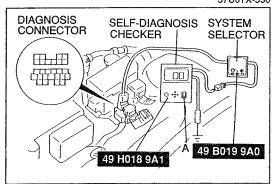
- The self-diagnosis functions are the Condition Detection Mode which indicates troubles in the system, and the Operation Mode which checks for and indicates correct operation of the input signals to
- The Condition Detection Mode check is performed by either of the following methods;
 - 1) Checking output of the diagnosis connector by using the Self-Diagnosis Checker (49 H018 9A1) and the System Selector (49 B019 9A0), or the DT-S1000 Base Unit (49 F088 001).
 - 2) Checking the flashing pattern of the Cruise set indicator lamp in the instrument cluster.
- The Operation Mode check is performed by either of the following methods;
 - 1) Checking output of the diagnosis connector by using the DT-S1000 Base Unit (49 F088 001).
 - 2) Checking the flashing pattern of the Cruise set indicator lamp in the instrument cluster.

37U0TX-549

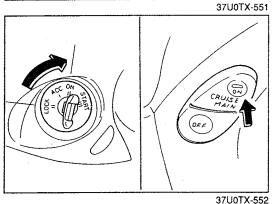


Condition Detection Mode Using Self-Diagnosis Checker Preparation

- 1. Connect the **SST** (System Selector) to the diagnosis connector.
- 2. Set System Selector switch (4) to position 6.
- 3. Set the test switch at SELF-TEST (up).



- 4. Connect the SST (Self-Diagnosis Checker) to the System Selector and ground the black clip to the vehicle.
- 5. Set the Self-Diagnosis Checker switch to position A.

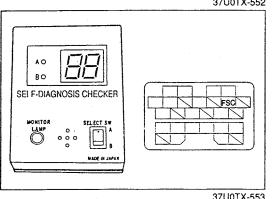


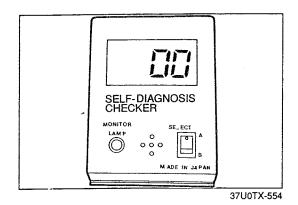
Inspection

- 1. Turn ON the ignition switch while hold ON the cruise control main switch. (The Cruise set indicator lamp will come on.)
- 2. Verify that the Self-Diagnosis Checker buzzers and that Service Code 88 flashes for 3 seconds after turning ON the ignition switch.

Note

- If 88 does not flash, check the power supply units and related wiring harnesses and connectors.
- If 88 flashes and the buzzer sounds continuously for more than 20 seconds, check for a short circuit between the cruise control unit terminal K and the diagnosis connector terminal FSC. Replace the cruise control unit if necessary and inspect again.
- 3. When Service Code **00** is indicated following Code **88**, the system is operating normally.





4. If there is a system malfunction, a different Service Code will appear.

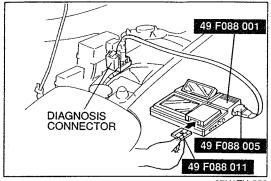
5. Repair or replace the failed part, and repeat the previous steps until Code 00 is indicated.

Cancel

The Condition Detection Mode is canceled by performing one of the following:

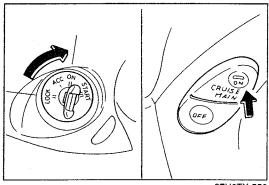
- Turn off the cruise control main switch. (The Cruise set indicator lamp goes off.)

 Turn OFF the ignition switch.
- Drive the vehicle at over 16 km/h {10 MPH} or faster.
- Disconnect the SSTs (system selector and self-diagnosis checker).

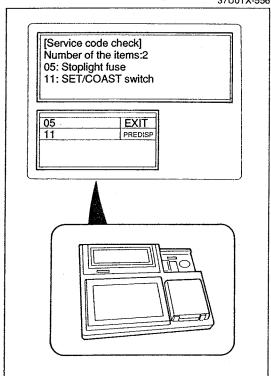


0

37U0TX-555



37U0TX-556



37U0TX-557

Using DT-S1000 Base Unit Preparation

Connect the SST (DT-S1000) to the diagnosis connector.

· Refer to the DT-S1000 operation manual for operation procedures.

Inspection

1. Turn ON the ignition switch while holding ON the cruise control main switch. (The Cruise set indicator lamp will come on.)

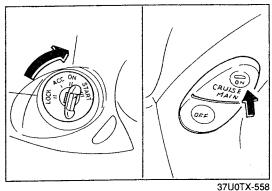
Note

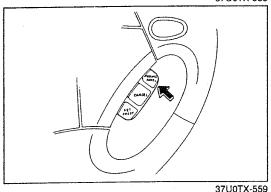
- · When "No service codes." is shown on the display of the DT-S1000, no problem exists in the components in the Service Codes List. (Refer to page T-38.)
- When "System error." is shown, check the SST's connection. When the connection is assured. proceed with troubleshooting, referring to the SST operation manual.
- 2. When problems exist in the system, Service Codes are shown on the display of the DT-S1000.
- 3. Repair or replace the failed part and repeat the previous steps until no Service Code is displayed.

Cancel

The Condition Detection Mode is canceled by performing one of the following:

- Turn OFF the cruise control main switch. (The Cruise set indicator lamp goes off.)
- Turn OFF the ignition switch.
- Touch the EXIT key on the display.
- Drive the vehicle at over 16 km/h {10 MPH}.





Using Cruise Set Indicator Lamp Inspection

1. Turn ON the ignition switch.

2. Turn ON the cruise control main switch. (The Cruise set indicator lamp will come on.)

3. Press and hold the RESUME/ACCEL switch for at least 3 seconds.

(The Cruise set indicator lamp will light for 3 seconds, go out for 2 seconds, and then begin flashing if a problem present.)

4. The self-diagnosis system will be activated and the Cruise set indicator lamp will flash if a problem is pre-

5. Note the Service Code number(s). (Refer to the chart at the bottom of the page.)

- When no problem exists in the system, the Cruise set indicator lamp will not flash.
- If there is more than one malfunction, the code numbers will be indicated in numerical order.

Cancel

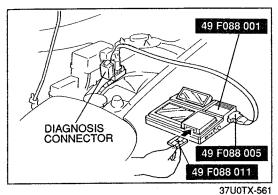
The Condition Detection Mode is canceled by performing one of the following.

- Turn OFF the cruise control main switch. (The Cruise set indicator lamp goes off.)
- Turn OFF the ignition switch.
- Drive the vehicle at over 16 km/h {10 MPH}.

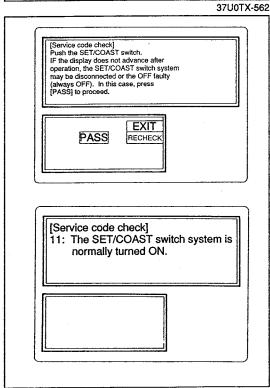
Condition Detection Mode Malfunction Self-Diagnosis

The Cruise set indicator lamp will flash if a malfunction is present.

| Flash pattern (Cruise set indicator lamp) | Code No. | Possible Cause | Action |
|--|-------------|--|---|
| ON | 01 | Defective wiring (Actuator—Cruise control unit; Brake switch—Cruise control unit) Defective ground or wiring (Cruise control unit—Ground) Defective actuator or brake switch | Repair harness Inspect ground circuit condition Inspect actuator Inspect brake switch |
| ON MINI MINI | 05 | STOP 20A fuse blown Defective wiring (Fuse—Cruise control unit) | Replace fuse Repair harness |
| ON MANUEL MANUEL | 07 | Stoplight switch and brake switch are ON simultaneously | Inspect stoplight switch Inspect brake switch |
| ON OFF | 11 | Defective cruise control switch (SET/COAST) (Always ON) | Inspect cruise control switch |
| ON OFF | 12 | Defective Cruise control switch (RESUME/ ACCEL) (Always ON) | Inspect cruise control switch |
| ON OFF | 15 | Defective cruise control unit | Replace cruise control unit |



CRUISE PLANA



Operation Mode Using DT-S1000 Base Unit Preparation

Connect the SST (DT-S1000) to the diagnosis connector.

Note

Refer to the DT-S1000 operation manual for the operation procedures.

Inspection

1. Shift the transmission to D or R range. (AT)
Shift the transmission to any gear except neutral. (MT)

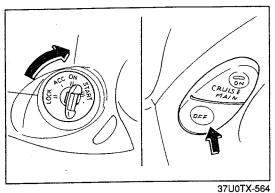
2. Turn ON the ignition switch, while holding ON the cruise control main switch and RESUME/ACCEL switch. (The Cruise set indicator lamp will come on.)

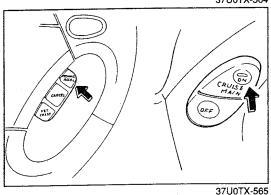
 Operate each switch according to the directions shown on the display of the DT-S1000, and verify output of the Operation Codes. (Refer to page T-40.)

Cancel

The Operation Mode is canceled by performing one of the following:

- Turn OFF the cruise control main switch. (The Cruise set indicator lamp goes off.)
- Turn OFF the ignition switch.
- Touch the EXIT key on the display.





Using Cruise Set Indicator Lamp Inspection

1. Turn ON the ignition switch.

2. Verify that the cruise control main switch is OFF. (The Cruise set indicator lamp goes off.)

3. Shift the transmission to D or R range. (AT)
Shift the transmission to any gear except neutral. (MT)

- 4. Press the RESUME/ACCEL switch and the cruise control main switch simultaneously to activate system inspection. (The Cruise set indicator lamp will come on.)
- 5. Operate each switch as described below and verify the Operation Codes.

Cance

The Operation Mode is canceled by performing one of the following:

- Turn OFF the cruise control main switch. (The Cruise set indicator lamp goes off.)
- Turn OFF the ignition switch.

Operation Mode

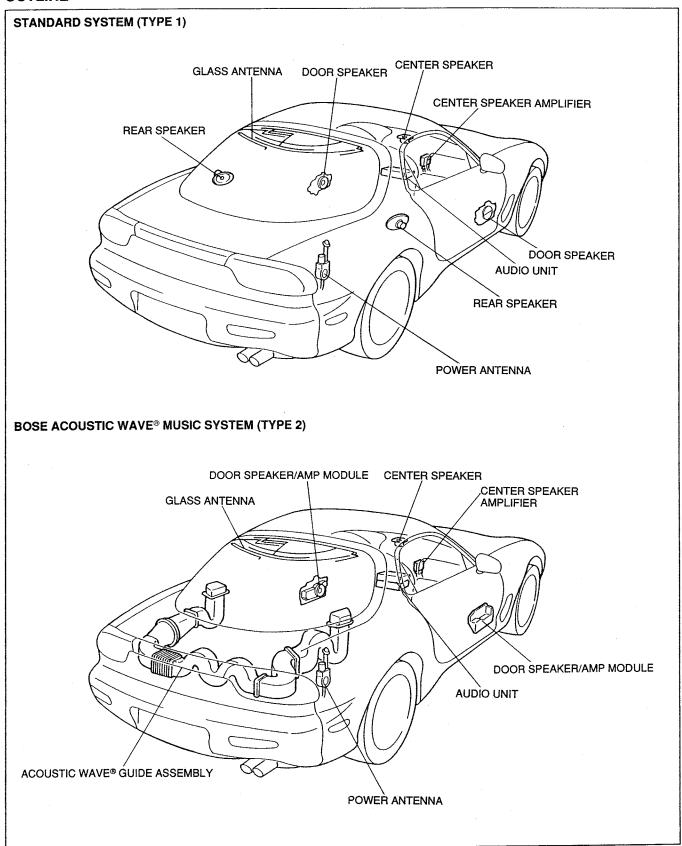
Inspection of Cruise Control System

The Cruise set indicator lamp will flash if the system is operating correctly. If the lamp fails to flash, inspect the system as shown.

| | Normal | | Malfunction | | |
|---|---|-------------|---|---|--|
| Procedure | Output signal (Cruise set indicator lamp) | Code No. | Possible Cause | Action | |
| Press SET/ COAST switch | ON OFF | 21 | Defective cruise control switch Defective wiring (Control unit—SET/COAST switch—Ground) | Inspect cruise control switch Repair harness | |
| Press RESUME/ ACCEL switch | ON OFF | 22 | Defective RESUME/ACCEL switch Defective wiring (Control unit—RESUME/ACCEL switch—Ground) | Inspect cruise control switch Repair harness | |
| Press brake pedal | ON OFF | 31 | Defective stoplight switch Defective wiring (Control unit—Stoplight switch—Ground) | Inspect stoplight switch Repair harness | |
| Turn ON Ignition switch shift Shift transmission to P or N range (AT) Depress clutch pedal or shift transmission to neutral position (MT) | ON TOTAL TOTAL OFF | 35 | Defective inhibitor switch (AT) Defective wiring (Control unit—Inhibitor switch— Clutch switch—Control unit) Defective clutch switch (MT) | Inspect inhibitor switch (AT) Repair harness Inspect clutch switch (MT) | |
| Drive vehicle above 40 km/h {25 MPH} | ON OFF | 37 | Defective speedometer sensor or speedometer Defective wiring (Control unit—Speedometer—Speedometer sensor) | Inspect speedometer sensor Inspect speedometer Repair harness | |

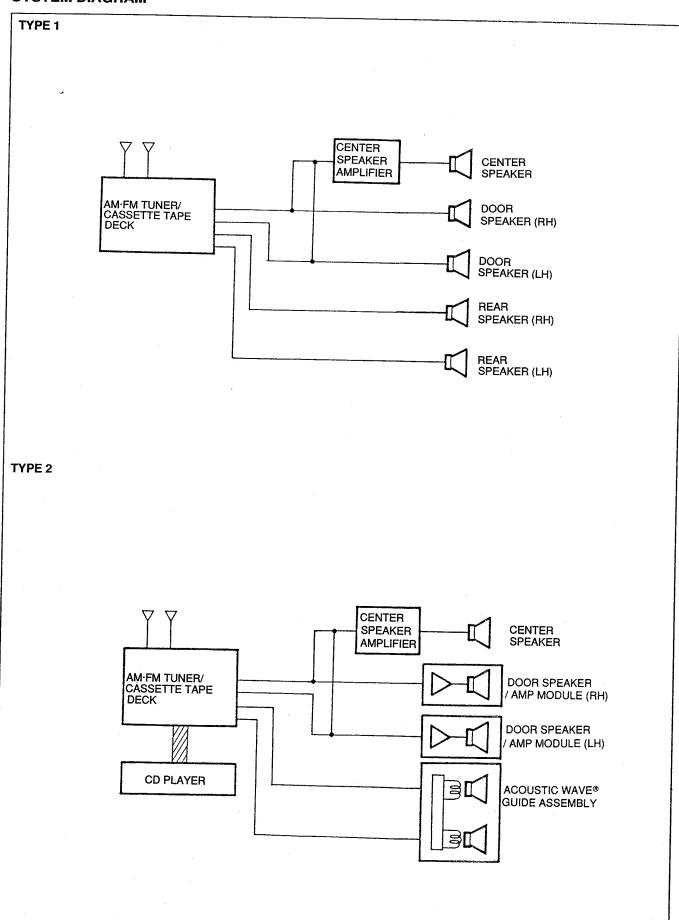
AUDIO

OUTLINE



Two audio systems are available. With Type 2, the Bose Acoustic Wave® Music System, powerful bass reproduction with lower distortion than previous car audio systems and true fidelity are provided.

SYSTEM DIAGRAM



SPECIFICATION AM-FM Tuner/Cassette Tape Deck (Type 1)

| Rated Voltage | 12V | |
|----------------|--|--|
| Frequency band | AM 530—1,710 KHz FM 87.75—107.9 MHz | |
| Max. output | 25W×4 | |

37U0TX-569

AM-FM Tuner/Cassette Tape Deck (Type 2)

| Rated Voltage | 12V | |
|----------------|--|--|
| Frequency band | AM 530—1,710 KHz FM 87.75—107.9 MHz | |

37U0TX-570

Compact Disc (CD) Player

| Rated voltage | 12V | |
|---------------|--|--|
| CD type | 8 cm (single size)/12 cm (regular size) CD | |

37U0TX-571

Center Speaker Amplifier

| May output | Type 1 | 25W × 1 |
|-------------|--------|---------|
| Max. output | Type 2 | 15W×1 |

37U0TX-572

Speaker (Type 1)

| | | Center speaker | Door speaker | Rear speaker |
|--------------------|---------|---------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| Structure | | Single cone | Double cone | Double cone |
| Diameter | cm {in} | 8 {3.15} | 16 {6.30} | 14 × 19 {5.5 × 7.5} |
| Number equipped | | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| Туре | | Mid- and high-range | Full-range | Full-range |
| Max. input | {W} | 25×1 | 25 (each) | 25 (each) |
| Built-in amplifier | | No | No | No |
| Impedance | {Ω} | 4 | 4 | 4 |

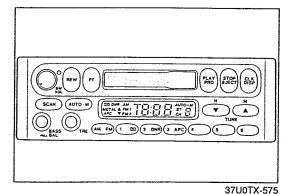
37U0TX-573

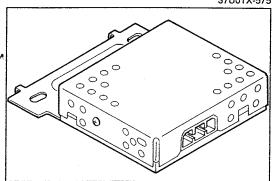
(Type 2)

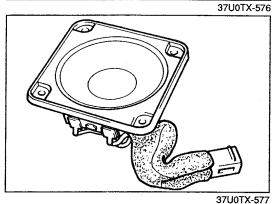
| | | Center speaker | Door speaker/Amp module | Acoustic Wave® Guide Assembly |
|---------------------|---------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Structure | | Single cone | Single cone | Single cone |
| Diameter | cm {in} | 6.4 {2.5} | 11.4 {4.5} | 16.5 {6.5} |
| Number equipped | | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| Туре | | Mid- and high-range | Full-range | Woofer |
| Impedance | {Ω} | 4 | 1 | 1 (each) |
| Amplifier location | | External (in console) | Internal | Internal |
| Amplifiers/Device | | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| Max Amplifier input | {V} | 5.5 | 5.5 (each) | 5.5 |
| Amplifier output | {W} | 15 | 50 (each) | 50 × 2 |

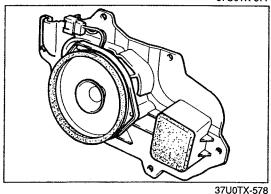
STANDARD SYSTEM (Type 1)

• The standard system drives five speakers (two door speakers, two rear speakers, and a center speaker) for powerful sound production.









AM·FM Tuner/Cassette Tape Deck

- The preset function allows storing the frequencies of up to 15 stations (5 stations each for AM, FM1, and FM2).
- The automatic memory function searches for and memorizes the frequencies of up to 18 (6 stations each for AM, FM1, and FM2) of the strongest stations.
- The APC (automatic program control) function enables search of the beginning of the desired program during play of a cassette tape.
- The cassette tape automatic detection function detects the tape type and displays METAL when a metal or chromium tape is inserted.
- The display function displays the total time of playback, fast forward, and rewind of a tape.

Center Speaker Amplifier

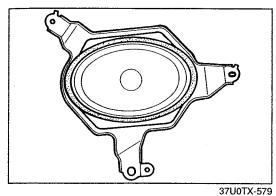
 The amplifier for the center speaker is mounted under the dashboard at the passenger side of center.

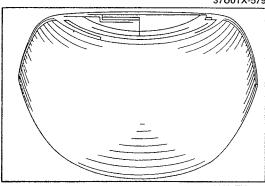
Center Speaker

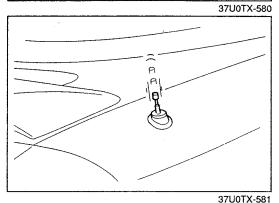
 A center speaker is mounted in the middle of the dashboard. This speaker is exclusively for the mid- and high-range tones and provides improved stereophonic reproduction in the front of the passenger compartment.

Door Speaker

A large-diameter speaker is mounted in each door.







Rear Speaker

A full-range speaker is mounted in each rear seat quarter trim.

Glass Antenna (Type 1, Type 2)

A glass-mounted antenna is employed to pick up FM stations.

A diversity system is used to reduce the occurrence of multipath noise in FM reception.

The diversity in the audio unit selects the use of the glass-mounted antenna or the pole antenna.

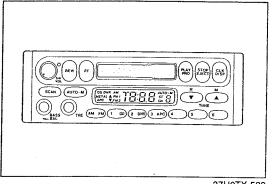
Whichever gives the best reception is used.

Power Antenna (Type 1, Type 2)

An electric pole antenna is fitted to the rear of the vehicle. When the radio is turned ON or OFF the antenna extends or retracts.

BOSE ACOUSTIC WAVE® MUSIC SYSTEM (Type2)

• The Bose Acoustic Wave® Music System is custom designed for the vehicle to make the passenger compartment a veritable audio room. It consists of the Audio Unit, door speaker with built-in amplifier modules, center speaker with amplifier module, and the Acoustic Wave® Guide Assembly.



37U0TX-582

AM·FM Tuner/Cassette Tape Deck

The preset function allows storing the frequencies of up to 15 stations (5 stations each for AM, FM1, and FM2).

The automatic memory function searches for and memorizes the frequencies of up to 18 (6 stations each for AM, FM1, and FM2) of the strongest stations.

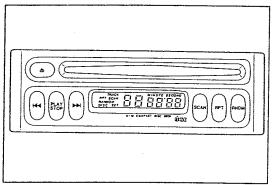
 The APC (automatic program control) function enables search of the beginning of the desired program during play of a cassette tape.

 The cassette tape automatic detection function detects the tape type and displays METAL when a metal or chromium tape is inserted.

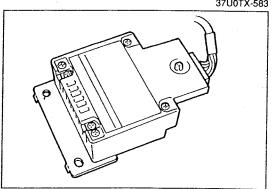
· The display function displays the total time of playback fast forward, and rewind of a tape.

 The DNR (dynamic noise reduction) function reduces the high-range noise in the tone during play of a tape.

 A special audio unit for the Acoustic Wave® Music System is provided. This unit operates at pre-amp output levels because the amplifiers for the system are distributed. There is no fader control in this unit because there are no high frequencies produced in the Acoustic wave® Guide Assembly.



37U0TX-583



37U0TX-584

Compact Disc (CD) Player

 The thin-style CD player can play 8cm (single size) and 12cm (regular size) compact discs.

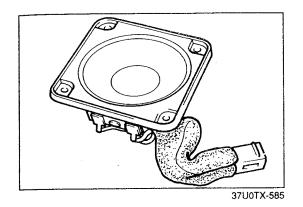
The repeat function allows repeated playback of a selected tune.

 The random function provides playback of the tunes in a random order.

Center Speaker Amplifier

The amplifier for the center speaker is mounted under the dashboard at the passenger side of center.

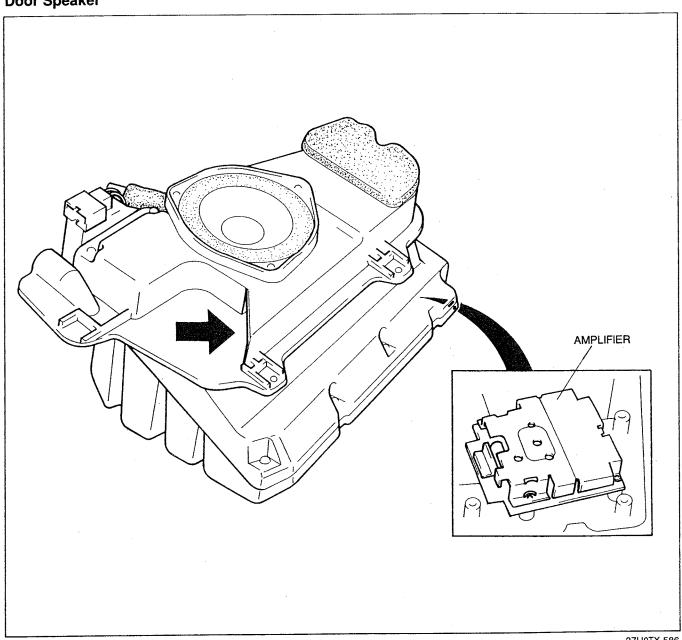
 The amplifier is a low power type which requires a small radiating surface and is lighter than larger units.



Center Speaker

- A center speaker is mounted in the middle of the dashboard. This speaker is exclusively for the mid- and high-range tones and provides improved stereophonic reproduction in the front of the passenger compartment.
- The tweeter/mid-range hybrid speakers provide undistorted sound in the high-frequency range, recreating sound close to a live performance.

Door Speaker

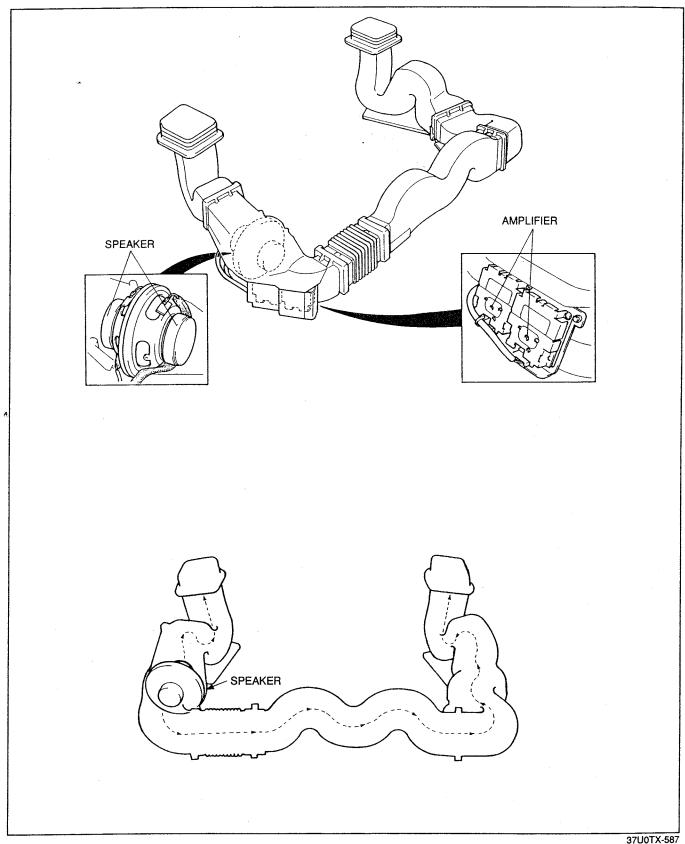


37U0TX-586

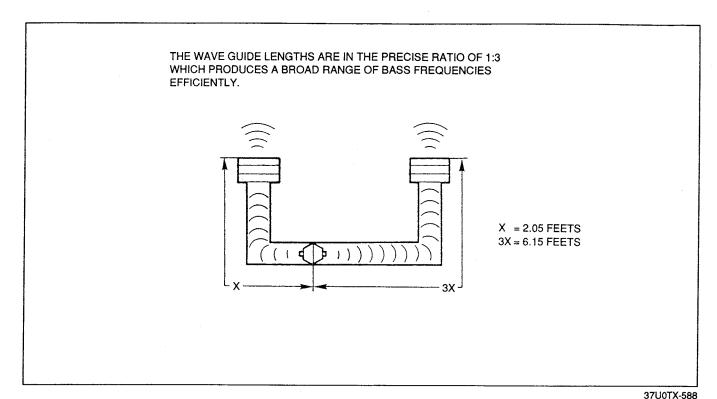
The door speakers consist of 4.5" Helical Voice Coil Full-Range Drivers mounted in a bass-reflex ported tuned enclosures custom designed for the doors.

These enclosures enable large output with low distortion from relatively small speakers. Powerful switch mode type amplifier modules in the enclosures tailor the input signal to the precise output characteristics desired.

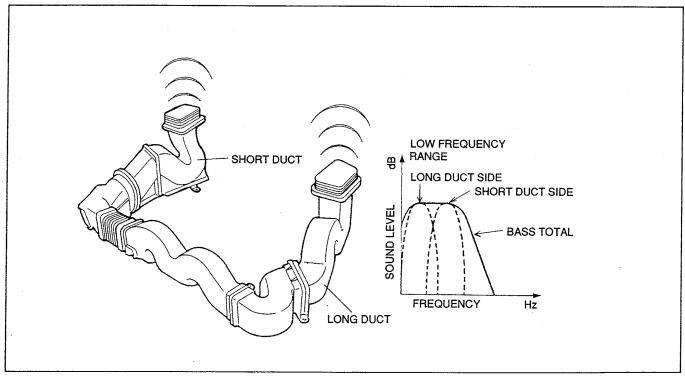
Acoustic Wave® Guide Assembly



The main feature of the Acoustic Wave® Guide Assembly is its superior reproduction of bass with very low distortion. It provides large output with small input in much the same way that a flute can fill an entire concert hall. It covers a frequency range of approximately 40 Hz to 200 Hz. Through its unique design and the use of light-weight plastic, bass sound reproduction equivalent to a 30 kg (66 lb) sealed speaker cabinet is produced form a compact, 7 kg (17 lb) assembly.



The Acoustic Wave® Guide Assembly includes two 6.5 inch {16.5 cm} speakers and two related amplifier modules. The two speakers are placed face-to-face in the left section of the ducting. The length of the Acoustic Wave® Guides are in a precise ratio of 1:3 which produces high efficiency, low distortion bass over a broad frequency range. This is determined so that each Acoustic Wave® Guides operates efficiently in a specific frequency range that is inversely proportional to its length, and produces large acoustic output.

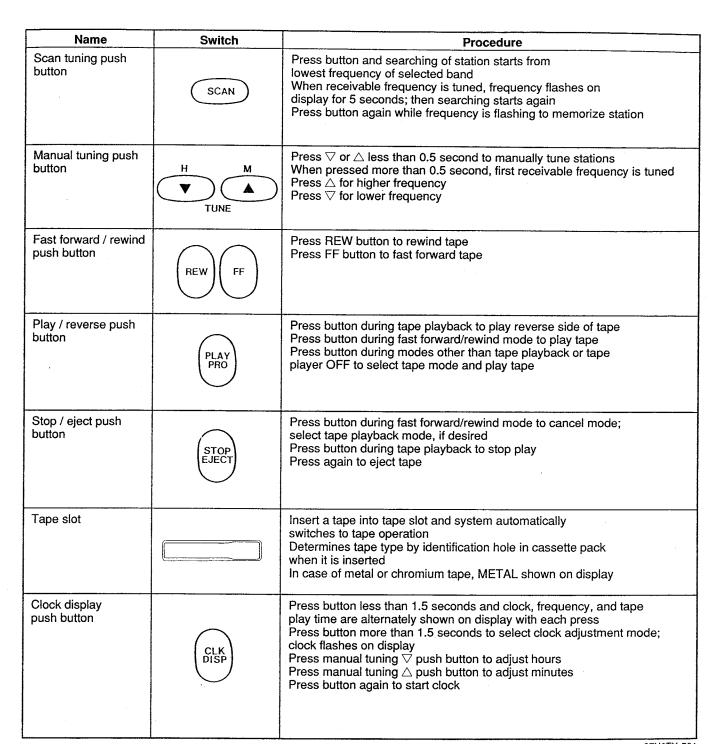


37U0TX-589

In the lowest frequency, the longer duct has higher resonance efficiency. When the frequency increases, the shorter duct becomes more efficient, and then the longer duct functions efficiently again. When combined, the ducts provides uninterrupted powerful low frequency output. And when integrated into the acoustic design of the rest of the audio system, the Acoustic Wave® Music System produces an extraordinarily lifelike sound.

OPERATION DESCRIPTION AM-FM Tuner/Cassette Tape Deck

| Name | Switch | Procedure |
|--|------------------------------|--|
| Radio ON / OFF and volume control knob | sw vol | Press knob to turn radio ON / OFF Turn knob clockwise to increase volume Turn knob counterclockwise to decrease volume |
| Bass / balance control knob | BASS PULL BAL | Press and release to set knob to first position Turn knob clockwise for more lows Turn knob counterclockwise for less lows Pull to set knob to second position Turn knob clockwise to shift sound to left Turn knob counterclockwise to shift sound to right |
| Treble control knob | TRE | Press and release to set knob to first position Turn knob clockwise for more highs Turn knob counterclockwise for less highs |
| Band selector push button | | 1. Press button to change bands AM, FM1, and FM2 modes are alternatively selected as shown AM FM1 FM2 FM2 |
| | AM FM | When stereophonic broadcasting is received in FM1 or FM2 mode, ST is shown on display |
| | | During tape mode, press and hold this button and △ of the manual tuning push button simultaneously for more than 3 seconds and tape counter is reset to zero |
| Channel preset tuning push button | 1 DD 2 DNR 3 APC 4 5 6 | Six buttons are equipped to set frequencies of up to six stations each for AM, FM1, and FM2 1. Setting frequency Select frequency and press and hold preset button more than 1.5 seconds 2. Tuning to preset frequency Press desired preset button for less than 1.5 seconds |
| Auto memory tuning push button | | Setting frequency Press and hold button more than 1.5 seconds Searching starts from lowest frequency within selected band and six strongest stations are selected and memorized Tuning to preset frequency Press button for less than 1.5 seconds and memorized frequencies are tuned one by one with each press |
| | (AUTO·M) | CH1 |
| | | When preset frequencies are less than six, number of receivable frequencies is shown on display. When there are no receivable frequencies, flashes twice on display. |
| | | During tape mode, press and hold this button more than 1.5 seconds to display total time of playback, fast forward, and rewind of a tape (unit: hours {H}), and to decide head replacement time |



| Name | Switch | Procedure | |
|--|------------|---|--|
| APC (automatic program control) push button | 3 APC | Press button during tape playback and APC appears on display In this condition, press FF button to skip to beginning of next program Press REW button during tape playback to rewind tape to beginning of current tune APC detects silence of more than 15 seconds and automatically skips forward to next recorded section | |
| Dolby noise reduction push button | 1 00 | Press button when playing tape encoded with Dolby NR Dolby alternately turns ON / OFF with each press | |
| DNR (dynamic noise reduction) push button ※2 | 2 DNR | During tape mode, DNR alternately turns ON/OFF with each press of this button. While system is ON, DNR appears on display. | |
| Anti-theft indicator | sw vol. | The anti theft illumination lamp flashes when anti theft function is working (Ignition switch OFF) | |

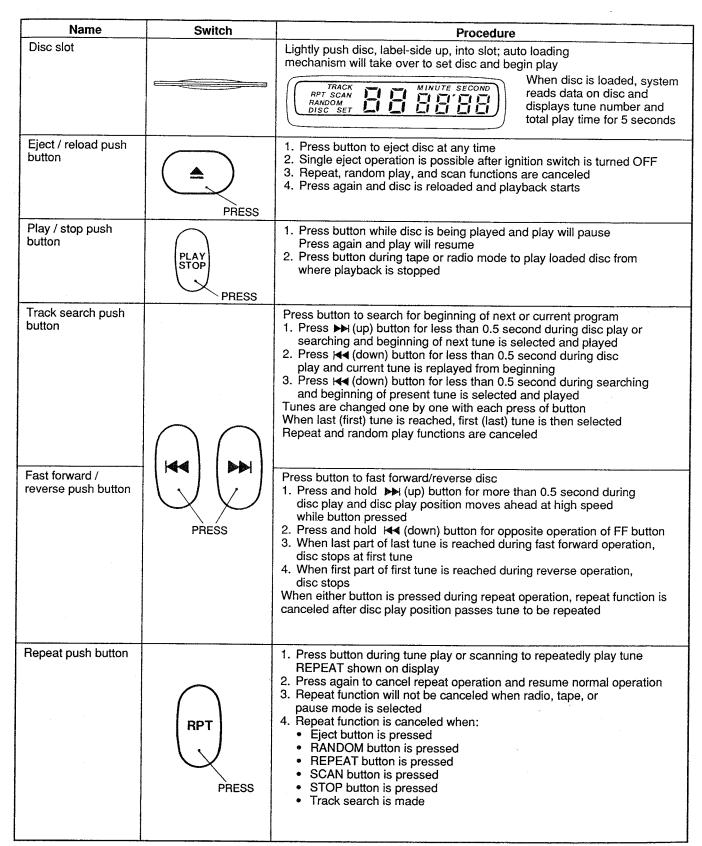
- #1 The Dolby noise reduction system is manufactured under license of the Dolby Laboratory Licensing Corporation.

 DOLBY and □ are registered trade marks of Dolby Laboratory Licensing Corporation.
- ***2** The dynamic noise reduction system is manufactured under license of National Semiconductor Co., Ltd. DNR is the registered trade mark of National Semiconductor Co., Ltd.

The dynamic noise reduction system changes the high-range frequency characteristics to reduce noise peculiar to high-pitched tone.

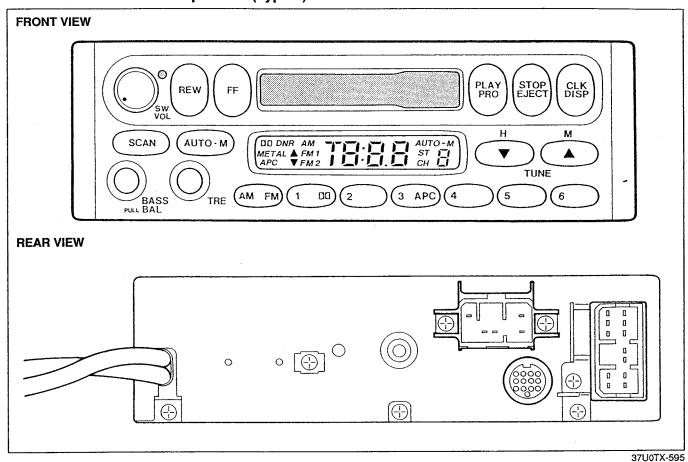
The effect is heard especially for low tones.

During tape playback, joint use with the Dolby noise reduction system is recommended for greater effect.



| Name | Switch | Procedure |
|-------------------------|--------|--|
| Scan push button | SCAN | 1. Press button during disc play and scanning starts from next tune SCAN shown on display 2. Press button during searching and scanning starts from present tune SCAN shown on display 3. Press button and first 10 seconds of each tune is played 4. Press button again during scanning and present tune is played 5. Scanning function is canceled when: • All programs on disc have been scanned • REPEAT button is pressed • RANDOM button is pressed • SCAN button is pressed • STOP button is pressed • STOP button is pressed • Deration mode is changed to radio, tape, or pause • Ignition switch is turned OFF |
| Random play push button | RNDM | Press button to play tunes on disc in a random order 1. Press button during disc play or searching and disc play position moves at high speed RANDOM shown on display 2. When random searching is completed, playback starts Program No. and play time (0'00) are shown on display After first tune is played, next random tune is played 3. Random play function is canceled when: • REPEAT button is pressed • RANDOM button is pressed • SCAN button is pressed • STOP button is pressed • Eject button is pressed • Operation mode is changed to radio, tape, or pause • Ignition switch is turned OFF |

CONNECTOR TERMINAL SPECIFICATIONS AM-FM Tuner / Cassette Tape Deck (Type 1)



3/0017-59

8-pin connector

| 21 | | < | 2C | 2A |
|-----|----|----|----|----|
| 2.J | 2H | 2F | 2D | 2B |

| 2A | Rear speaker (LH) ⊕ |
|----|----------------------|
| 2B | Rear speaker (LH) ⊝ |
| 2C | |
| 2D | |
| 2F | Rear speaker (RH) ⊕ |
| 2H | Rear speaker (RH) ⊝ |
| 21 | System mute (Output) |
| 2J | |

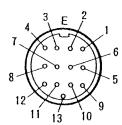
V_B: Battery voltage

12-pin connector

1M 1K 1E 1C 1A 1N 1L 1J 1H 1F 1D 1B

| 1A | ACC |
|----|----------------------|
| 1B | |
| 1C | Backup power (Vв) |
| 1D | Ant. SW (13.2V) |
| 1E | TNS |
| 1F | Illumi. ⊖ |
| 1H | |
| 1J | Amp. control (13.2V) |
| 1K | Front speaker (LH) ⊕ |
| 1L | Front speaker (LH) ⊖ |
| 1M | Front speaker (RH)⊕ |
| 1N | Front speaker (RH) ⊝ |

DIN connector 13-pin

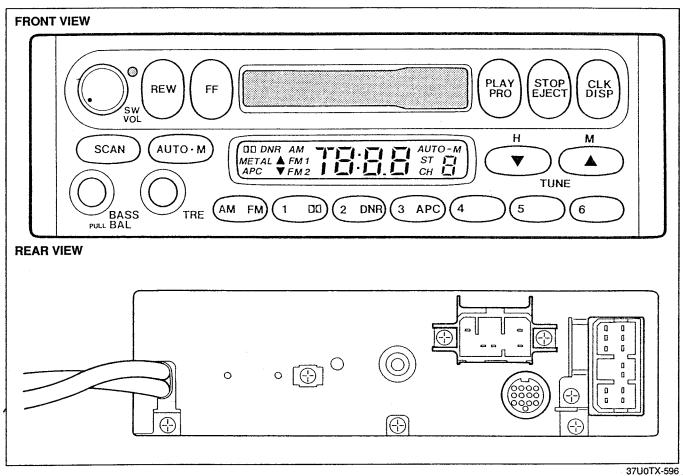


| | V _B : Battery voltage |
|----|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Output LH ⊕ |
| 2 | Input LH ⊕ |
| 3 | Output RH ⊕ |
| 4 | Input RH ⊕ |
| 5 | Signal ground |
| 6 | TNS |
| 7 | ACC |
| 8 | Backup power (V _B) |
| 9 | System control ON |
| 10 | Illumi. ⊖ |
| 11 | System control OFF |
| 12 | System control (play) |
| 13 | Mute (input) |
| Ε | Shield earth |

1-pin connector

| Α | Earth | |
|---|-------|--|
| | | |

AM-FM Tuner / Cassette Tape Deck (Type 2)



V_B: Battery voltage

8-pin connector

| 21 | U | $\geq \leq$ | | | 2C | 2A |
|----|---|-------------|----|---|----|----|
| 2J | Н | 2H | 2F | H | 2D | 2B |

| 2A | Output LH ⊕ |
|----|----------------------|
| 2B | Output LH ⊝ |
| 2C | |
| 2D | |
| 2F | Output RH ⊕ |
| 2H | Output RH ⊝ |
| 21 | System mute (Output) |
| 2J | |

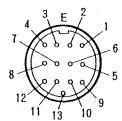
V_B: Battery voltage

12-pin connector

| - 1 | | |
|-----|----|--------------------------------|
| | 1B | |
| | 1C | Backup power (V _B) |
| | 1D | Ant. SW (13.2V) |
| | 1E | TNS |
| | 1F | Illumi.⊖ |
| | 1H | Ground |
| | 1J | Amp. control (13.2V) |
| | 1K | Output LH |
| | 1L | Output LH ⊝ |
| | 1M | Output RH ⊕ |
| | 1N | Output RH ⊖ |
| | | |

1A ACC

DIN connector 13-pin



| 1 | Output LH ⊕ |
|----|--------------------------------|
| 2 | Input LH ⊕ |
| 3 | Output RH ⊕ |
| 4 | Input RH ⊕ |
| 5 | Signal ground |
| 6 | TNS |
| 7 | ACC |
| 8 | Backup power (V _B) |
| 9 | System control ON |
| 10 | Illumi. ⊖ |
| 11 | System control OFF |
| 12 | System control (play) |
| 13 | Mute (input) |
| E | Shield earth |

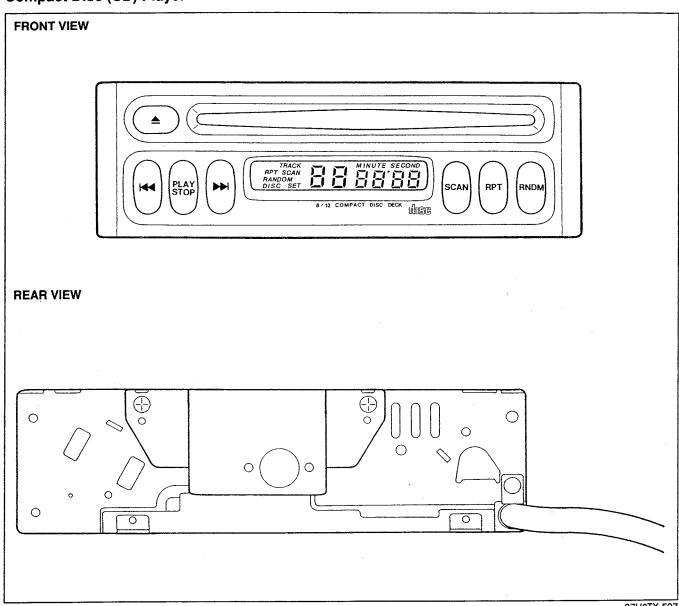
1-pin connector

Α

| Α | Earth | · | |
|---|-------|---|--|
| | | | |

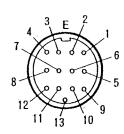
Compact Disc (CD) Player

(



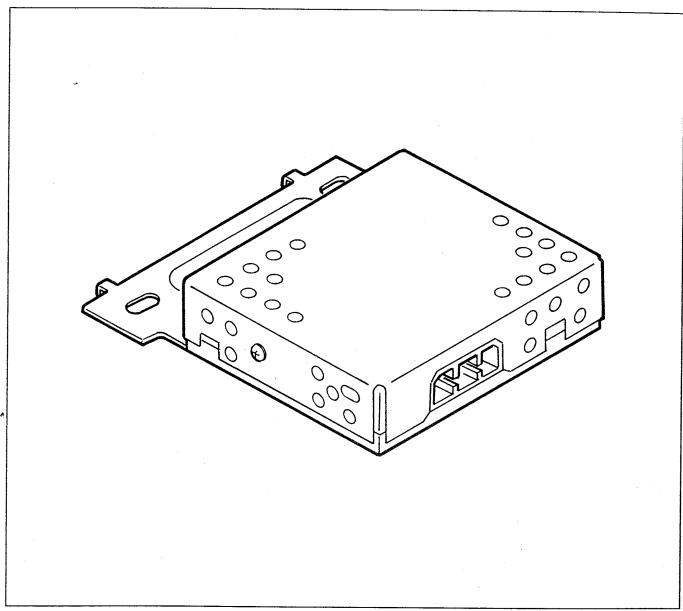
37U0TX-597

DIN connector 13-pin



| | V _B : Battery voltage |
|----|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Input LH ⊕ |
| 2 | Output LH |
| 3 | Input RH ⊕ |
| 4 | Output RH ⊕ |
| 5 | Signal ground |
| 6 | TNS |
| 7 | ACC |
| 8 | Backup power (V _B) |
| 9 | System control OFF |
| 10 | Illumi. 🖯 |
| 11 | System control ON (aux) |
| 12 | System control (play) |
| 13 | Mute (output) |
| Е | Shield earth |

Center Speaker Amplifier (Type 1)



37U0TX-598

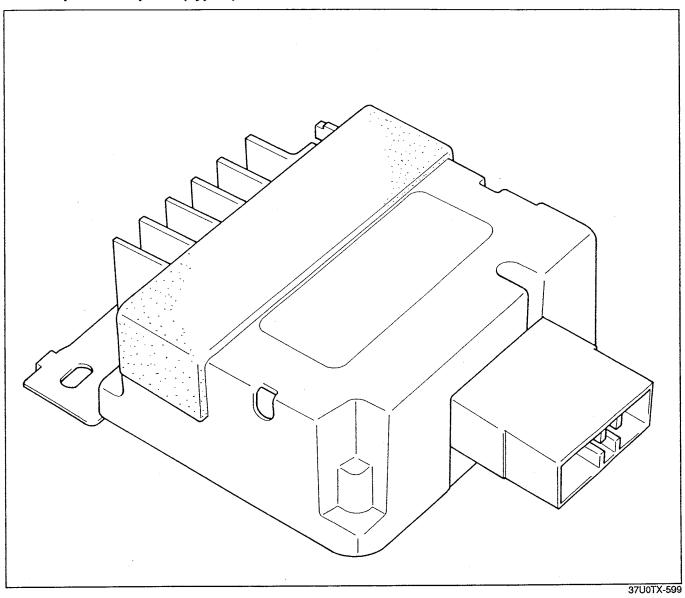
14-pin connector

| 0 | М | К | | | E | С | Α |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Р | N | L | J | Н | F | D | В |

| Α | |
|---|---------------------------|
| В | Power ground |
| С | ACC |
| D | Amp. control (13.2V) |
| E | |
| F | Center speaker ⊕ (Output) |
| Н | Center speaker ⊝ (Output) |
| J | System mute |
| K | |
| L | |
| М | Input LH ⊕ |
| N | Input LH ⊝ |
| 0 | Input RH ⊕ |
| Р | Input RH ⊝ |

Center Speaker Amplifier (Type 2)

0



14-pin connector

| 0 | М | K | | \leq | E | С | Α |
|---|---|---|---|--------|---|---|---|
| Р | N | L | J | Н | F | D | В |

V_B: Battery voltage

| Α | |
|---|---------------------------|
| В | Power ground |
| С | |
| D | Vв |
| Е | |
| F | Center speaker ⊕ (Output) |
| Н | Center speaker ⊝ (Output) |
| J | |
| Κ | |
| L | |
| М | Input LH ⊕ |
| N | Input LH ⊝ |
| 0 | Input RH ⊕ |
| Р | Input RH ⊝ |
| | |

TERMINAL DESCRIPTIONS

V_B: Battery voltage

| Terminal | Description | |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| ACC | Input power for audio unit | |
| Backup power (V _B) | Input power for backup power for preset frequencies and clock | |
| TNS | | |
| Illumi. ⊝ | Input power terminal for panel illumination | |
| Center speaker ⊕ | | |
| Center speaker ⊝ | For center speaker | |
| Amp. control (13.2V) | Control output power terminal to control amplifier operation input power terminal | |
| Shield earth | To protect DIN cord and to shut out electrical noise | |
| Front speaker RH ⊕ | | |
| Front speaker RH ⊝ | For RH front speaker | |
| Front speaker LH ⊕ | | |
| Front speaker LH ⊖ | For LH front speaker | |
| Rear speaker RH ⊕ | | |
| Rear speaker LH 🕀 | For rear speaker | |
| System mute | For noise cut signal to amplifiers when operation mode is changed | |
| Веер | For production of beep sound during audio system operation | |

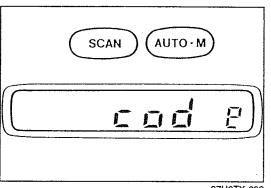
ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

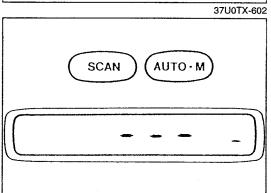
Note

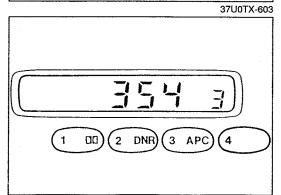
- When activated, the anti-theft system is triggered if the electrical power source is disconnected from the audio unit. If the system is triggered, the audio unit will be inoperative when reconnected to a power supply, and "code" will flash on the display until the preselected code number is input. If the anti-theft system is activated, reset the unit as described under "Canceling Anti-theft Operation".
- The anti-theft system is triggered under the following conditions if the system protection has been activated.
 - 1. A battery cable is disconnected.
 - 2. Battery is discharged.
 - 3. Audio unit connectors are disconnected.

| Operation | Reference page | |
|--|-------------------------------------|--|
| Input code number to activate anti-theft system | T-61 Setting code number | |
| Delete previous code number and set new number | T-63 Canceling code number | |
| Resume audio unit operation after anti-theft system is triggered | T-65 Canceling anti-theft operation | |

37U0TX-601







Setting Code Number

Note

 Input the code number within 10 seconds, or the display will be deleted. If deleted, repeat the procedure from Step 1.

Step 1

With the ignition switch in the ACC position, turn OFF the audio unit.

Step 2

Press and hold the SCAN and AUTO-M buttons simultaneously unit "code" appears on the display (approx. 1.5 seconds).

Step 3

Press the SCAN and AUTO-M buttons again until bars appear on the display.

Note

- Input the code number within 10 seconds, or the display will be deleted. If deleted, repeat the procedure from Step 1.
- Complete steps 1-3 within 10 seconds, or the setting procedure will be canceled.

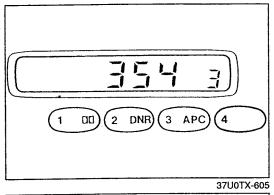
Step 4

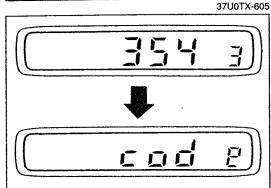
Caution

 Record the code number before attempting to input it. If the number is input and then forgotten, it cannot be canceled and the audio unit will be rendered inoperative if ever disconnected.

Note

 Input the code number within 10 seconds, or the display will be deleted. If deleted, repeat the procedure from Step 1.





While the bars are displayed, input the personally selected code number by pressing preset channel buttons 1, 2, 3, and 4. Use 1 for the first digit, 2 for the second, 3 for the third, and 4 for the last digit.

Example: Inputting code number 3543

Press 1 four times, 2 six times, 3 five times, and 4 four times.

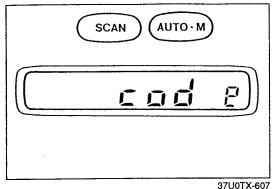
Step 5

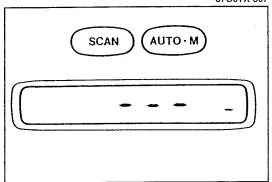
With the code number displayed, press and hold the SCAN and AUTO-M buttons until a beep is heard (approx. 1.5 seconds).

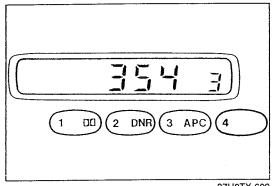
"Code" will be displayed for approximately 5 seconds, and after it disappears, the number is set.

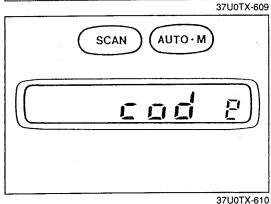
Note

- If "Err" (error) appears on the display, repeat the procedure from Step 1.
- If input error is repeated three times, temporarily turn OFF the ignition switch and restart the procedure.









Canceling Code Number

Step 1

With the ignition switch in the ACC position, turn OFF the audio unit.

Step 2

Press and hold the SCAN and AUTO-M buttons simultaneously until "code" flashes on the display.

Step 3

Note

 Complete Steps 1-3 within 10 seconds, or the canceling procedure will canceled.

Press SCAN and AUTO-M buttons again until bars appear on the display.

Step 4

37U0TX-608

While the bars are displayed, input the current code number as described in Setting Code Number, STep 4.

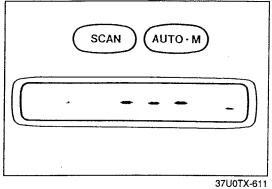
Step 5

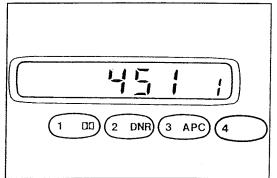
With the code number on the display, press and hold the SCAN and AUTO-M until a beep is heard (approx. 1.5 seconds).

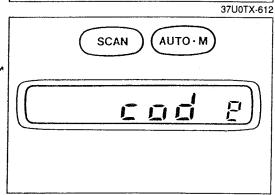
"Code" will be displayed for approximately 5 seconds and the code number is canceled. The display then resumes the code number setting condition.

Note

- Input the code number within 10 seconds, or the display will be deleted. If deleted, repeat the procedure from Step 1.
- If "Err" (error) appears on the display, repeat the procedure from Step 1.
- If "code" appears on the display, the code number is not canceled. Repeat the procedure from Step 3.
- Three consecutive errors will activate the antitheft operation, and the audio unit will be rendered completely inoperative. In this case, consult Clarion Service Co.
- Error includes turning the ignition switch OFF and Disconnection of the audio unit connectors.







Resetting Code Number

When the code number cancel operation is completed, set a new code number as follows.

Step 1

Press and hold the SCAN and AUTO-M buttons until bars appear on the display.

Step 2

Caution

 Record the code number before attempting to input it. If the number is input and then forgotten, it cannot be canceled and the audio unit will be rendered inoperative if ever disconnected.

Note

 Complete Steps 1-3 within 10 seconds, or the setting procedure will be canceled.

While the bars are displayed, input the new code number as described under "Setting Code Number".

Step 3

Press and hold the SCAN and AUTO-M buttons simultaneously until a beep is heard and "code" appears on the display (approx. 1.5 seconds).

"Code" will flash for 5 seconds then disappears to indicate that the code number is set.

Step 4

If "Err" (error) appears on the display, repeat procedure from step 1.

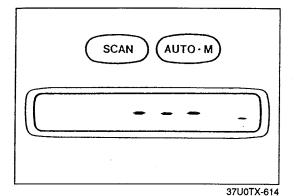
Note

- Error includes turning the ignition switch OFF and disconnection of the audio unit connectors.
- Three consecutive errors will activate the antitheft operation, and the audio unit will be completely inoperative. In this case, consult Clarion Service Co.

Canceling Anti-theft Operation

- The audio system becomes inoperative under the following conditions if the code number has been input.
 - 1. A battery cable is disconnected.
 - 2. Battery is discharged.
 - 3. Audio unit connectors are disconnected.
- To resume audio system operation, the anti-theft operation must be deactivated.

2PU0TX-541

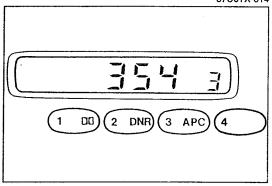


Step 1

Turn the ignition switch to the ACC position. "Code" will flash on the display.

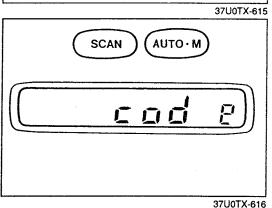
Step 2

Press the SCAN and AUTO-M buttons simultaneously until bars appear on the display.



Step 3

While the bars are displayed, input the correct preselected code number as described in Setting Code Number, Step 4.



Step 4

Press and hold the SCAN and AUTO-M buttons until a beep is heard and "code" appears on the display (approx. 1.5 seconds).

"Code" will flash for 5 seconds, then disappear to indicate that the system is operable.

Step 5

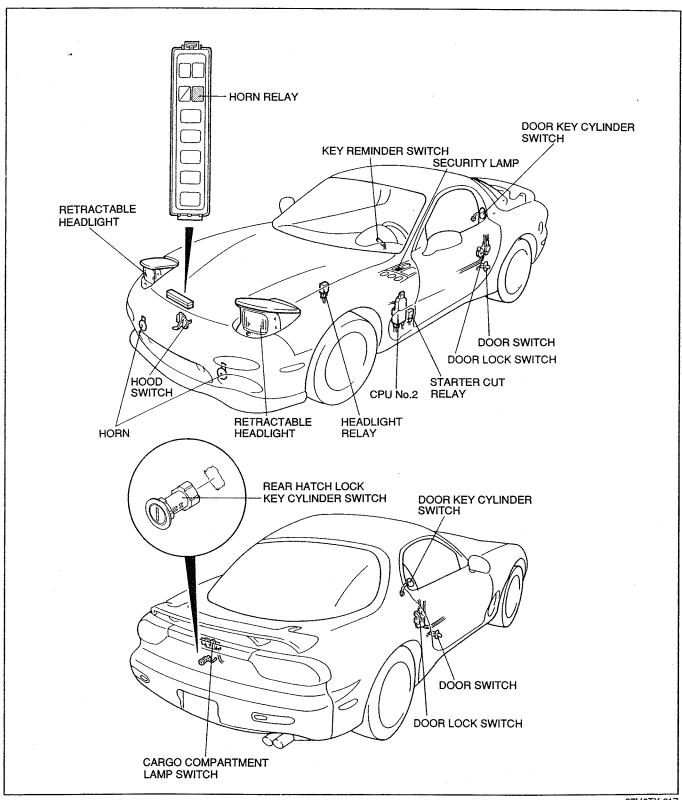
If "Err" (error) appears on the display, repeat the procedure from Step 1.

Note

- Error includes turning the ignition switch OFF and disconnection of the audio unit connectors.
- Three consecutive errors will activate the antitheft operation and the audio unit will be completely inoperative. In this case, consult Clarion Service Co.

THEFT-DETERRENT SYSTEM

OUTLINE



37U0TX-617

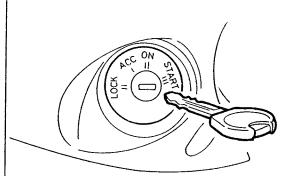
The theft-deterrent system includes sound and light alarms that activate when the hood, rear hatch, or door is opened by means other than the ignition key.

The headlights and hazard warning lights flash and the horn sounds if the alarm system is activated. When the ignition key is inserted into the rear hatch lock key cylinder or either door key cylinder and is turned to UNLOCK, the alarm stops.

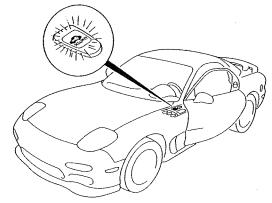
BASIC OPERATION

INITIAL PHASE

REMOVE THE KEY.

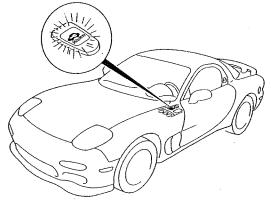


PREARMING PHASE 1



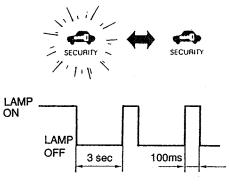
OPEN EITHER DOOR WHILE THE HOOD AND REAR HATCH ARE CLOSED; THE SECURITY LAMP WILL ILLUMINATE.

PREARMING PHASE 2



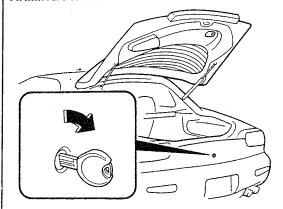
LOCK AND CLOSE ALL DOORS. AFTER THE SECURITY LAMP STAYS LIT FOR 10 SECONDS, THE SYSTEM PROCEEDS TO ARMING PHASE 1.

ARMING PHASE 1



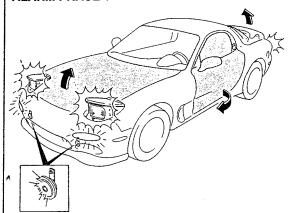
THE SECURITY LAMP FLASHES EVERY 3 SECONDS, AND THE SYSTEM IS ARMED.

ARMING PHASE 2



THE REAR HATCH MAY BE OPENED BY USING THE KEY DURING ARMING PHASE 1. THE SECURITY LAMP SHOULD KEEP FLASHING. THE PROCESS RETURNS TO ARMING PHASE 1 AFTER THE REAR HATCH IS CLOSED.

ALARM PHASE 1

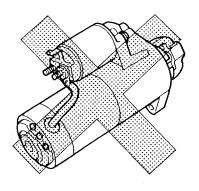


IF EITHER DOOR, THE HOOD, OR THE REAR HATCH IS OPENED WITHOUT A KEY OR THE IGNITION SWITCH IS FORCED ON, THE ALARM IS ACTIVATED.

THE HORN SOUNDS INTERMITTENTLY AND THE RETRACTA-BLE HEADLIGHTS AND HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS FLASH FOR 5 MINUTES.

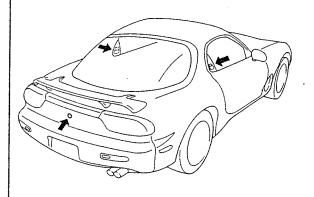
THE STARTER DOES NOT WORK.

ALARM PHASE 2



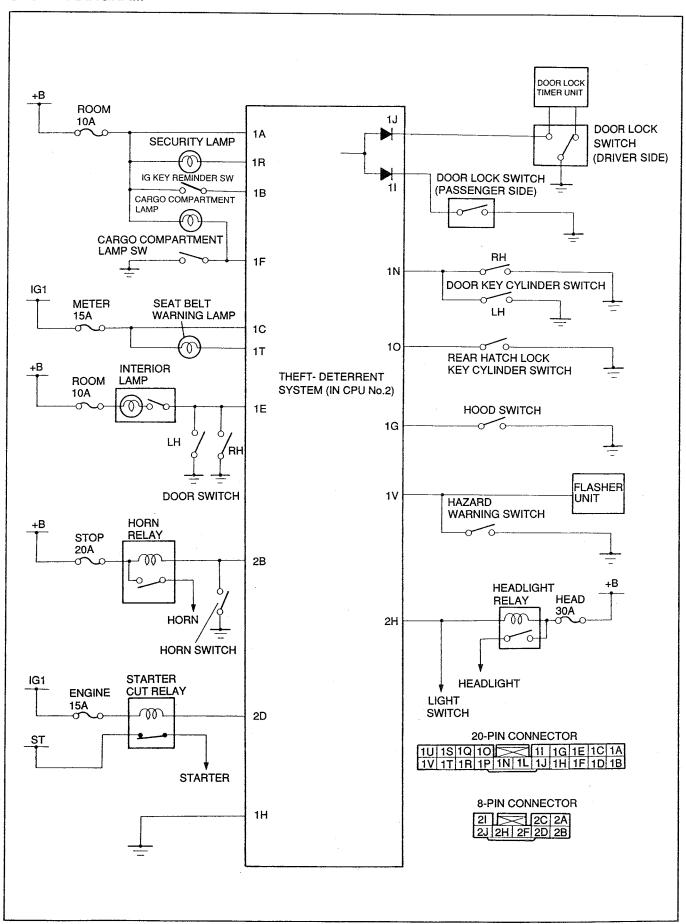
THE ALARM WARNINGS STOP. THE STARTER DOES NOT WORK.

ALARM STOP PHASE



UNLOCK EITHER DOOR OR THE REAR HATCH WITH THE KEY.

SYSTEM DIAGRAM



INPUT / OUTPUT

| | INPUT | | | | | | OUTPUT | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------|
| Phase | Time period | Key reminder switch | Ignition switch | Door switch | Hood switch | Rear hatch switch | Door lock switch | Door key cylinder switch | Rear hatch lock key cylinder switch | Warning | Security lamp |
| Off | | , - | N one is ON) | | _ | _ | _ | | _ | _ | OFF |
| Initial | _ | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | _ | _ | .— | - | OFF |
| Prearming 1 | | OFF | OFF ON (at least one) | | | | _ | | ON | | |
| Prearming 2 | 10 sec | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | | ON |
| Arming 1 | _ | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | _ | Flashes |
| Arming 2 | _ | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | | _ | Flashes |
| Alarm 1 | 5 min | | ON (at least one) | | | | OFF | OFF | Horn, headlights, & hazard warning lights flash, starter won't operate | OFF | |
| Alarm 2 | _ | _ | | Aları | m 1 cond | lition | | OFF | OFF | Starter won't operate | OFF |

37U0TX-621

Explanation of Phases

Off:

The condition before the key is removed from the ignition switch. (The key is at either ON, ACC, or LOCK.)

The SECURITY lamp is OFF.

Înitial:

The condition after the key has been removed from the ignition switch (with the doors, hood, and rear hatch closed).

The SECURITY lamp is OFF.

Prearming 1:

The condition in which the key is removed from the ignition switch and a door is open.

The SECURITY lamp is ON.

Prearming 2:

The condition in which the hood, rear hatch, and doors are closed and locked.

The SECURITY lamp is ON for 10 seconds.

Arming 1:

The condition after the security lamp has been ON for 10 seconds in the "Prearming 2" phase.

The SECURITY lamp flashes at intervals of 3 seconds. The alarm system is fully set.

Arming 2:

The condition in which the rear hatch may be opened by using the key while in the "Arming 1" phase. The SECURITY lamp flashes.

Alarm 1:

The condition in which, without using the key, a door, the hood, or the rear hatch is opened or the ignition circuit is short-circuited. The horn sounds intermittently and the retractable headlights and the hazard warning lights flash for 5 minutes.

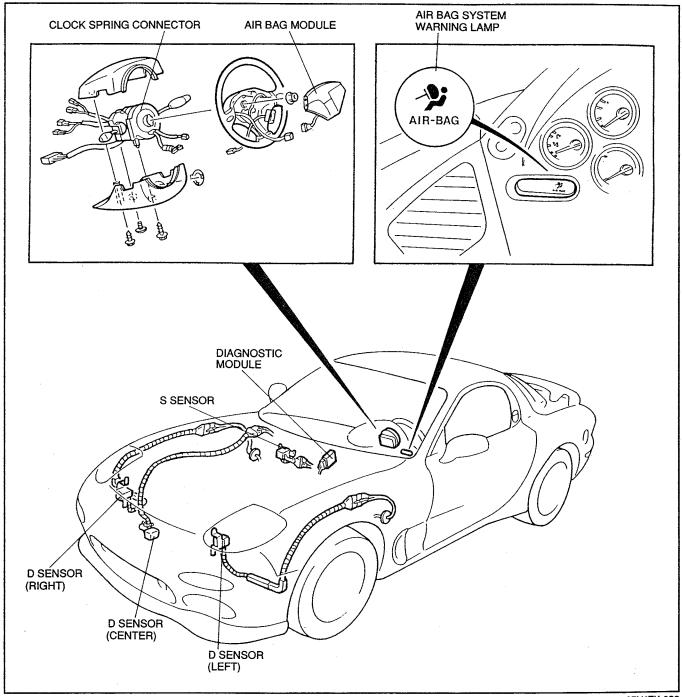
The starter cannot be operated during this period unless the key is used to cancel the alarm operation.

Alarm 2:

The condition (5 minutes after Alarm 1 was activated) in which the warning system (horn and lights) is deactivated. The starter remains inoperative unless the key is used to cancel the alarm operation.

AIR BAG SYSTEM

OUTLINE



37U0TX-622

• The air bag system is included to provide increased protection for the driver in an accident when used in conjunction with the seat belts.

When the vehicle suffers a frontal crash, the air bag in the steering wheel inflates to protect the driver's head and chest from injury.

• The air bag system consists of:

Air bag module

Clock spring connector

Diagnostic module

Crash sensors (D-sensors and S-sensor)

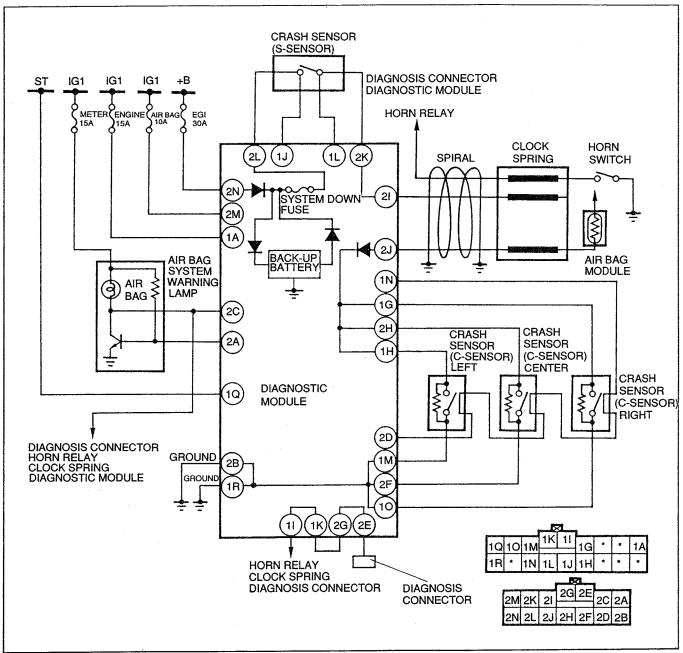
AIR BAG warning lamp

Air bag wiring harness

COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

| Co | mponent | Function | Remark | | |
|--------------------------|----------|---|--|--|--|
| AIR BAG s warning lar | | Lamp illuminates or flashes if malfunction occurs in air bag system | Located in instrument cluster | | |
| Air bag mo | dule | Deploys air bag when current flows to integrated igniter | Located in steering wheel hub | | |
| Clock spring connecter | | Ensures uninterrupted electrical connection to air bag module while allowing turning of steering wheel | Part of combination switch | | |
| Crash sensor | D-sensor | Activated (closed) when crash impact detected With S-sensor, completes circuit to inflator | Located in front part of vehicle (left, right, and center) | | |
| | S-sensor | Activated (closed) when crash impact detected With D-sensor, completes circuit to inflator | Located on side of heater unit in pas- senger compartment | | |
| Diagnostic module | | Monitors components and wiring harnesses in air bag system Indicates system malfunction by flashing or illuminating AIR BAG waring lamp If warning lamp is burnt, sounds warning buzzer Detects short circuit between air bag module and ground or crash sensor malfunction and melts system down fuse to prevent unintended air bag deployment | Contains backup battery | | |

SYSTEM DIAGRAM



37U0TX-624

SYSTEM OPERATION

During Collision

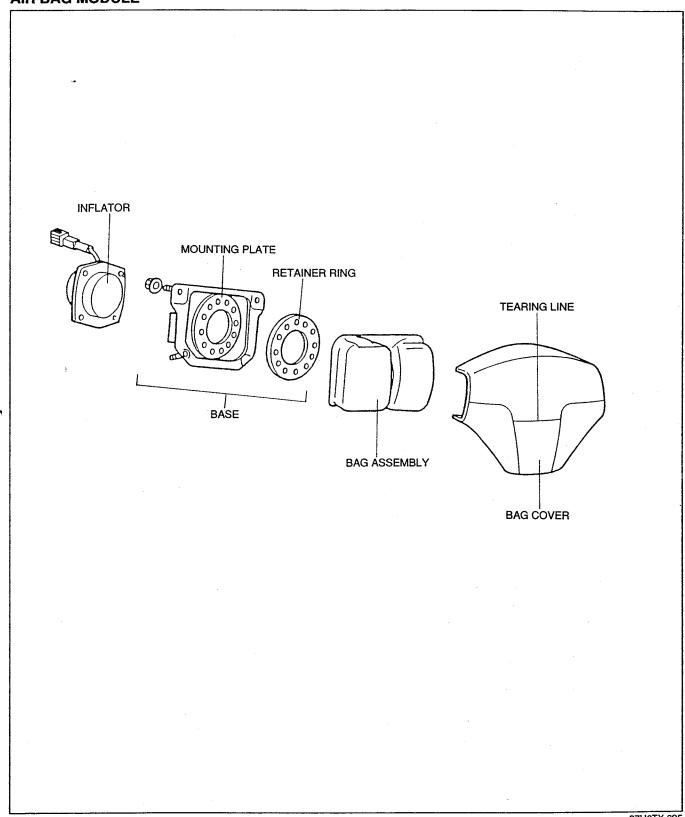
 When either of the D-sensors and the S-sensor are activated (closed) simultaneously by the shock of a collision, the circuit to the inflator is completed.

The inflator creates nitrogen gas and the air bag is deployed.

• The air bags vent the nitrogen gas from the vent holes on the back side of the bag to reduce shock to the driver and to allow easier exit from the vehicle.

During Normal Condition and Malfunction

- The diagnostic module constantly monitors the components and wiring of the air bag system for malfunction and open and short circuits.
- If a malfunction is detected, the diagnostic module illuminates or flashes the AIR BAG system warning lamp.
- In the case of a short circuit in the sensors or sensor wiring, the diagnostic module activates the AIR BAG system warning lamp and shuts down the system to prevent accidental deployment of the air bag.

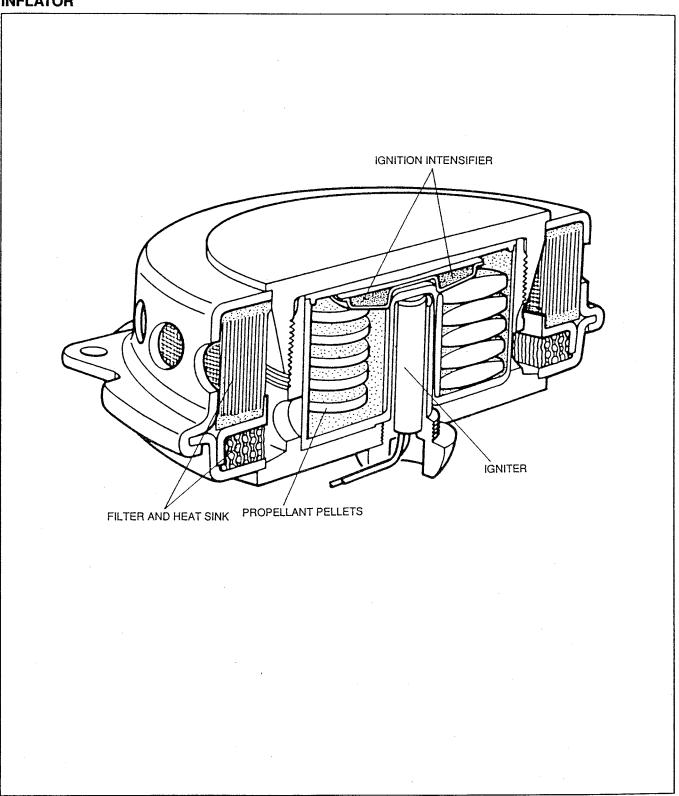


• The air bag module consists of the bag assembly, inflator, bag cover, and base.

When the air bag module is activated, the inflator generates nitrogen gas. By this gas, the air bag is inflated and pops out from the bag cover, which opens at the tear line.

The air bag vents the nitrogen gas from the vent holes at the back side of the bag to reduce shock to

• The air bag module is replaced as an assembly if it malfunctions or if deployed.

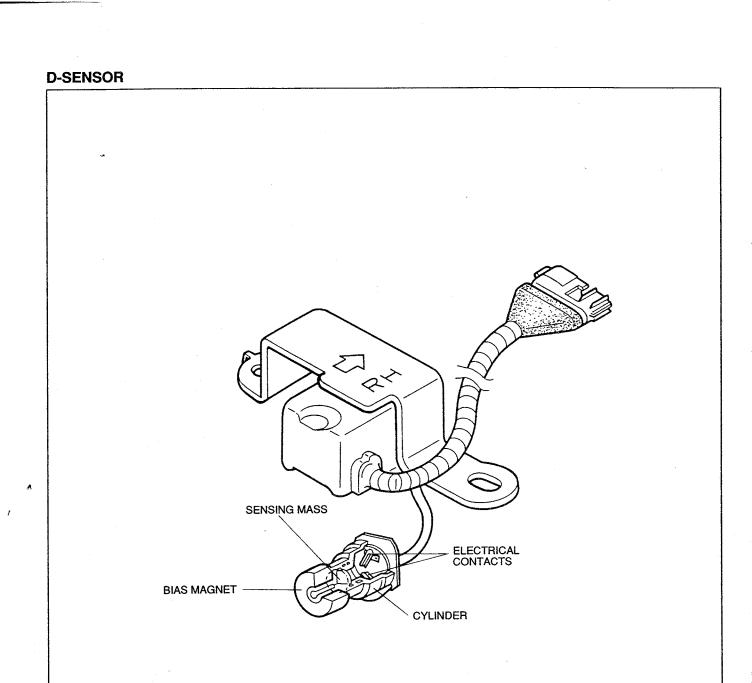


• The inflator is contained in the air bag module.

• When the inflator receives an electric signal from the sensor, the igniter ignites, combusts the ignition intensifier, then the propellant pellets, generating the nitrogen gas.

The filter and heat sink cools and filters the gas as it inflates the air bag.

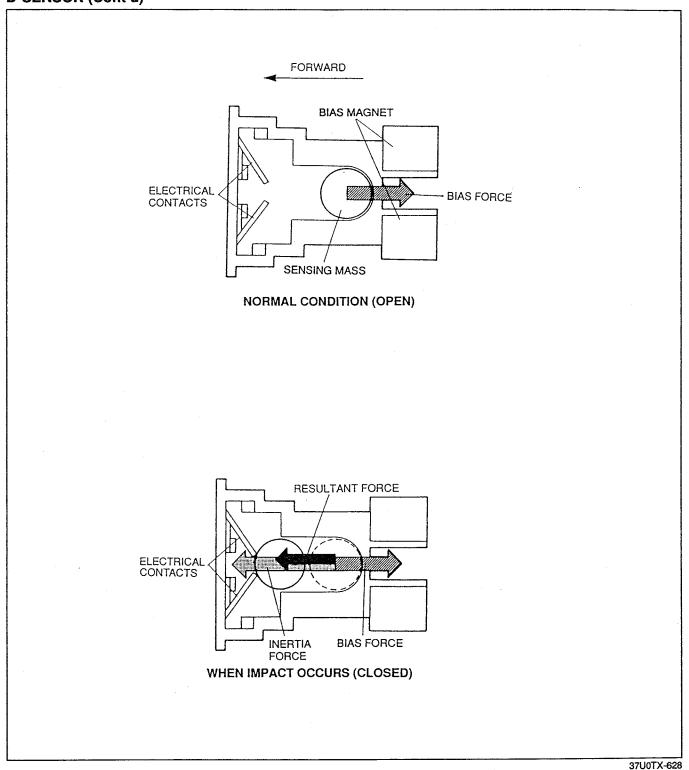
• To prevent the inflator from being damaged, and possibly not working when necessary, it is designed to self-ignite if its temperature exceeds 190°C {374°F}. The self-igniting agent is mixed in the ignition intensifier to trigger the activation.



• Three D-sensors are equipped at the front of the vehicle for accurate detection of the vehicle speed change during a collision.

The D-sensor consists of:
 Sensing mass (Detects deceleration ratio)
 Bias magnet (Holds sensing mass operation until set deceleration ratio is obtained)
 Cylinder (Contains air damper to control movement of sensing mass.)
 Two electrical contacts

D-SENSOR (Cont'd)



Operation

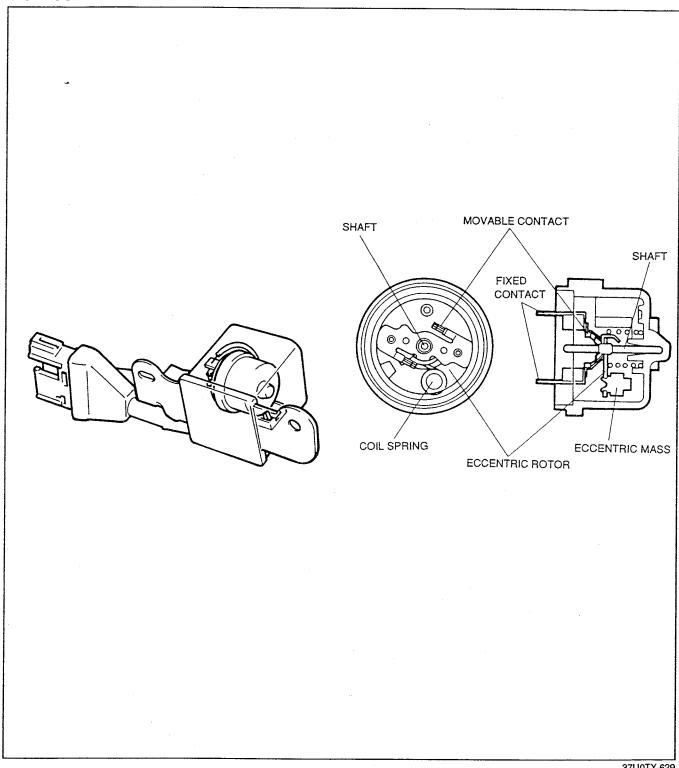
Normal Condition

The magnetic attraction of the bias magnet holds the sensing mass, causing the electrical circuit to remain open.

When Impact Occurs

If the forward inertia force that is generated is strong enough when an impact occurs, the sensing mass is pulled away from the bias magnet and rolls forward. As the sensing mass overcomes the force of the magnet, it touches the electrical contacts, completing a part of the air bag deployment electrical circuit.

S-SENSOR



37U0TX-629

- The S-sensor is mounted on the side of heater unit in the passenger compartment to detect the vehicle's deceleration ratio in a collision.
- The S-sensor consists of:

Eccentric mass (Detects deceleration ratio)

Coil spring (Resists eccentric mass movement until set deceleration ratio is obtained)

Eccentric rotor (Rotates according to deceleration ratio)

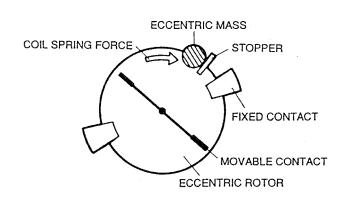
Shaft (Supports eccentric rotor)

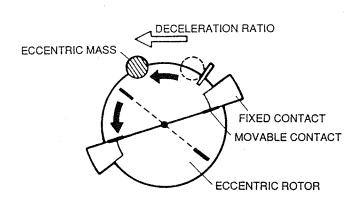
Movable contact (Integrated with eccentric rotor)

Fixed contact

S-SENSOR (Cont'd)

0





37U0TX-630

Operation

Normal Condition

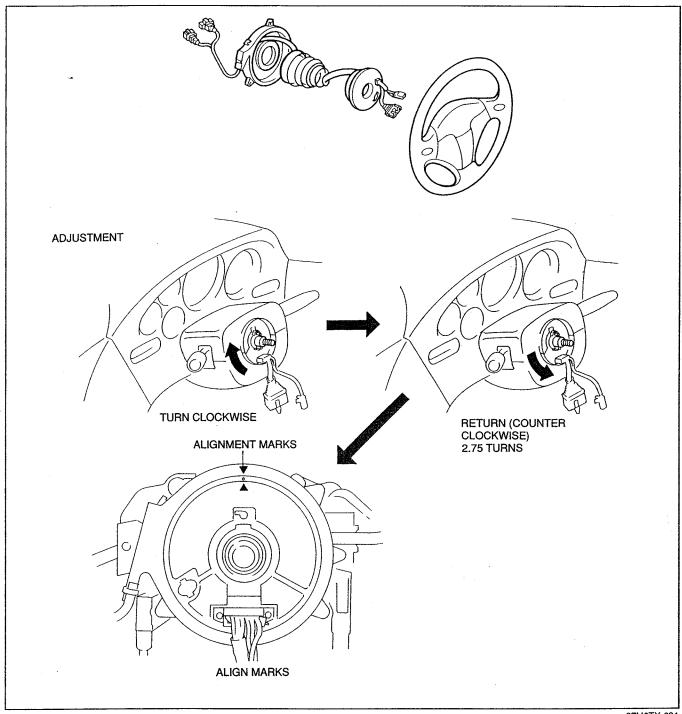
The eccentric mass on the eccentric rotor is pressed against the stopper by the coil spring.

When Impact Occurs

The eccentric mass on the eccentric rotor receives the deceleration impact and the rotor (with movable contact) rotates.

The movable contact contacts the fixed contact, completing a part of the air bag deployment electrical circuit.

CLOCK SPRING CONNECTOR



37U0TX-631

The clock spring connector is part of the combination switch.

This connector ensures uninterrupted electrical contact of the air bag module while allowing rotation of the steering wheel.

The clock spring connector and combination switch are serviced as an assembly.

Caution

- · Before reinstallation of the steering wheel after removal, set the clock spring connector as follows:
 - 1. Set the front wheels straight ahead.
 - 2. Turn the clock spring connector clockwise until it stops. (Do not force it.)
 - 3. Return the connector 2.75 turns.
 - 4. Align the marks on the clock spring connector to the outer housing.

DIAGNOSTIC MODULE

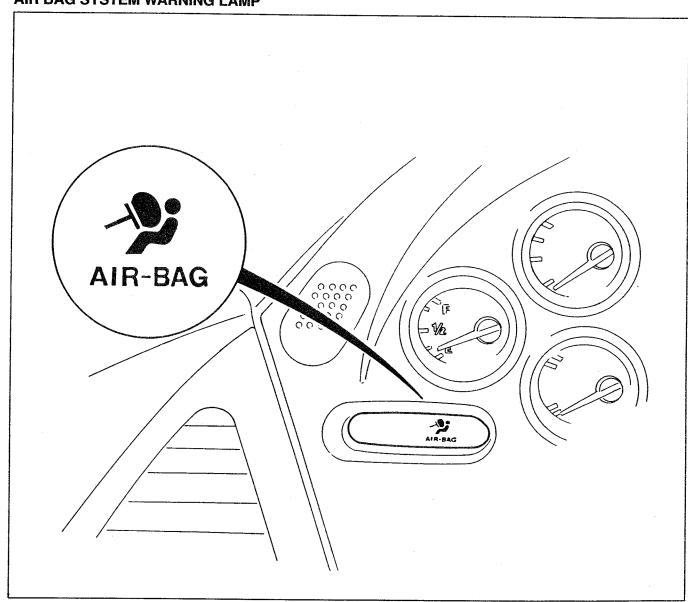
- The diagnostic module contains a microcomputer that monitors the air bag system components and wiring harnesses.
- If a malfunction is detected in the system, the diagnostic module flashes or illuminates the AIR BAG system warning lamp.

System faults can be determined by the coded warning lamp display.

- If a malfunction occurs in the system and the warning lamp is burnt, an audible alarm in the diagnostic module sounds.
- If a short circuit is detected between the air bag module and a ground or there is a malfunction of a crash sensor, the system down fuse in the diagnostic module melts to prevent unintended deployment of the air bag.
- The diagnostic module contains a backup battery to power the system and deploy the air bag in the event the vehicle's battery becomes disconnected in a collision.

37U0TX-632

AIR BAG SYSTEM WARNING LAMP

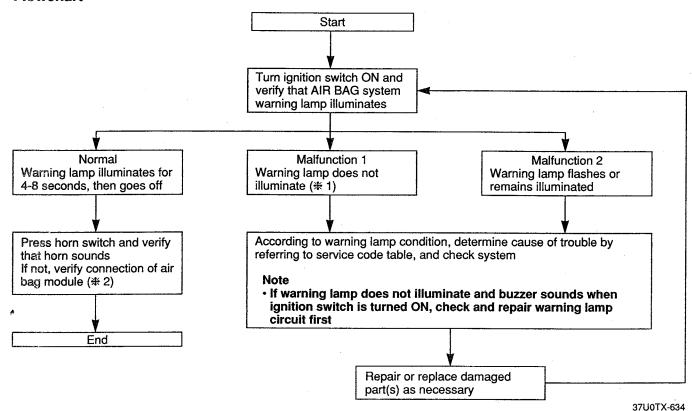


- The AIR BAG system warning lamp is located in the instrument cluster.
- The lamp flashes or illuminates to indicate malfunction of the air bag system.
- In normal conditions, when the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning lamp illuminates for 4-6 seconds, then goes off.
- If the warning lamp remains ON, does not illuminate, or flashes, a problem exists in the air bag system. Check the system following the troubleshooting procedure on the next page.

TROUBLESHOOTING PROCEDURE

- The air bag diagnostic module contains a self-diagnosis function.
- This self-diagnosis function flashes or illuminates the AIR BAG system warning lamp in the instrument cluster to indicate trouble in the air bag system.
- The malfunctioning system can be determined by the warning lamp illumination or coded flashing pattern.

Flowchart



*1: If a malfunction occurs in the air bag system and the warning lamp is burnt, the warning buzzer in the diagnostic module sounds 5 cycles of 5 times each.

*2: The air bag module and horn switch are connected to the clock spring connector. If the horns do not sound, check the air bag module connector connections.

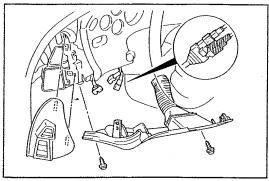
Service code table

| Priority | Service code (warning lamp) | Possible cause | | |
|----------|--------------------------------|---|--|--|
| 1 | Remains ON | Damaged diagnostic module or poor connection of diagnostic module connector | | |
| 2 | Flashes three times | Open circuit or poor connection of power source circuit | | |
| 3 | Flashes five times | Damaged D-sensor (D-sensor ON) | | |
| 4 | Flashes ten times | Damaged diagnostic module (system-down fuse burnt) | | |
| 5 | Flashes four times | Damaged S-sensor | | |
| 6 | Flashes six times | Damaged air bag module or poor connection of clock spring connector | | |
| 7 | Flashes nine times | Open circuit between diagnostic module and D-sensor | | |

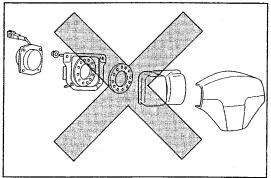
37U0TX-635

Note

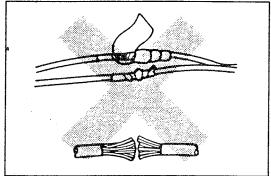
• If two or more troubles exist in the air bag system, the warning lamp indicates the cause of the trouble with the highest priority.



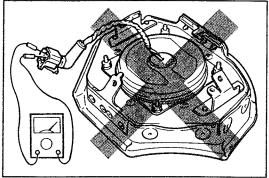
37U0TX-636



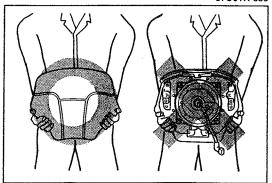
37U0TX-637



37U0TX-638



37U0TX-639



37U0TX-640

SERVICE PRECAUTION

1. Before Component Replacement

 Before replacement of any air bag system component or before disconnecting any connector of the system, carry out the following preparations.

(1) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

- (2) Remove the lower panel and the lap duct.
- (3) Disconnect the clock spring connector (orange and blue).

2. Prohibitation of Component Disassembly

 The components of the air bag system are not intended to be disassembled for service.
 If a component malfunction is indicated by the diagnostic module, replace the suspected component after checking the connections and the wiring harness.

Do not disassemble any component.

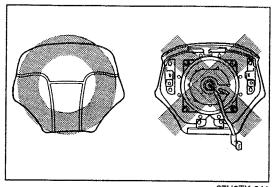
3. Prohibitation of Wire Harness Repair

 If an open circuit is found by a continuity test, replace the wiring harness. Do not try to repair the wiring.

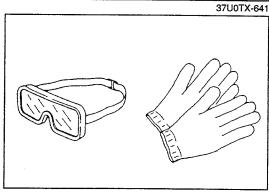
4. Handling of Air Bag Module

 Do not use an ohmmeter for inspection of the air bag module. It may cause accidental deployment of the air bag.

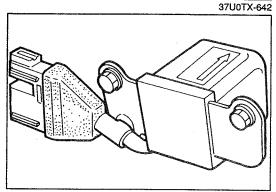
 When carrying a live (unactivated) air bag module, make sure the trim cover is pointed away from your body to prevent personal injury in the event of an accidental deployment.



 When placing a live air bag module on any surface, always face the trim cover upward to reduce the motion of the module if it is accidentally deployed.

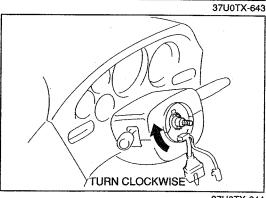


- When handling a deployed air bag module, wear gloves and safety glasses, because the deployed air bag module may contain deposits of sodium hydroxide, a caustic by-product of the gas generant combustion.
- When an air bag module is to be disposed, follow the procedure recommended for the specific situation.

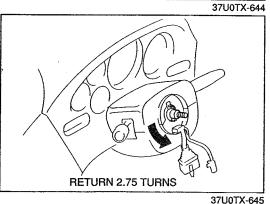


5. Crash Sensor Installation

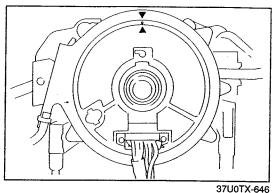
 Crash sensor orientation is very important for proper operation. If a vehicle is involved in a collision where its front sheet metal is damaged, inspect the body structure at the sensor mounting area for deformation. If damaged, restore it to its original shape.



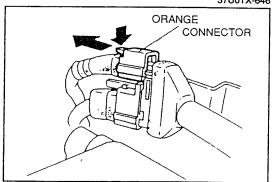
- 6. Adjustment of Clock Spring Connector
 - Whenever the steering wheel is removed, before reinstalling it, set the clock spring connector as follows:
 - (1) Set the front wheels straight ahead.
 - (2) Turn the clock spring connector clockwise until it stops. (Do not force it.)



(3) Return the connector 2.75 turns.

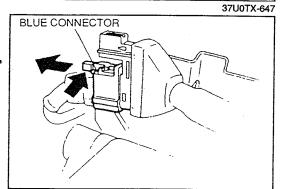


(4) Align the marks on the clock spring connector and the outer housing.



7. When Using Test Lead

 When using a test lead for testing, use a fine wire to prevent damage to the terminals.

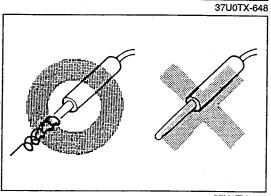


8. Disconnecting Double-Lock Type Connector

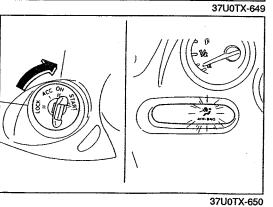
 The connectors in the air bag system use a double-lock type connector.

These connectors are disconnected as follows.

(1) Press the orange knob and disconnect the orange connector.



- (2) Press the blue knob and disconnect the blue connector.
- (3) Connect the connectors in the reverse order of disconnecting.



9. After System Service

- Verify correct system operation by checking with the AIR BAG system warning lamp. If the system is operating normally, the warning lamp will come on when the ignition switch is turned ON, then go off after approximately 6 seconds.
- Check if the horn sounds. If the horn does not sound, remove the air bag module and check the connections of the air bag module and horn switch connectors.

AIR BAG MODULE DISPOSAL PROCEDURE

 Before a vehicle with an undeployed air bag module is scrapped, the air bag must be deployed following the procedure shown below.

• If the SST (deployment tool) for deployment of the air bag module is not available, consult the nearest Mazda representative for assistance.

Never dispose of a live air bag module.

· When disposing of a previously deployed or self-deployed air bag module, observe the following procedures.

37U0TX-623

Cautions on air bag module disposal

1. Before disposal of an undeployed air bag module, be sure to deploy it following "Procedure" shown below.

2. Deployment must be done in a safe, open space, avoiding strong winds.

3. Use the SST (deployment tool) for deployment and stand at least 6 m (20 ft) away from the air bag module during deployment as it deploys with a loud sound.

4. Do not touch the air bag module for at least 15 minutes after deployment; it is very hot.

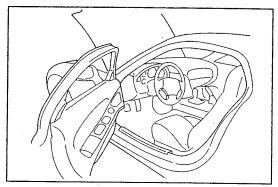
5. Do not pour water on the deployed air bag module.

6. When handling a deployed air bag module, wear gloves and safety glasses.

7. Place the deployed air bag module in a vinyl bag and seal it for disposal.

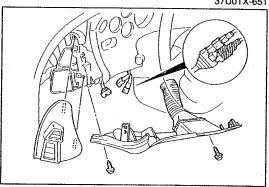
8. Wash your hands after the disposal operation is finished.

29U0TX-895



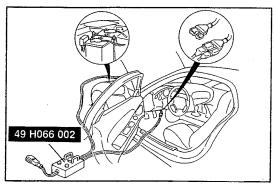
Procedure

- 1. Locate the vehicle in a safe, open space, and open all of the vehicle's doors.
- 2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.

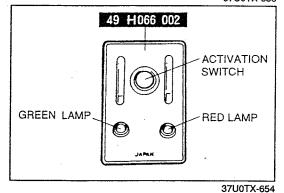


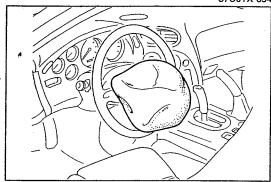
37U0TX-651

- 3. Verify that the air bag module is firmly mounted to the steering wheel.
- 4. Remove the lower panel and the lap duct.
- 5. Disconnect the clock spring connector.

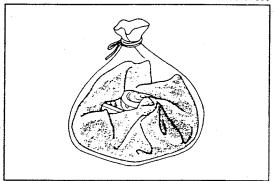


37U0TX-653





37U0TX-655



37U0TX-656

Caution

- Before connecting the SST (deployment tool), be sure to inspect it for proper operation. (Refer to page T-89.)
- 6. Connect the **SST** to the clock spring connector as shown in the figure.
- 7. Connect the red clip of the **SST** to the positive battery terminal and the black clip to the negative terminal.
- 8. Verify that the red lamp of the SST illuminates.

Warning

- Before pressing the switch of the SST, verify that all persons are clear of the vehicle.
- Stand at least 6 m (20 ft) away from the air bag module during deployment as it deploys with a loud sound.
- 9. Press the switch of the SST and deploy the air bag.

Disposal of Deployed Air Bag Module

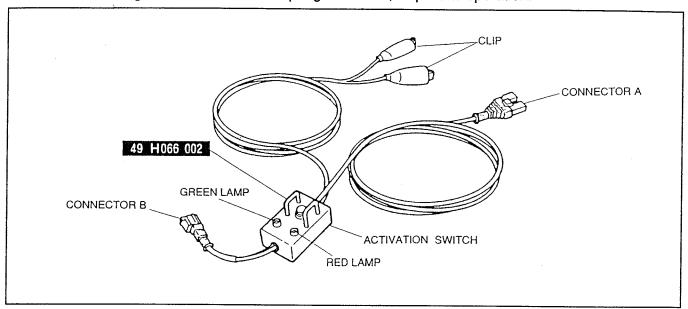
Place the deployed air bag module in a vinyl bag, seal it, then dispose of it.

Caution

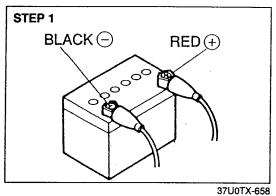
- Do not touch the deployed air bag module for at least 15 minutes; it is very hot.
- Do not pour water on the deployed air bag module.
- When handling the deployed air bag module, wear gloves and safety glasses.
- Wash your hands after the disposal operation is finished.

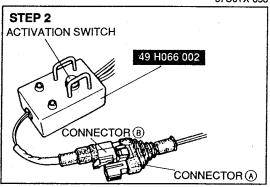
INSPECTION OF SST (DEPLOYMENT TOOL)

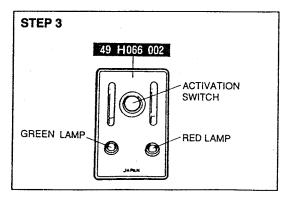
- Use the SST (deployment tool) to deploy a live air bag module before disposing of it.
- Before connecting the SST to the clock spring connector, inspect its operation.



37U0TX-657





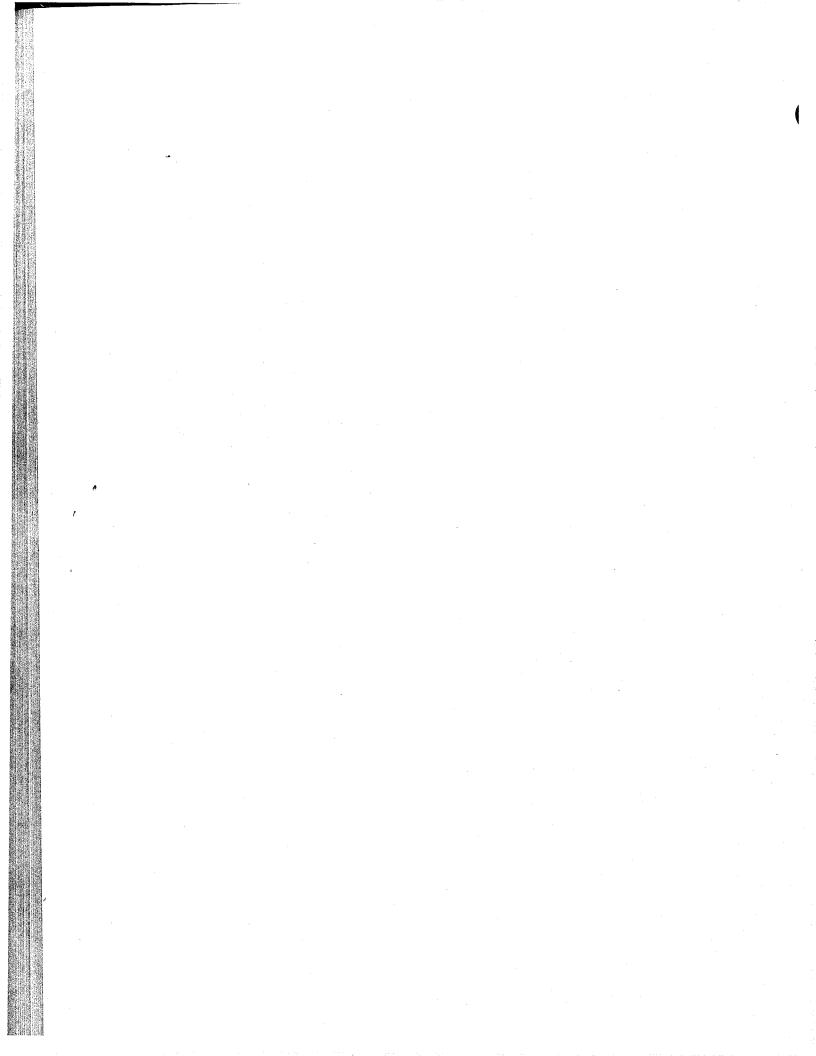


Inspection Procedure

1. Inspect operation of the **SST** by following the steps below.

| Step | Inspection procedure | SST lamp | |
|------|---|----------|-----|
| Oteb | inspection procedure | Green | Red |
| 1 | Connect red clip to positive battery terminal and black clip to negative battery terminal | ON | OFF |
| 2 | Interconnect connectors A and B of SST | OFF | ON |
| 3 | Press activation switch | ON | OFF |

2. If not as specified, do not use the **SST** because it may cause the air bag to unexpectedly deploy upon connection to the clock spring connector.



HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER SYSTEMS

| OUTLINE | U- 2 |
|---------------------------------------|------------|
| OUTLINE | |
| FEATURES | |
| SPECIFICATIONS | |
| HEATER AND REFRIGERANT SYSTEMS | U- 3 |
| STRUCTURAL VIEW | |
| HEATER UNIT | |
| BLOWER UNIT | |
| COOLING UNIT | |
| ACTUATORS | |
| COMPRESSOR | |
| REFRIGERANT HOSE | |
| CONDENSER AND RECEIVER / DRIER | |
| HEATER CONTROL UNIT | |
| | 37U0UX-501 |

OUTLINE

OUTLINE

- The air conditioner is normally equipped to all Canada models and U.S. models with the sun roof. The MANA air conditioner is optionally available to U.S. models with the normal roof.
- The MANA air conditioner is optionally available to some U.S. model.
- Permeation permeance-resistant hoses and a high-efficiency heat exchanger minimize the refrigerant consumption and leakage.

37U0UX-502

FEATURES

To improve air-conditioning efficiency

Adoption of high-efficiency heat exchanger.

37U0UX-503

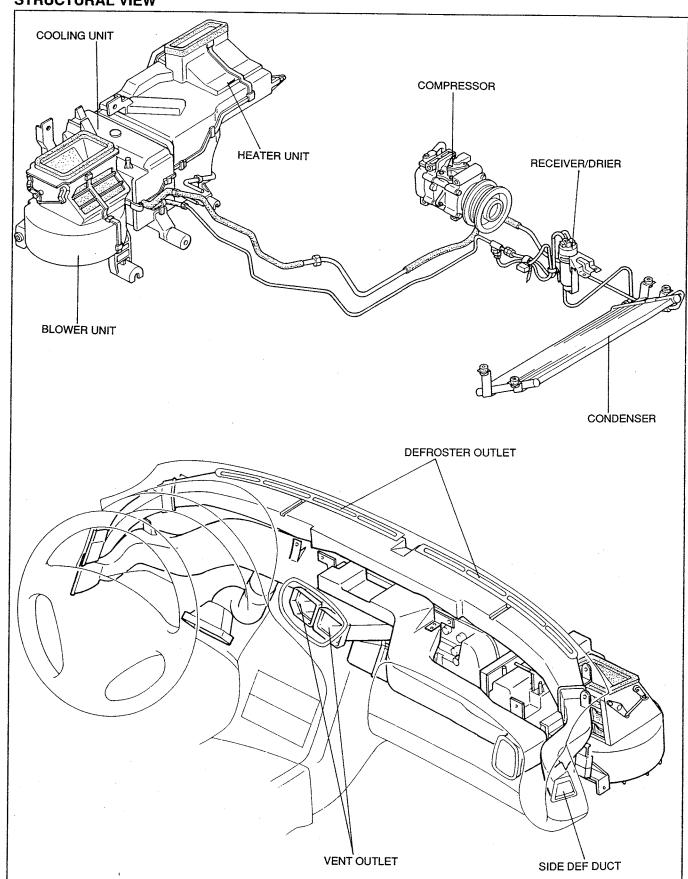
SPECIFICATIONS

| | | Item | Specification | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| | Heating capacity {kcal/h} | | | 3,150 | | |
| Heater | | High setting | {m³/h} | 420 | | |
| | Blower motor | Energy consumption {W} | | 210 | | |
| | Cooling capacity {kcal/h | | | 3,900 | | |
| | Compressor | Туре | | Rotary compressor | | |
| | | Capacity cm³/rev {cu in/rev} | | 138 {8.42} | | |
| | Condenser | Type | | Multiflow | | |
| | Receiver/ Drier | Capacity | cm³ {cu in} | NIPPON DENSO 274 {16.72} | MANA 340 {20.75} | |
| , | | Desiccant | | Desiccant | | |
| Refrigerant system | Evaporator | Type | | Drawn cup | | |
| | Expansion valve | Туре | | External pressure equalizer | | |
| | Control device | | | Pressure switch | | |
| | | | | ON OFF V 2.1 ± 0.2 (F) 0.25 max. | $ \frac{\sqrt{27 \pm 2}}{6 \pm 2} $ | |

37U0UX-504

HEATER AND REFRIGERANT SYSTEMS

STRUCTURAL VIEW

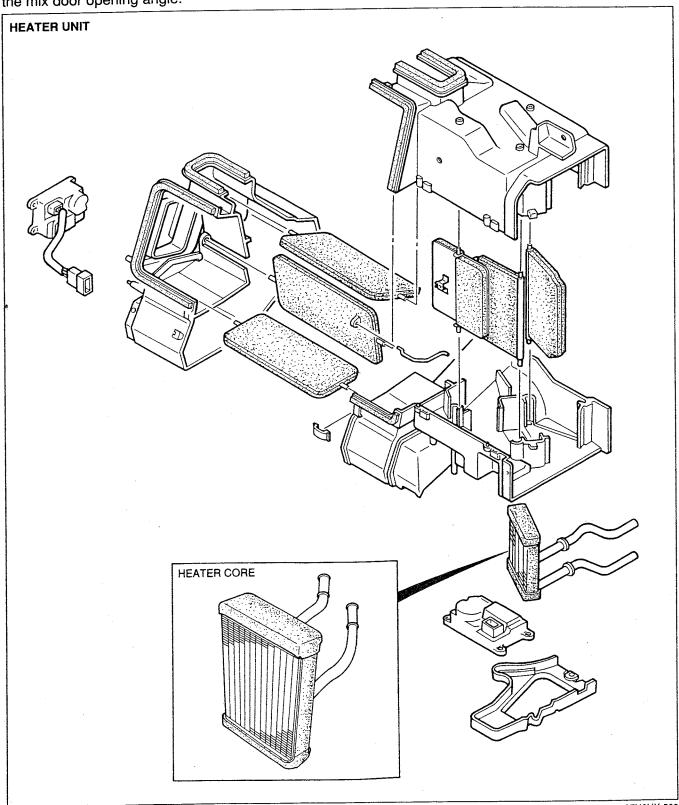


HEATER UNIT

The heater unit consists of the heater core, mix doors, airflow mode doors, control actuators, and water thermosensor.

Heater Core

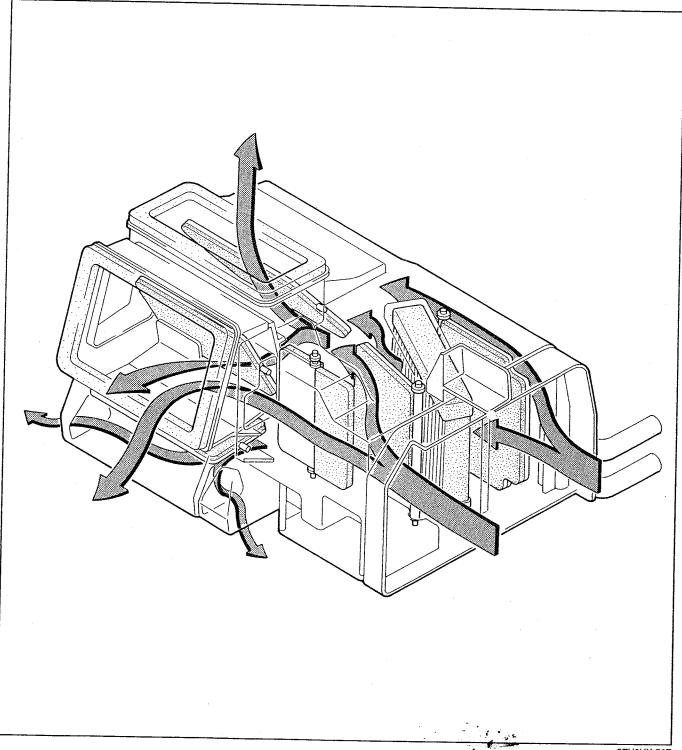
The heater core warms the intake air with the engine coolant for heating in the passenger compartment. The output air temperature is adjusted by regulating the air passing over the heater core by adjusting the mix door opening angle.



Mix Door, Airflow Mode Door, and Cool Air Bypass Door
The output air from the blower unit is adjusted by regulating the mix, airflow mode, and cool air bypass doors' opening angle.

Door operation

| Door | Operation |
|-----------------|--|
| Mix | Adjusts output air temperature |
| Airflow mode | Changes air outlet |
| Cool air bypass | Adjusts output air temperature from vent outlets |



BLOWER UNIT

The blower unit consists of the blower motor, resistor assembly, intake door, and intake actuator. The blower unit is used to select the fresh air intake mode and the air recirculation mode, and to produce forced air for the systems operation.

Blower Motor

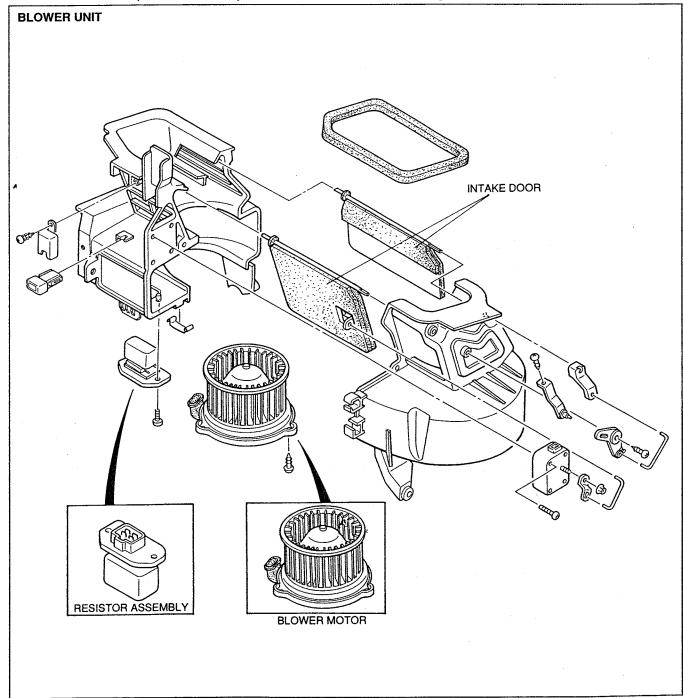
The blower motor produces forced air flow for the system's operation. The blower motor fan is a sirocco fan.

Resistor Assembly

The resistor assembly changes the blower motor load voltage in four stages according to the blower switch operation, controlling the blower motor operation speed.

Intake Door

The intake door is opened/closed by the intake actuator, and changes the air inlet to the blower unit.



COOLING UNIT

The cooling unit consists of the evaporator, expansion valve, and thermistor. The cooling unit cools and dehumidifies the air expelled from the blower unit.

The MANA cooling unit functions identically as the Mazda-provided unit while the configuration is different.

Evaporator

The evaporator vaporizes the refrigerant and cools the air within the cooling unit by the absorption of surrounding heat during the vaporization. The evaporator also dehumidifies the air and condensing it by collecting and removing moisture in the air into dew. The system uses the drawn cup type evaporator for improved heat exchanging efficiency and cooling effect.

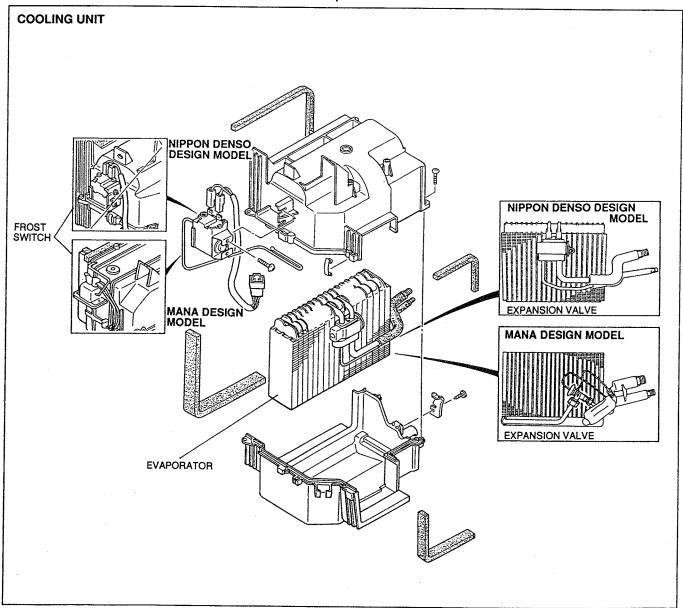
Expansion Valve

The expansion valve quickly depressurizes the liquid refrigerant to turn it into mist for easy vaporization in the evaporator.

Type: External equalization

Frost Switch

The frost switch opens the magnetic clutch circuit and stops compressor operation to prevent the refrigerant system from freezing when the evaporator fin temperature measured at the evaporator fin(s) is excessively low. The frost switch resumes its circuit and turns the magnetic closes to resume compressor operation when the temperature increases to specification.



37U0UX-509

ACTUATORS System Components

Mix actuator

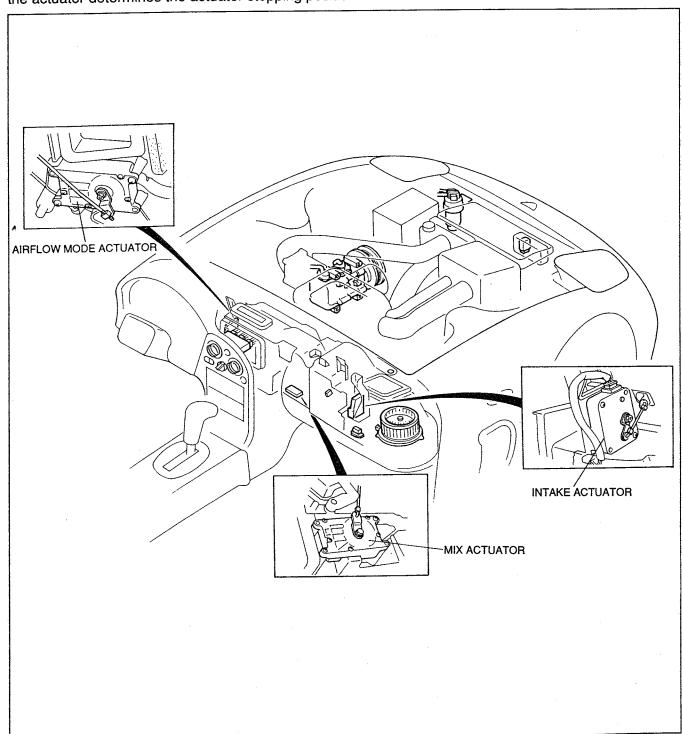
The mix actuator adjusts the mix door opening angle via the link and rod.

Airflow mode actuator

The mode actuator opens/closes the mode door via the link, crank, and rod.

Intake actuator

The intake actuator rotates clockwise by electrical signal from the heater control unit, opening/closing the intake door via the link and rod. The combination of the sliding and common contact positions in the actuator determines the actuator stopping position.



Actuator Internal Circuits Mix actuator

| Internal circuit | Applied voltage | | Operation | |
|------------------|-----------------|-----|--|---------------|
| | (+) | (-) | Rotation | Door movement |
| COLD HOT | h | g | Clockwise, shown from installation position | Moves to HOT |
| g a f b | g | h | Counterclockwise, shown from installation position | Moves to COLD |

37U0UX-511

Airflow mode actuator

| Internal circuit | | voltage | Operation | |
|-----------------------|-----|---------|--|---------------------------|
| ih fdcbai k | (+) | (-) | Rotation | Door movement |
| DEF H/D HEAT B/L VENT | k | j | Counterclockwise, shown from installation position | Moves from VENT to DEF |
| k i c a i j h f d b | | k | Clockwise, shown from installation position | Moves from DEF to VENT |

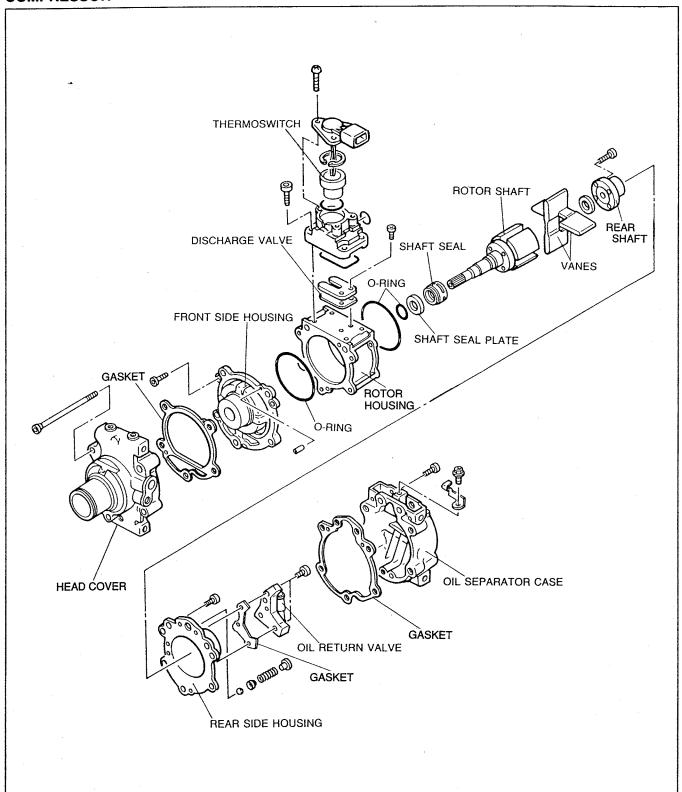
37U0UX-512

Intake actuator

| Internal circuit | | voltage | Operation | |
|------------------|-----|---------|--|----------------|
| | (+) | () | Rotation | Door movement |
| c OFRESH DOWN T | а | b | C.C.W., shown from installation position | REC ◀─── FRESH |
| a c b | а | С | C.C.W., shown from installation position | REC — → FRESH |

37U0UX-513

COMPRESSOR

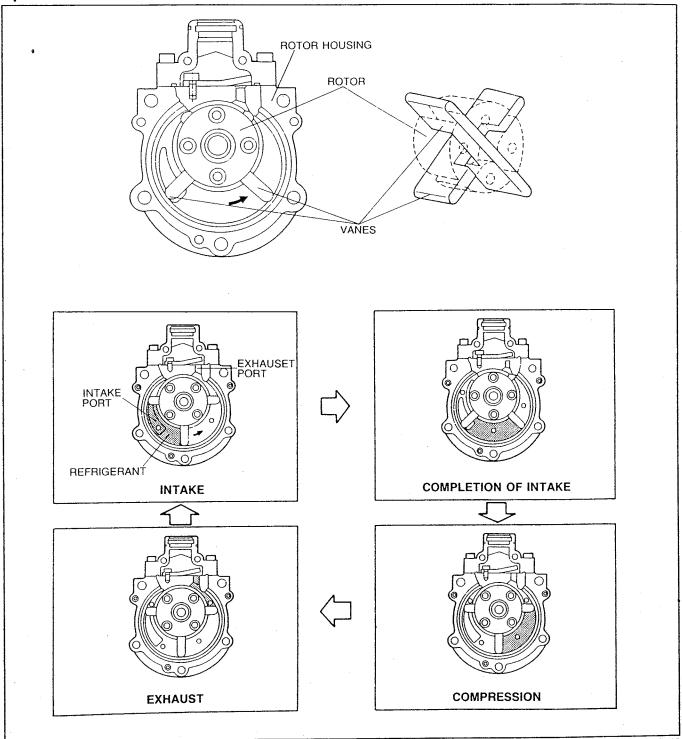


37U0UX-514

A through-vane Nippon denso TV14 model compressor is used. The compressor is belt-driven via the engine crankshaft pulley. The main features of the through-vane type compressor are:

- Little friction loss
- Compact size
- Quiet operation
- Few parts

Operation



37U0UX-515

The compressor has a rotor and two through-vanes. As it rotates, it compresses the refrigerant as follows:

1. Intake

The refrigerant is introduced into the rotor housing cavity through the intake port.

2. Completion of intake

The chamber between vanes is filled with refrigerant, and the intake port is closed by the vane.

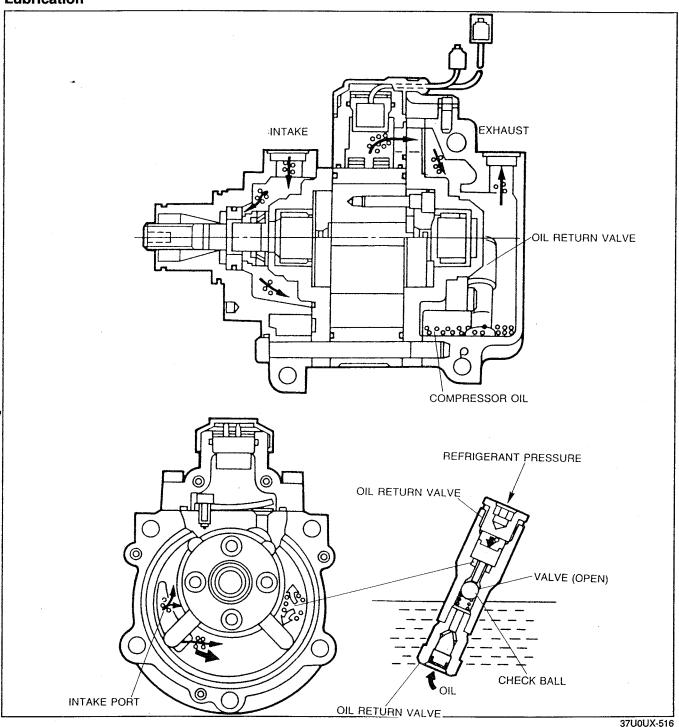
3. Compression

As the rotor rotates, the area of the chamber becomes smaller, compressing the refrigerant.

4. Exhaust

The compressed refrigerant is expelled through the exhaust port.

Lubrication



Intake period

The compressor oil enters the rotor housing through the intake port with the refrigerant, where it lubricates and seals the area between the rotor housing and the vanes.

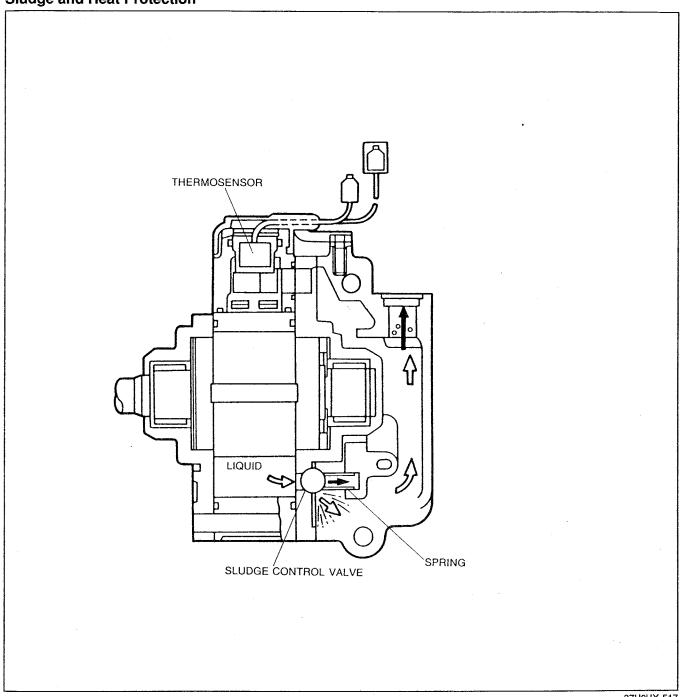
Compression and exhaust period

The compressor oil is injected into the rotor housing through the oil return valve.

The oil return valve is installed in the lower rear (exhaust) section of the compressor, where the compressor oil collects. As the compressed refrigerant builds pressure, it opens the valve's check ball, and, because the refrigerant pressure also pressurizes the oil, oil is forced through the valve, into the compressor housing.

The oil does not close the ball because the surface area of the ball is less than that of the top of the valve.

Sludge and Heat Protection



37U0UX-517

Sludge Protection

A sludge control valve is employed to prevent compression of liquid in the refrigerant.

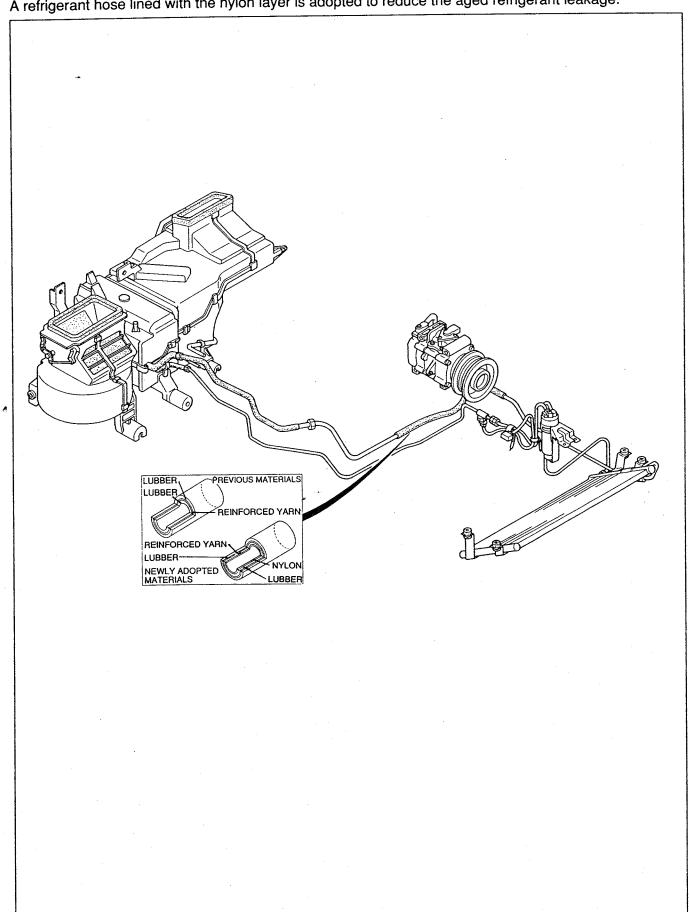
If liquid enters the rotor housing along with the refrigerant and the refrigerant compression pressure increase abnormally, the sludge control valve opens and allows the liquid to escape. The liquid then flows to the receiver/drier with the refrigerant where it is removed.

Heat Protection

As the refrigerant is compressed it creates heat. To prevent overheating of the compressor, and possible damage, a thermosensor is fitted to the exhaust port to monitor the temperature. If the temperature exceeds $180 \pm 5^{\circ}$ C $\{356 \pm 9^{\circ}F\}$, the thermosensor opens the magnetic clutch circuit to stop compressor operation.

If the temperature again becomes less than $180 \pm 5^{\circ}$ C $\{356 \pm 9^{\circ}F\}$, the thermosensor closes the circuit, and the compressor again operates.

REFRIGERANT HOSEA refrigerant hose lined with the nylon layer is adopted to reduce the aged refrigerant leakage.



CONDENSER AND RECEIVER / DRIER

Condenser

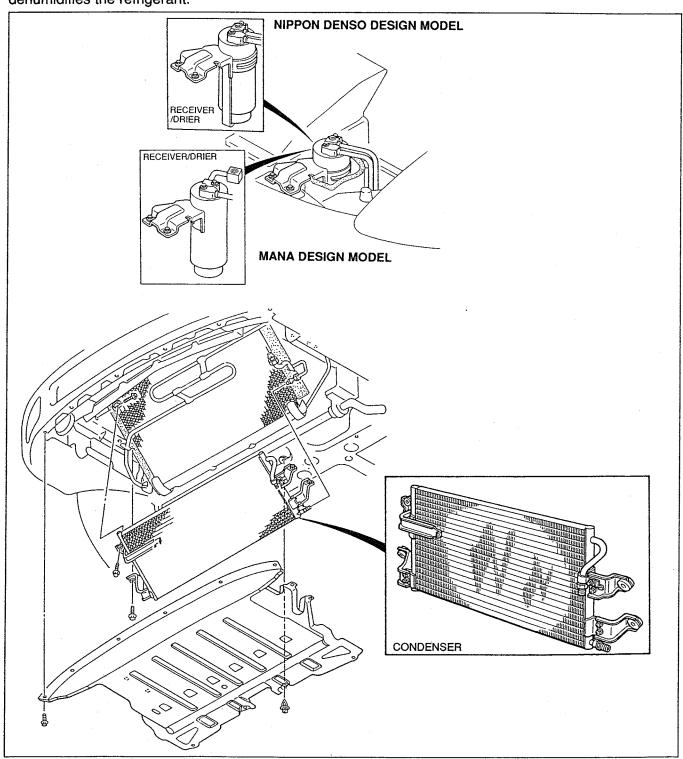
The condenser cools the hot, highly pressurized gaseous refrigerant, compressed by the compressor, into liquid. A multi-flow type condenser is used to improve cooling effect.

The MANA receiver/drier functions identically as the Mazda-provided unit while the configuration is different.

The MANA condenser has the same capability as of the Nippon Denso condenser, though the bracket configuration is a little different.

Receiver / Drier

The receiver / drier temporarily stores the liquified refrigerant from the condenser, and cleans and dehumidifies the refrigerant.



HEATER CONTROL UNIT

A logic type heater control unit is employed.
 The unit controls actuation of the various actuators and doors to change the air output modes and the fresh air intake/recirculation mode operations.

The A/C switch is incorporated in the unit for a more integrated lock.

Indicators are provided to show selection of the air output mode, fresh air mode, recirculation mode, and air conditioner operation.

